Draft

Florida Department of Transportation

Manual of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction and Maintenance for Streets and Highways

(Commonly known as the "Florida Greenbook")

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/FloridaGreenbook/FGB.shtm

FDOT Office
Office of Design
Topic # 625-000-015

Date of Publication
2016 Edition

USER REGISTRATION

Manual of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction and Maintenance for Streets and Highways

(Commonly known as the "Florida Greenbook")

2016 Edition

To: "Florida Greenbook" Users

The Department of Transportation utilizes a contact database that enables the Department to e-mail important information to registered users on topics selected by each user. The database allows a user to update their physical address, e-mail address, topics of interest, and any other information in their profile at any time.

All Florida Greenbook users must register their e-mail addresses in this contact database in order to receive updates, notices, design memos, or other important information concerning the Department's design manuals. Users must register at the following link:

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/projectmanagementoffice/ContactDatabase.shtm

New subscribers will need to create a new account. Once the information is registered, new subscribers will need to "Edit Interests." The Florida Greenbook may be found under: Publications → Design → Roadway Design → Florida Greenbook"

Draft

Draft

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Florida Greenbook Committee Members
- Chapter Subcommittees

Introduction
- Policy
- Objectives
- Definitions of Terms

Chapter 1	Planning
Chapter 2	Land Development
Chapter 3	Geometric Design
Chapter 4	Roadside Design
Chapter 5	Pavement Design and Construction
Chapter 6	Roadway Lighting
Chapter 7	Rail-Highway Grade Crossings
Chapter 8	Pedestrian Facilities
Chapter 9	Bicycle Facilities
Chapter 10	Maintenance and Resurfacing
Chapter 11	Work Zone Safety
Chapter 12	Construction
Chapter 13	Public Transit
Chapter 14	Design Exceptions
Chapter 15	Traffic Calming
Chapter 16	Residential Street Design
Chapter 17	Bridges and Other Structures
Chapter 18	Signing and Marking
Chapter 19	Traditional Neighborhood Development
Chapter 20	Drainage

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

FLORIDA GREENBOOK COMMITTEE MEMBERS

2016

The Florida Greenbook Advisory Committee is composed of four professional engineers within each of the Department of Transportation's seven district boundaries as described in Section 336.045(2), Florida Statutes (F.S.).

> **Section 336.045, Florida Statutes. Uniform minimum standards for design, construction, and maintenance; advisory committees.**
>
> **(2)** An advisory committee of professional engineers employed by any city or any county in each transportation district to aid in the development of such standards shall be appointed by the head of the department. Such committee shall be composed of: one member representing an urban center within each district; one member representing a rural area within each district; one member within each district who is a professional engineer and who is not employed by any governmental agency; and one member employed by the department for each district.

Contact information for the Florida Greenbook Advisory Committee members can be found on the Florida Greenbook web page:

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/FloridaGreenbook/FGB.shtm

The Florida Greenbook Advisory Committee Members at the time of publication are as follows:

DISTRICT 1

Bernie Masing, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 1

Ramon D. Gavarrete, P.E.
County Engineer/Utilities Director
Highlands County
Board of County Commissioners

Andy Tilton, P.E.
Water Resource Director
Johnson Engineering, Inc.

Steven M. Neff, P.E.
Public Works Director
Public Works / Transportation Division
City of Cape Coral

DISTRICT 2

Kathryn D. Thomas, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 2

Gene Howerton, P.E.
Vice President
Arcadis U.S., Inc.

Kenneth Dudley, P.E.
County Engineer
Taylor County
Board of County Commissioners

John Veilleux, P.E.
Project Engineer IV
City of Gainesville

DISTRICT 3

Jared Perdue, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 3

Roger A. Blaylock, P.E.
County Engineer
Santa Rosa County

Rick Hall, P.E.
Hall Planning and Engineering, Inc.

Keith Bryant, P.E., P.T.O.E.
Public Works Director
Bay County

DISTRICT 4

Howard Webb, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 4

Christopher R. Mora, P.E.
Public Works Director
Indian River County

Robert Behar, P.E.
President
R. J. Behar and Company, Inc.

George T. Webb, P.E.
County Engineer
Palm Beach County

DISTRICT 5

Annette Brennan, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 5

Richard Baier, P.E., LEED, AP
Public Works Director
Sumter County

Charles Ramdatt, P.E., P.T.O.E., AICP
Deputy Director of Public Works
City of Orlando

Gail Woods, P.E.
Transportation Manager
WBQ Design and Engineering, Inc.

DISTRICT 6

Chris Tavella, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 6

Andres Garganta, P.E.
Vice President
CSA Group, Inc.

Gaspar Miranda, P.E.
Assistant Director, Highway Engineering
Miami-Dade County
Public Works Department

Juvenal Santana, P.E.
Assistant Director
City of Miami Public Works Department

DISTRICT 7

Richard Moss, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 7

Milton J. Martinez, P.E.
Chief, Transportation Engineer
Transportation and Stormwater Services
City of Tampa

Margaret W. Smith, P.E.
Engineering Services Director/
County Engineer
Pasco County

Richard Diaz, Jr., P.E.
President
Diaz Pearson & Associates, Inc.

ASSOCIATE MEMBERS

Joy Puerta
City Transportation Analyst
City of Boca Raton,
Municipal Services Department

Mark Massaro, P.E.
Director, Public Works Dept.
Orange County

David F. Kuhlman
Florida Power & Light Company

Frederick J. Schneider, P.E.
FACERS Representative
Lake County Department of Public Works

Allen W. Schrumpf, P.E.
Senior Associate
DRMP, Inc.

COMMITTEE STAFF

Tim Lattner, P.E.
Director, Office of Design
FDOT - Central Office

Mary Anne Koos, CPM
Special Projects Coordinator
FDOT – Central Office

Paul Hiers, P.E.
Criteria & Standards Section Leader
FDOT - Central Office

Michael Shepard, P.E., Chairperson
State Roadway Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Mary Jane Hayden, P.E.
Roadway Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

CHAPTER TECHNICAL ADVISORS

Gabrielle (Gabe) Matthews
Transportation Modeler
FDOT – Central Office

Regina Colson
Planner
FDOT – Central Office

Maria Cahill, AICP
Planner
FDOT – Central Office

Christine Lofye, P.E.
Project Manager
Orange County Public Works Department

Kevin Miller
Safe Routes to School Coordinator
Orange County Public Works Department

Gevin McDaniel, P.E.
Roadway Design Standards Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

Chester Henson, P.E.
State Traffic Standards Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Frank Kreis, P.E.
District Bituminous Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Amy Harris, P.E.
Special Projects Manager
Traffic Engineering
Palm Beach County

Ryan "Keith: Slater, P.E.
District Traffic Design Engineer
FDOT – District 1

Rochelle Garrett, P.E.
District Traffic Design Engineer
FDOT – District 7

Frank C. Yokiel, AICP
Orange County Public Works Department
Engineering Division

Luis A. Alván, Esq., P.E.
Senior Engineer
Orange County Public Works Department
Engineering Division

Andre Goins, P.E.
State Rail Operations and Programs
Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

George Borchik, P.E.
District Roadway Design Engineer
FDOT – District 5

DeWayne Carver, AICP
State Bicycle/Pedestrian Coordinator
FDOT - Central Office

Gary Sokolow
Systems Planning
FDOT - Central Office

Gina Bonyani
Systems Planning
FDOT - Central Office

Benjamin J. Gerrell, P.E.
Quality Assurance Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Jeremy Fletcher, P.E., P.S.M.
Roadway Quality Assurance Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

Andre Pavlov, P.E.
Assistant State Structures Design
Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Robert Robertson, P.E.
State Structures Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Billy Hattaway, P.E.
Secretary
FDOT – District 1

Alan S. El-Urfali, P.E.
State Traffic Services Program Manager
FDOT - Central Office

Catherine (Katey) Earp, P.E.
Drainage Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Rick Renna
State Drainage Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

2014 and 2015

In addition to the members noted previously, the following served on the Florida Greenbook Committee in 2014 and 2015.

DISTRICT 2

Jimmy Pittman, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 2

David Cerlanek, P.E., P.T.O.E., C.P.M.
Asst. Public Works Director/Co. Engineer
Alachua County

DISTRICT 3

Scott Golden, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 3

DISTRICT 5

Scott Cottrell, P.E.
Public Works Director
Sumter County

DISTRICT 7

Ron Chin, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 7

~~Peter R. Brett, P.E.~~
~~Chief Engineer~~
~~Transportation Division~~
~~City of Tampa~~

Ben Money, P.E.
Chief of Planning and Project Management
Transportation Division
City of Tampa

~~Jim Widman, P.E.~~

~~Jim Widman, P.E.~~
Engineering Services Director/
County Engineer
Pasco County

Peter R. Brett, P.E.
Chief Engineer
Transportation Division
City of Tampa

Draft

CENTRAL OFFICE

Fred Heery
Deputy State Traffic Operations Engineer
FDOT – Central Office

Rick Jenkins, P.E.
Drainage Design Engineer
FDOT – Central Office

CHAPTER SUBCOMMITTEES

Chapter Subcommittee member information and activities can also be found on the Florida Greenbook webpage:

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/FloridaGreenbook/FGB.shtm

The Chapter Chairs at the time of publication are as follows:

Chapter	Chair
1. Planning	Rick Hall
2. Land Development	Margaret Smith
3. Geometric Design	Howard Webb
4. Roadside Design	Charles Ramdatt
5. Pavement Design and Construction	Richard Moss
6. Lighting	Bernie Masing
7. Rail-Highway Crossings	Chris Tavella
8. Pedestrian Facilities	Annette Brennan
9. Bicycle Facilities	Annette Brennan
10. Maintenance and Resurfacing	Richard Moss
11. Work Zone Safety	Chris Tavella
12. Construction	Ramon Gavarrete
13. Public Transit	Charles Ramdatt
14. Design Exceptions	Ramon Gavarrete
15. Traffic Calming	Steve Neff
16. Residential Street Design	Richard Baier
17. Bridges and Other Structures	Keith Bryant
18. Signing and Marking	Gail Woods
19. Traditional Neighborhood Development	Rick Hall
20. Drainage	George Webb

Draft

INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this Manual is to provide uniform minimum standards and criteria for the design, construction, and maintenance of all public streets, roads, highways, bridges, sidewalks, curbs and curb ramps, crosswalks (where feasible), bicycle facilities, underpasses, and overpasses used by the public for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as directed by ***Sections 20.23(4)(a), 334.044(10)(a), ~~334.048(3)~~ and 336.045, F.S.***

In the following statutory excerpts, the term "Department" refers to the Florida Department of Transportation.

> **Section 20.23, F.S. Department of Transportation.** There is created a Department of Transportation which shall be a decentralized agency.
>
> **(3)(a)** The central office shall establish departmental policies, rules, procedures, and standards and shall monitor the implementation of such policies, rules, procedures, and standards in order to ensure uniform compliance and quality performance by the districts and central office units that implement transportation programs. Major transportation policy initiatives or revisions shall be submitted to the commission for review.
>
> **Section 334.044, F.S. Department; powers and duties.** The department shall have the following general powers and duties:
>
> **(10)(a)** To develop and adopt uniform minimum standards and criteria for the design, construction, maintenance, and operation of public roads pursuant to the provisions of ***Section, 336.045, F.S***.
>
> ~~**Section 334.048, F.S. Legislative intent with respect to department management accountability and monitoring systems.** The department shall implement the following accountability and monitoring systems to evaluate whether the department's goals are being accomplished efficiently and cost-effectively, and ensure compliance with all laws, rules, policies, and procedures related to the department's operations:~~
>
> ~~**(3)** The central office shall adopt policies, rules, procedures, and standards which are necessary for the department to function properly, including establishing accountability for all aspects of the department's operations.~~

Draft

Section 336.045, F.S. Uniform minimum standards for design, construction, and maintenance; advisory committees.

(1) The department shall develop and adopt uniform minimum standards and criteria for the design, construction, and maintenance of all public streets, roads, highways, bridges, sidewalks, curbs and curb ramps, crosswalks, where feasible, bicycle ways, underpasses and overpasses used by the public for vehicular and pedestrian traffic. In developing such standards and criteria, the department shall consider design approaches which provide for the compatibility of such facilities with the surrounding natural or manmade environment; the safety and security of public spaces; and the appropriate aesthetics based upon scale, color, architectural style, materials used to construct the facilities, and the landscape design and landscape materials around the facilities.

(4) All design and construction plans for projects that are to become part of the county road system and are required to conform with the design and construction standards established pursuant to subsection (1) must be certified to be in substantial conformance with the standards established pursuant to subsection (1) that are then in effect by a professional engineer who is registered in this state.

These standards are intended to provide basic guidance for developing and maintaining a highway system with reasonable operating characteristics and a minimum number of hazards.

Standards established by this Manual are intended for use on all new and resurfacing construction projects off the state highway and federal aid systems. Unless specified otherwise herein, i~~I~~t is understood that the standards herein cannot be applied completely to all reconstruction and maintenance type projects. However, the standards shall be applied to reconstruction and maintenance projects to the extent state or federal statute requires and that economic and environmental considerations and existing development will allow.

When this Manual refers to guidelines and design standards given by current American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) publications, these guidelines and standards shall generally be considered as minimum criteria. The Department may have standards and criteria that differ from the minimum presented in this Manual or by AASHTO for streets and highways under its jurisdiction. A county or municipality may substitute standards and criteria adopted by the Department for some or all portions of design, construction, and maintenance of their facilities. Department standards, criteria, and manuals must be used when preparing projects on the state

Draft

highway system or the national highway system.

Criteria and standards set forth in other manuals, which have been incorporated by reference, shall be considered as requirements within the authority of this Manual.

This Manual is intended for use by qualified engineering practitioners for the communication of standards and criteria (including various numerical design values and use conditions). The design, construction, and maintenance references for the infrastructure features contained in this Manual recognize many variable and often complex process considerations. The engineering design process, and associated use of this Manual, incorporates aspects of engineering judgment, design principles, science, and recognized standards towards matters involving roadway infrastructure.

Users of this Manual are cautioned that the strict application of exact numerical values, conditions or use information taken from portions of the text may not be appropriate for all circumstances. Individual references to design values or concepts should not be used out of context or without supporting engineering judgment.

The contents of this Manual are reviewed annually by the Florida "Greenbook" Advisory Committee. Membership of this committee is established by the above referenced ***Section 336.045(2), F.S.*** Comments, suggestions, or questions may be directed to any committee member.

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

POLICY

Specific policies governing the activities of planning, design, construction, reconstruction, maintenance, or operation of streets and highways are listed throughout this Manual. All agencies and individuals involved in these activities shall be governed by the following general policies:

- Each public street and highway, and all ~~activates~~activities thereon, shall be assigned to the jurisdiction of some highway agency. Each highway agency should establish and maintain a program to promote safety in all activities on streets and highways under its jurisdiction.

- Highway safety shall be considered and given a high priority in order to promote the achievement of the maximum safety benefits for given expenditures and efforts.

- The provision for safe, high-quality streets and highways, and maximum transit opportunities should take priority over the provision for the maximum highway mileage obtainable for the available funds.

OBJECTIVES

The planning, design, construction, reconstruction, maintenance, and operation of streets and highways should be predicated upon meeting the following objectives:

- Develop and maintain a highway system that provides the safest practicable environment for motorists, cyclists, pedestrians, and workers.

- Establish and maintain procedures for construction, maintenance, utility, and emergency operations that provide for safe highway and transit operating conditions during these activities.

- Provide streets and highways with operating characteristics that allow for reasonable limitations upon the capabilities of vehicles, drivers, cyclists, pedestrians, and workers.

- Provide uniformity and consistency in the design and operation of streets and highways.

Draft

- Provide for satisfactory resolution of conflicts between the surface transportation system and social and environmental considerations to aid neighborhood integrity.
- Reconstruct or modify existing facilities to reduce the hazard to the highway users.
- Reduce the deaths, injuries, and damage due to highway crashes.

Additional general and specific objectives related to various topics and activities are listed throughout this Manual. Where specific standards or recommendations are not available or applicable, the related objectives shall be utilized as general guidelines.

Draft

DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

The following terms shall, for the purpose of this Manual, have the meanings respectively ascribed to them, except instances where the context clearly indicates a different meaning. The ***Manual onf Uniform Traffic Control Devices (2009 Edition with Revision Numbers 1 and 2, May 2012, MUTCD*)** includes additional information on terms used in conjunction with the application of the ***MUTCD***.

Alley — A narrow right of way to provide access to the side or rear of individual land parcels.

AnnualNNUAL AverageVERAGE DailyAILY TrafficRAFFIC (AADT) — The total volume of traffic on a highway segment for one year, divided by the number of days in the year. This volume is usually estimated by adjusting a short-term traffic count with weekly and monthly factors..

AverageVERAGE DailyAILY TrafficRAFFIC (ADT) — The total traffic volumetraffic volume during a given time period (more than a day, less than a year) divided by the number of days in that time period. Average daily two-way volume of traffic.

AAuxiliary UXILIARY LaneANE — A designated width of roadway pavement marked to separate speed change, turning, passing, and climbing maneuvers from through traffic. It may provide short capacity segment.

Average Running Speed — For all traffic, or component thereof, the summation of distances divided by the summation of running times.

Bicycle Lane (Bike Lane) — A portion of a roadway (typically 4-5 ft.) which that has been designated for preferential use by bicyclists by pavement markings, and if used, signs. They are one-way facilities that typically carry traffic in the same direction as adjacent motor vehicle traffic.

Draft

Boarding And Alighting (B&A) Area US STOP PAD	A firm, stable, slip resistant surface that accommodates passenger movement on or off a transit vehiclebus.
Clear Zone	The total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the motor vehicle traveled waylane, available for safe use by errant vehicles. This area may consist of a shoulder, a recoverable slope, a non-recoverable slope, , and/or a clear runout area, or combination thereof. The desired width is dependent upon the traffic volumes and speeds, and on the roadside geometry. Note: The aforementioned "border area" is not the same as "border width". Also, see Horizontal Clearance.
Corridor	A strip of land between two termini within which traffic, topography, environment, population, access management, and other characteristics are evaluated for transportation purposes.
Crosswalk	Portion of the roadway at an intersection included within the connections of lateral lines of the sidewalks on opposite sides of the highway, measured from the curbs or in the absence of curbs from the traversable roadway. Crosswalks may also occur at an intersection or elsewhere distinctly indicated for pedestrian crossing.
Design Hour Volume (DHV)	Traffic volume expected to use a highway segment during the design hour of the design year. The DHV is related to the AADT by the "K" factor. It includes tTotal traffic in both directions of travel.Design hourly two-way volume of traffic.
Directional Design Hour Volume (DDHV)	Traffic volume expected to use a highway segment during the design hour of the design year in the peak direction.

Draft

Design Speed	A selected speed ~~rate of travel~~ used to determine the various geometric design features of the roadway. The selected design speed should be a logical one with respect to the topography, anticipated operating speed, adjacent land use, and functional classification of the highway.
Design Vehicle	A vehicle, with representative weight, dimensions, and operating characteristics, used to establish highway design controls for accommodating vehicles of designated classes.
Driveway	An access from a public way to adjacent property.
Expressway	A divided arterial highway for through traffic with full or partial control of access and generally with grade separations at major intersections.
Federal Aid Highway	A highway eligible for assistance under the United States Code Title 23 other than a highway classified as a local road or rural minor collector.
Freeway or Limited Access Highway	An expressway with full control of access.
Frontage Road or Street	A street or highway constructed adjacent to a higher classification street or other roadway network for the purpose of serving adjacent property or control access.
Grade Separation	A crossing of two roadways or a roadway and a railroad or pedestrian pathway at different levels.
High Speed	Speeds of 50 mph or greater.

High-Speed Rail — Intercity passenger rail service that is reasonably expected to reach speeds of at least 110 miles per hour.

Highway, Street, o~~O~~r Road — General terms, denoting a public way for purposes of traffic, both vehicular and pedestrian, including the entire area within the right of way. The term street is generally used for urban or suburban areas.

Horizontal Clearance — Lateral distance from edge of motor vehicle travel lane to a roadside object or feature.

Intersection — The general area where two or more streets or highways join or cross.

May — A permissive condition. Where "may" is used, it is considered to denote permissive usage.

Maintenance — A strategy of treatments to an existing roadway system that preserves it, retards future deterioration, and maintains or improves the functional condition.

New Construction — The construction of any public way~~road facility~~ (paved or unpaved) where none previously existed, or the act of paving any previously unpaved road, except as provided in Chapter 3, Section A of these standards.

Operating Speed — The rate of travel at which vehicles are observed traveling during free-flow conditions.

Para~~UBLIC~~ transit — Comparable transportation service required by the ADA for individuals with disabilities who are unable to use fixed route transportation systems.~~Passenger transportation service, local or regional in nature, that is available to any person. Public transit includes bus, light rail,~~

Draft

and rapid transit.

Pedestrian Access Route — A continuous and unobstructed path of travel provided for pedestrians with disabilities within or coinciding with a pedestrian circulation path.

Pedestrian Circulation Path — A prepared exterior or interior surface provided for pedestrian travel in the public right -of -way.

Preferential Lane — A street or highway lane reserved for the exclusive use of one or more specific types of vehicles or vehicles with at least a specific number of occupants.

Public Way — All public streets, roads, highways, bridges, sidewalks, curbs and curb ramps, crosswalks (where feasible), bicycle facilities, underpasses, and overpasses used by the public for vehicular and pedestrian traffic.

Ramp — 1) Includes all types, arrangements, and sizes of turning roadways that connect two or more legs at an interchange. 2) A combined ramp and landing to accomplish a change in level at a curb (curb ramp).

Reconstruction — Any road construction other than new construction.

Recovery Area — A Generally synonymous with clear zone that includes the total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, available for safe use by errant vehicles.

Residential Streets — Streets primarily serving residential access to the commercial, social, and recreational needs of the community. These are generally lower volume and lower speed facilities than the

Draft

primary arterial and collector routes of the local system "or as adopted by local government ordinance".

Resurfacing — Work to place additional layers of surfacing on highway pavement, shoulders, and bridge decks, and necessary incidental work to extend the structural integrity of these features for a substantial time period.

Right Of Way — A general term denoting land, property or interest therein, usually in a strip, acquired or donated for transportation purposes. More specifically, land in which the State, the Department, a county, a transit authority, or a municipality, or special district owns the fee or has an easement devoted to or required for use as a public road.

Roadway — The portion of a street or highway, including shoulders, for vehicular use. A divided highway has two or more roadways.

Rural Areas — Those areas outside of urban boundaries. Urban area boundary maps based upon the 2010 Census are located on the Department's Urban Area 1-Mile Buffer Maps,

Shall or/ Must — A mandatory condition. (When certain requirements are described with the "shall" or "must" stipulation, it is mandatory these requirements be met.)

Shared Street — Specially designed residential or commercial street where space is shared by all users and alignment supports slower vehicle speeds and the perception of shared space.

Draft

Shared Roadway	A roadway that is open to both bicycle and motor vehicle travel. This may be an existing roadway, street with wide curb lanes, or road with paved shoulders.
Shared Use Path	Paved facilities physically separated from motorized vehicular traffic by an open space or barrier. May be within the highway right of way or an independent right of way, with minimal cross flow by motor vehicles. Users are non-motorized and may include: pedestrians, bicyclists, skaters, people with disabilities, and others.
Should	An advisory condition. Where the word "should" is used, it is considered to denote advisable usage, recommended but not mandatory.
Slope~~S~~	The relative steepness of the terrain, expressed as a ratio or percentage. Slopes may be categorized as positive (backslopes) or negative (foreslopes) and as parallel or cross slopes in relation to the direction of traffic. I~~i~~n this manual slope is~~are~~ expressed as a ratio of vertical to horizontal (V:H).
Surface Transportation System	Network of highways, streets, and/or roads. Term can be applied to local system or expanded to desired limits of influence.
Traditional Neighborhood Development (TND)	TND refers to the development or redevelopment of a neighborhood or town using traditional town planning principles. Projects should include a range of housing types and commercial establishments, a network of well-connected streets and blocks, civic buildings and public spaces, and include other uses such as stores, schools, and places of worship within walking distances of residences.

Draft

Traffic	Pedestrians, bicyclists, motor vehicles, streetcars and other conveyances either singularly or together while using for purposes of travel any highway or private road open to public travel.
Traffic Lane	~~Traffic lanes i~~Includes travel lanes, auxiliary lanes, turn lanes, weaving, passing, and climbing lanes.
Travel Lane	A designated width of roadway pavement marked to carry through traffic and to separate it from opposing traffic or traffic occupying other traffic lanes. Generally, travel lanes equate to the basic number of lanes for a facility.
Traveled Way	The portion of the roadway for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders, berms, sidewalks and parking lanes.
Turning Roadway	A connecting roadway for traffic turning between two intersection legs.
Urban Area	A geographic region comprising, as a minimum, the area inside the United States Bureau of the Census boundary of an urban place with a population of 5,000 or more persons, expanded to include adjacent developed areas as provided for by Federal Highway Administration regulations. Urban area boundary maps based upon the 2010 Census are located on the Department's Urban Area 1-Mile Buffer Maps.

Draft

Urbanized Area	A geographic region comprising, as a minimum, the area inside an urban place of 50,000 or more persons, as designated by the United States Bureau of the Census, expanded to include adjacent developed areas as provided for by Federal Highway Administration regulations. Urban areas with a population of fewer than 50,000 persons which are located within the expanded boundary of an urbanized area are not separately recognized.
Vehicle	Every device upon, or by which any person or property is or may be transported or drawn upon a traveled way, excepting devices used exclusively upon stationary rails or tracks. Bicycles are defined as vehicles per Section 316.003, Florida Statutes.
Vertical Clearance	Minimum unobstructed vertical passage space.
Very Low-Volume Road	A road that is functionally classified as a local road and has a design average daily traffic volume of 400 vehicles per day or less.
Wide Outside~~CURB~~ Lane	Through lanes that provide a minimum of 14 feet~~'~~ in width. ~~A portion of the roadway which can be used by bicycles and motorized traffic, characterized by a curb lane, which is of such width that bicycle and motorized traffic can be accomplished in the same lane.~~ This lane should always be the through lane closest to the curb ~~(when a curb is provided)~~ or ~~the~~ shoulder ~~edge~~ of the road when a curb is not provided.

Draft

CHAPTER 1

PLANNING

A INTRODUCTION 1-1

B FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION 1-3
- B.1 Function 1-3
  - B.1.a Volume 1-3
  - B.1.b Speed 1-3
  - B.1.c Traveler Characteristics 1-3
  - B.1.d Trip Characteristics 1-3
  - B.1.e Safety 1-4
  - B.1.f Measures of Level of Service 1-4
  - B.1.g Access Requirements 1-4
  - B.1.h Public Transit Use 1-5
- B.2 Classification 1-5
  - B.2.a Basic Classification 1-5
    - B.2.a.1 Local Road 1-5
    - B.2.a.2 Collector Road 1-6
    - B.2.a.3 Arterial Road 1-6
  - B.2.b Classification Modifications 1-6
    - B.2.b.1 Urban 1-6
    - B.2.b.2 Major/Minor 1-7

C CONSIDERATIONS for ROADSIDE DESIGN 1-8
- C.1 Safety 1-8
- C.2 Economic Constraints 1-8
- C.3 Access 1-9
- C.4 Maintenance Capabilities 1-9
- C.5 Utility and Transit Operations 1-9
- C.6 Emergency Response 1-9
- C.7 Environmental Impact 1-10
- C.8 Community and Social Impact 1-10
- C.9 Modes of Transportation 1-11

Draft

D OPERATION 1-16
D.1 Policy 1-16
D.2 Objectives 1-16
D.3 Activities 1-16
D.3.a Maintenance and Reconstruction 1-17
D.3.b Work Zone Safety 1-17
D.3.c Traffic Control 1-17
D.3.d Emergency Response 1-18
D.3.e Coordination and Supervision 1-18
D.3.f Inspection and Evaluation 1-18

E References 1-20

A INTRODUCTION 1-1

B FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION 1-1
B.1 Function 1-2
B.1.a Volume 1-2
B.1.b Speed 1-2
B.1.c Traveler Characteristics 1-2
B.1.d Trip Characteristics 1-2
B.1.e Safety 1-2
B.1.f Measures of Level of Service 1-3
B.1.g Access Requirements 1-3
B.1.h Public Transit Use 1-3
B.2 Classification 1-3
B.2.a Basic Classification 1-4
B.2.a.1 Local Road 1-4
B.2.a.2 Collector Road 1-4
B.2.a.3 Arterial Road 1-4
B.2.b Classification Modifications 1-4
B.2.b.1 Urban 1-5
B.2.b.2 Major/Minor 1-5

C CONSIDERATIONS for ROADSIDE DESIGN 1-6
C.1 Safety 1-6

Draft

C.2 Economic Constraints 1-6
C.3 Access 1-6
C.4 Maintenance Capabilities 1-7
C.5 Utility and Transit Operations 1-7
C.6 Emergency Response 1-7
C.7 Environmental Impact 1-7
C.8 Community and Social Impact 1-8
C.9 Modes of Transportation 1-9

D OPERATION 1-12
D.1 Policy 1-12
D.2 Objectives 1-12
D.3 Activities 1-12
D.3.a Maintenance and Reconstruction 1-13
D.3.b Work Zone Safety 1-13
D.3.c Traffic Control 1-13
D.3.d Emergency Response 1-14
D.3.e Coordination and Supervision 1-14
D.3.f Inspection and Evaluation 1-14

E References 1-16

A INTRODUCTION 1-1

B CONFLICTING CRITERIA 1-2
B.1 Economic Constraints 1-2
B.2 Access 1-2
B.3 Maintenance Capabilities 1-3
B.4 Utility and Transit Operations 1-3
B.5 Emergency Response for Fire, Police, etc. 1-3
B.6 Environmental Impact 1-3
B.7 Community and Social Impact 1-4
B.8 Modes of Transportation 1-4

C HIGHWAY FUNCTION AND CLASSIFICATION 1-5
C.1 Function 1-5

Draft

C.1.a Volume 1-5
C.1.b Highway User Types 1-5
C.1.c Trip Characteristics 1-5
C.1.d Speed 1-5
C.1.e Safety 1-5
C.1.f Level of Service 1-6
C.1.g Access Requirements 1-6
C.1.h Public Transit Use 1-6
C.2 Classification 1-6
C.2.a Basic Classification 1-6
C.2.a.1 Local 1-7
C.2.a.2 Collector 1-7
C.2.a.3 Arterial 1-7
C.2.b Classification Modifications 1-7
C.2.b.1 Urban 1-7
C.2.b.2 Major/Minor 1-8

D OPERATION 1-9
D.1 Policy 1-9
D.2 Objectives 1-9
D.3 Activities 1-9
D.3.a Maintenance and Reconstruction 1-10
D.3.b Work Zone Safety 1-10
D.3.c Traffic Control 1-10
D.3.d Emergency Response 1-11
D.3.e Coordination and Supervision 1-11
D.3.f Inspection and Evaluation 1-11

Draft

CHAPTER 1

PLANNING

A INTRODUCTION

~~Planning, as discussed in this section, is not to be confused with the broader transportation system's planning and project programming which normally precedes the design, construction, and maintenance of highways.~~

Developing and maintaining an efficient multi-modal~~highway~~ system requires careful planning by each unit in a transportation~~highway~~ agency. This includes both planning for the design and construction of streets and highways and planning for operating the facilities. Overall planning would include a consideration for all aspects of design, construction, and operations (including maintenance) affecting the resulting characteristics of streets and highways. These characteristics will be significantly affected by the degree to which the various demands and requirements on the highway system are satisfied in the initial planning and design.

Successful highway design requires that the role of each new facility in the overall highway system be clearly delineated. The determination and clear definition of the function and classification of each street and highway is also required. Safety and efficiency of new facilities is predicated, to a large extent, on corridor selection and provisions for adequate right of way, alignment, and access control. Initial planning and design should also consider provisions for future modifications and upgrading required by changes in speed, volume, or standards.

Plans for actually operating a new street or highway should be considered in the initial planning and should be closely coordinated with the design of the facility. Development of plans and procedures for successfully operating an existing highway system must include a consideration of all activities affecting the operating characteristics of each street and highway.

Planning, designing, operating, and maintaining a street~~highway~~ system has become more complex in recent years. These disciplines must ~~now~~ address the relationship to land use and the desire for access to ~~needs of increased~~ public transit, ~~and~~ pedestrian and bicycle traffic, ~~increasing bicyclist use~~the growing number of elder road users, and the mobility needs of persons with disabilities~~the disabled~~. This begins in planning and

Draft

continues throughout the design and operational process.

Draft

BC HIGHWAY FUNCTIONAL AND CLASSIFICATION

A determination of the function and operational requirements, and a clear definition of the classification of each new facility are required prior to the actual design.

C.1 Function

B.1 Function

Design of each new street or highway is based upon its function in the highway system. Operational requirements that must be satisfied to fulfill this function are dependent upon the following factors:

BC.11.a Volume

Volume of traffic that must be carried by the facility is a primary factor governing the design. Variations in volume with respect to direction and time should also be evaluated to determine the expected requirements for peak capacities.

B.1.b Speed

Operating speed (to be maintained) should meet reasonable expectations of the users.

BC.11.cb Traveler CharacteristicsHighway User Types

Unless prohibited by law, a variety of travelers should be expected on all public roads. These could include pedestrians, bicyclists, and motor vehicle operators and passengers. Types and relative volumes of peoplehighway users expected to use the street or highway influence trip characteristics and design features.

BC.11.dc Trip Characteristics

Functions of a new facility are, to a large extent, determined by the length and purpose of vehicle trips. Trip characteristics are influenced by land use characteristics and the highway network layout.

Draft

C.1.d Speed

Operating speed (to be maintained) should meet reasonable expectations of the users.

BC.11.e Safety

Functional classification plays an important role in setting expectations and measuring outcomes for safety. Since agencies consider the type of roadway in evaluating the significance of crash rates, functional classification can be used as part of evaluatinfevaluating the relative safety of roadways and the implementation of safety improvements and programs.

Provisions of streets and highways with safe operating characteristics shall be considered a primary requirement.

BC.11.f Measures of Level of Service

Level of service (LOS) is essentially a measure of the quality of the overall operating characteristics of a street or highway. Factors involved in determining the level of service include speed and safety, as well as travel time; traffic conflicts and interruptions; freedom to maneuver; driving convenience and comfort; and operating costs. Level of service is also dependent upon actual traffic volume and composition of traffic (motor vehicles, trucks, transit, bicyclists, and pedestrians).

The ***Highway Capacity Manual 2010*** provides further information on assessing the traffic and environmental effects of highway projects.

BC.11.g Access Requirements

Degree and type of access permitted on a given facility is dependent upon its intended function and should conform to the guidelines in ***Chapter 3 CHAPTER 3 — Geometric Design***EOMETRIC DESIGN. Reasonable access control must be exercised to allow a street or highway to fulfill its function.

BC.11.h Public Transit Use

Both current and planned use by public transit influence design features. Transit vehicles increase capacity on a roadway. There must be the ability to safely stop along the roadway to board and discharge passengers.

B.C.2 2 Classification

Classification

Road classifications are defined in Section 334.03 F.S.... Functional classification is the assignment of roads into systems according to the character of service they provide in relation to the total road network.

Road classifications are defined in Section 334.03, Florida Statutes. Functional classification is the assignment of roads into systems according to the character of service they provide in relation to the total road network.

B.C.2.2.a a Basic Classification

Basic Classification

Basic functional categories include arterial, collector, and local roads which may be subdivided into principal, major, or minor levels. These levels may be additionally divided into rural and urban categories. This basic classification system is utilized throughout this Manual.

Basic functional categories include arterial, collector, and local roads which may be subdivided into principal, major, or minor levels. These levels may be additionally divided into rural and urban categories. This basic classification system is utilized throughout this Manual.

BC.2.a.1 Local Road

A route providing service which is of relatively low average traffic

volume, short average trip length or minimal through-traffic movements, and high land access for abutting property.

BC.2.a.2 Collector Road

A route providing service which is of relatively moderate average traffic volume, moderately average trip length, and moderately average operating speed. These routes also collect and distribute traffic between local roads or arterial roads and serve as a linkage between land access and mobility needs.

BC.2.a.3 Arterial Road

A route providing service which is relatively continuous and of relatively high traffic volume, long average trip length, generally higher operating speed, and high mobility importance. In addition, everyal United States numbered highways is anshall be arterial roads.

BC.2.b Classification Modifications

Design and classification of streets and highways should also be based upon a consideration of highway user expectations. The function of any facility, as perceived by the user, essentially determines the driver's willingness to accept restrictions upon speed, capacity, access, or level of service. Basic classification systems may also be modified by the following variables:

BC.2.b.1 Urban

Urban area highway users will generally accept lower speeds and levels of service. Economic constraints in urban areas are also generally more severe. Minor modifications in design criteria are, therefore, appropriate for urban streets. ***Chapter 19 – Traditional Neighborhood Development*** provides additional information for the design of urban streets.

Draft

BC.2.b.2 Major/Minor

Streets and highways may be classified as major or minor depending upon traffic volume, trip length, and mobility.

Additional information on the functional classification of roadways may be found in ***Highway Functional Classification Concepts, Criteria and Procedures, 2013 Edition (FHWA)***.

Draft

CB CONSIDERATIONS for ROADSIDE DESIGNCONFLICTING CRITERIA

Development of safe streets and highways for all modes of surface transportation (autos, trucks, bicycles, pedestrians, transit vehicles, etc.) should receive the highest priority in the design process. This objective may tend to be compromised by other conflicting requirements and demands upon the highway system. The following criteria should be considered and resolved in the initial planning and design of streets and highways to avoid a sacrifice of required safety characteristics. The criteria are not listed in order of priority, and the weighting of each criterion should be based on the context of a project, the available resources, and the users.

C.1 Safety

Development of safe streets and highways for all modes of surface transportation (autos, trucks, bicycles, pedestrians, transit vehicles, etc.) should be given a high priority in the design process. Good roadway design is key to safe and efficient operation and should be sensitive to the surrounding environment. The safety performance of roadway elements should be considered in planning, design, construction, maintenance, and operation phases to be truly comprehensive.

CB.21 Economic Constraints

In determining the benefit/cost ratio for any proposed facility, the economic evaluation should go beyond the actual expenditure of highway funds and the capacity and efficiency of the facility. Overall costs and benefits of various alternatives should include an evaluation of allthe knownprobable environmental, community, and social impact and their effect upon highway quality and cost.

Allocation of sufficient funds for obtaining the proper corridor and adequate right of way and alignment should receive the initial priority. Future acquisition of additional right of way and major changes in alignment are often economically prohibitive. This can result in substandard streets and highways with permanent hazards. Reconstruction or modification under traffic is expensive, inconvenient, and hazardous to the highway user. This increase in costs, hazards, and inconvenience can be limited by initial development of quality facilities.

Draft

CB.32 Access

Demand for access to streets and highways by adjacent property owners can produce problems. Although the public must have reasonable access to the highway network, it is necessary to have certain controls and restrictions. Allowing indiscriminate access can seriously compromise the safety capacity and level of service of a street or highway, consequently reducing its utility and general economic value. The level and type of access should be tied to the functional class of the roadway.

The proper layout of the highway network and the utilization of effective land use controls (***Chapter 2 - Land Development***) can provide the basis for regulating access. The actual access controls should conform to the guidelines given in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***.

CB.43 Maintenance Capabilities

Planning and design of streets and highways should include provisions for the performance of required maintenance. The planning of the expected maintenance program should be coordinated with the initial highway design to ensure maintenance activities may be conducted without excessive traffic conflicts or hazards.

CB.54 Utility and Transit Operations

Utility accommodation within rights of way is generally considered to be in the public's best interest, since rights of way frequently offer the most practical engineering, construction, and maintenance solutions for utility service to businesses and residences. Utility and transit facility locations should be carefully chosen to optimizeminimize interference with the operations and safety of the transportation facility. Additional information on the design of transit facilities can be found in ***Chapter 13 - Transit***.

CB.65 Emergency Response for Fire, Police, etc.

Development of an effective emergency response program is dependent upon the nature of the highway network and the effectiveness of the operation of the system. Provisions for emergency access and communication should be considered in the initial planning and design of all streets and highways. Local emergency response

personnel should be included in primary activities.

CB.76 Environmental Impact

Construction and operation of streets and highways frequently produces an adverse effect upon the environment. Early consideration and resolution of environmental issuesproblems can avoid costly delays and modifications that may compromise the quality and efficiency of operation. Specific topicsproblems often encountered include the following:

- Air QualityNoise pollution
- Coastal Zone ResourcesAir and water pollution
- FarmlandInterruption of the hydrological system
- FloodplainsDegradation of the biological system
- Hazardous Waste and Brownfields
- Noise
- Roadside vegetation
- Safe Drinking Water Act
- Water Quality
- Watersheds Management
- Wetlands
- Wild and Scenic Rivers and Wilderness Areas
- Wildlife and Threatened and Endangered Species
- Wildlife, Habitat and Ecosystems

CB.87 Community and Social Impact

Quality and value of a community is directly influenced by the layout and design of streets and highways. Quality of the network determines the freedom and efficiency of movement. Inadequate design of the network and poor land use practices can lead to undesirable community separation and deterioration. Specific design of streets and highways has a large effect upon the overall aesthetic value which is important to the motorist and resident. When using federal funds for transportation projects, the following considerations should be

Draft

addressed:

- Corridor Preservation
- Historical and Archaeological Preservation
- Scenic Byways
- Section 4(f) and 5(f) if federally funded
- Visual Impacts

Conflicting criteria should be resolved through early coordination. It is the responsibility of the planner and designer to consider, and where possible, select alternatives alleviating conflicts and promoting positive solutions to interrelated problems.

CB.98 Modes of Transportation

Planning processes should analyze/evaluate other modes of transportation, including walking and cycling –and their relationship to the highway system. Recommendations for incorporation into the design process should be made. This will involve coordination with local, city, county, special interest groups, etc., in developing such recommendations.

Draft

C HIGHWAY FUNCTION AND CLASSIFICATION

A determination of the function and operational requirements, and a clear definition of the classification of each new facility are required prior to the actual design.

C.1 Function

Design of each new street or highway is based upon its function in the highway system. Operational requirements that must be satisfied to fulfill this function are dependent upon the following factors:

C.1.a Volume

Volume of traffic that must be carried by the facility is a primary factor governing the design. Variations in volume with respect to direction and time should also be evaluated to determine the expected requirements for peak capacities.

C.1.b Highway User Types

Types and relative volumes of highway users expected to use the street or highway influence trip characteristics and design features.

C.1.c Trip Characteristics

Functions of a new facility are, to a large extent, determined by the length and purpose of vehicle trips. Trip characteristics are influenced by land use characteristics and the highway network layout.

C.1.d Speed

Operating speed (to be maintained) should meet reasonable expectations of the users.

C.1.e Safety

Provisions of streets and highways with safe operating characteristics shall

Draft

be considered a primary requirement.

C.1.f Level of Service

Level of service is essentially a measure of the quality of the overall operating characteristics of a street or highway. Factors involved in determining the level of service include speed and safety, as well as travel time; traffic conflicts and interruptions; freedom to maneuver; driving convenience and comfort; and operating costs. Level of service is also dependent upon actual traffic volume and composition of traffic.

C.1.g Access Requirements

Degree and type of access permitted on a given facility is dependent upon its intended function and should conform to the guidelines in CHAPTER 3 - GEOMETRIC DESIGN. Reasonable access control must be exercised to allow a street or highway to fulfill its function.

C.1.h Public Transit Use

Both current and planned use by public transit influence design features. Transit vehicles increase capacity on a roadway. There must be the ability to safely stop along the roadway to board and discharge passengers.

C.2 Classification

Road classifications are defined in Section 334.03, Florida Statutes. Functional classification is the assignment of roads into systems according to the character of service they provide in relation to the total road network.

C.2.a Basic Classification

Basic functional categories include arterial, collector, and local roads which may be subdivided into principal, major, or minor levels. These levels may be additionally divided into rural and urban categories. This basic classification system is utilized throughout this Manual.

Draft

C.2.a.1 Local

A route providing service which is of relatively low average traffic volume, short average trip length or minimal through-traffic movements, and high land access for abutting property.

C.2.a.2 Collector

A route providing service which is of relatively moderate average traffic volume, moderately average trip length, and moderately average operating speed. These routes also collect and distribute traffic between local roads or arterial roads and serve as a linkage between land access and mobility needs.

C.2.a.3 Arterial

A route providing service which is relatively continuous and of relatively high traffic volume, long average trip length, generally higher operating speed, and high mobility importance. In addition, all United States numbered highways shall be arterial roads.

C.2.b Classification Modifications

Design and classification of streets and highways should also be based upon a consideration of highway user expectations. The function of any facility, as perceived by the user, essentially determines the driver's willingness to accept restrictions upon speed, capacity, access, or level of service. Basic classification systems may also be modified by the following variables:

C.2.b.1 Urban

Urban area highway users will generally accept lower speeds and levels of service. Economic constraints in urban areas are also generally more severe. Minor modifications in design criteria are,

Draft

therefore, appropriate for urban streets.

C.2.b.2 Major/Minor

Streets and highways may be classified as major or minor depending upon traffic volume, trip length, and mobility.

Draft

D OPERATION

The concept of operating the existing highway network as a system is essential to promote safety, efficiency, mobility, and economy. This requires comprehensive planning and coordination of all activities on each street and highway. These activities would include maintenance, construction, utility operations, public transit operations, traffic control, and emergency response operations. Although Tthe behavior of the individual road usertraffic smotorist is somewhat independent, driver actions and response should also be considered as an integral part of the operation of streets and highways. Coordination of the planning and supervision of each activity on each facility is necessary to achieve safety and efficient operation of the total highway system.

D.1 Policy

Each highway agency with general responsibility for existing streets and highways should establish and maintain an operations department. Each existing street or highway should be assigned to the jurisdiction of the operations department. The operations department shall be responsible for planning, supervising, and coordinating all activities affecting the operating characteristics of the highway system under its jurisdiction.

D.2 Objectives

The primary objective of an operations department shall be to maintain or improve the operating characteristics of the highway system under its jurisdiction. These characteristics include safety, capacity, and level of service. The preservation of the function of each facility, which would include access control, is necessary to maintain these characteristics and the overall general value of a street or highway.

D.3 Activities

The achievement of these objectives requires the performance of a variety of coordinated activities by the operations department. The following activities should be considered as minimal for promoting the safe and efficient operation of a highway system.

Draft

D.3.a Maintenance and Reconstruction

Maintaining or upgrading the quality of existing facilities is an essential factor in preserving desirable operating characteristics. The planning and execution of maintenance and reconstruction activity on existing facilities must be closely coordinated with all other operational activities and, therefore, should be under the general supervision of the operations department.

All maintenance work should be conducted in accordance with the requirements of ***Chapter 10 - Maintenance***. The priorities and procedures utilized should be directed toward improvement of the existing system. The standards set forth in this Manual should be used as guidelines for establishing maintenance and reconstruction objectives. All maintenance and reconstruction projects should be planned to minimize traffic control conflicts and hazards.

D.3.b Work Zone Safety

An important responsibility of the operations department is the promotion of work zone safety on the existing highway system. The planning and execution of maintenance, construction, and other activities shall include provisions for the safety of motorists, bicyclists, pedestrians, and workers. All work shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements presented in ***Chapter 11 - Work Zone Safety***.

D.3.c Traffic Control

Traffic engineering is a vital component of highway operations. The planning and design of traffic control devices should be carried out in conjunction with the overall design of the street or highway and highway user. The devices and procedures utilized for traffic control should be predicated upon developing uniformity throughout the system and compatibility with adjacent jurisdictions.

A primary objective to be followed in establishing traffic control procedures is the promotion of safe, orderly traffic flow. The cooperation of police agencies and coordination with local transit providers is essential for the achievement of this objective. Traffic control during maintenance,

Draft

construction, utility, or emergency response operations should receive special consideration.

D.3.d Emergency Response

The emergency response activities (i.e., emergency maintenance and traffic control) of the operations department should be closely coordinated with the work of police, fire, ambulance, medical, and other emergency response agencies. The provisions for emergency access and communications should be included in the initial planning for these activities.

D.3.e Coordination and Supervision

Coordination and supervision of activities on the highway system should include the following:

- Supervision and/or coordination of all activities of the operations department and other agencies to promote safe and efficient operation
- Coordination of all activities to provide consistency within a given jurisdiction
- Coordination with adjacent jurisdictions to develop compatible highway systems
- Coordination with other transportation modes to promote overall transportation efficiency

D.3.f Inspection and Evaluation

The actual operation of streets and highways provides valuable experience and information regarding the effectiveness of various activities. Each operations department should maintain a complete inventory of its highway system and continuously inspect and evaluate the priorities, procedures, and techniques utilized in all activities on the existing system under its jurisdiction. Activities by other agencies, as well as any highway agency, should be subjected to this supervision.

Draft

Promotion of highway safety should be aided by including a safety office (or officer) as an integral part of the operations department. Functions of this office would include the identification and inventory of hazardous locations and procedures for improving the safety characteristics of highway operations.

Results of this inspection and evaluation program should be utilized to make the modification necessary to promote safe and efficient operation. Feedback for modifying design criteria should be generated by this program. Experience and data obtained from operating the system should be utilized as a basis for recommending regulatory changes. Cooperation of legislative, law enforcement, and regulatory agencies is essential to develop the regulation of vehicles, driver behavior, utility, emergency response activities, and the access land use practices necessary for the safe and efficient operation of the highway system.

Draft

E References

Design criteria are established for transportation projects to ensure that they provide safe, economical, and fully-functional multimodal transportation facilities. Various FDOT publications contain information on procedures, criteria, and standards for guiding and controlling design and construction activities. There are many local, state, and federal laws and rules that may impact the design of a project. These laws and rules are referenced in the publications when the Department is aware of them.

For situations where specific design standards or criteria cannot be found in the FDOT publications, current approved technical publications such as AASHTO's *Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets* should be used as design guidelines. Local agencies must ensure that project designs meet or exceed the referenced design criteria and that the standards developed from acceptable guidelines are appropriate for the proposed facility.

The following publications provide further information and guidance for Roadway and Bridge/Structure designs:

- Plans Preparation Manual, Volume I (Topic No. 625-000-007) and Volume II (Topic No. 625-000-008)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/PPMManual/PPM.shtm

- Design Standards (Standard Indexes) (Topic No. 625-010-003)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/DesignStandards/Standards.shtm

- Manual of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction and Maintenance for Streets and Highways (Florida Greenbook) (Topic No. 625-000-015)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/FloridaGreenbook/FGB.shtm

- A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets, 6th Edition (AASHTO Green Book) (AASHTO Bookstore GDHS-6)
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/collection_detail.aspx?ID=110

- FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/specificationsoffice/Implemented/SpecBooks/default.shtm

Draft

- AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, Customary U.S. Units, 6th Edition (AASHTO Bookstore LRFDUS-6-M)
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/item_details.aspx?id=1924

- FDOT Structures Manual (Topic No. 625-020-018)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/structures/StructuresManual/CurrentRelease/StructuresManual.shtm

- FDOT Facilities Design Manual (Topic No. 625-020-016)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/projectmanagementoffice/Publications/default.shtm

- Florida Intersection Design Guide
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/FIDG-Manual/FIDG.shtm

- NCHRP Report 672 – Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, 2nd Edition
  http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_672.pdf

- AASHTO Highway Safety Manual, 1st Edition (AASHTO Bookstore HSM-1)
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/collection_detail.aspx?ID=33

- Local Agency Program Manual (Topic No. 525-010-300)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/projectmanagementoffice/lap/LAP_TOC.shtm

- Project Development and Environmental Manual Part 1 and Part 2 (Topic No. 650-000-001)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/emo/pubs/pdeman/pdeman1.shtm

- Rigid Pavement Design Manual (Topic No. 625-010-006)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/PM/Publications.shtm

- Flexible Pavement Design Manual (Topic No. 625-010-002)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/PM/publicationS.shtm

- FDOT Drainage Manual (Topic No. 625-040-002)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/Hydraulics/ManualsandHandbooks.shtm

- Soils and Foundations Handbook
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/structures/DocsandPubs.shtm

- Standard Highway Signs (FHWA)
  http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/ser-shs_millennium.htm

Draft

- Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, 2009 Edition
  http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/kno_2009r1r2.htm

- Roadway Lighting Design Guide (AASHTO Bookstore GL-6)
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/item_details.aspx?id=320

- AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals, 6th Edition (AASHTO Bookstore LTS-6)
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/collection_detail.aspx?ID=126

- Highway Functional Classification: Concepts, Criteria and Procedures, 2013 Edition (FHWA)
  http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/planning/processes/statewide/related/highway_functional_classifications/section00.cfm

- Highway Capacity Manual 2010 (Transportation Research Board) (TRB Bookstore HCM10)
  http://books.trbbookstore.org/hcm10.aspx

- Quality/Level of Service Handbook
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/planning/systems/programs/sm/los/default.shtm

- Manual on Uniform Traffic Studies (Topic No. 750-020-007)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/trafficoperations/Operations/Studies/MUTS/muts.shtm

- Surveying Procedure (Topic No. 550-030-101)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/surveyingandmapping/doc_pubs.shtm

- Right of Way Mapping Procedure (Topic No. 550-030-015)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/surveyingandmapping/doc_pubs.shtm

- Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities, 4th Edition (AASHTO Bookstore GBF-4) https://bookstore.transportation.org/collection_detail.aspx?ID=116

- Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities, 1st Edition (AASHTO Bookstore GPF-1)
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/collection_detail.aspx?ID=39

- Accessing Transit Design Handbook for Florida Bus Passenger Facilities
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/transit/Pages/NewTransitFacilitiesDesign.shtm

Draft

CHAPTER 2

LAND DEVELOPMENT

A INTRODUCTION 2-1

B OBJECTIVES 2-2

C PRINCIPLES AND GUIDELINES 2-3
- C.1 Network Design 2-3
- C.2 Access Control 2-4
- C.3 Land Use Controls and Space Allocation 2-5

D CONFLICT AND COORDINATION 2-7

E CONTROL TECHNIQUES 2-8
- E.1 Right of Way Acquisition 2-8
- E.2 Police Power 2-8
  - E.2.a General Regulatory Requirements 2-8
  - E.2.b Specific Control 2-9
- E.3 Contracts and Agreements 2-9
- E.4 Education 2-10

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 2

LAND DEVELOPMENT

A INTRODUCTION

A major portion of street and highway construction and reconstruction is generated by, and is accomplished as a result of, land development for residential, commercial, industrial, and public uses. The general land use layout influences, and is controlled by, connections to adjacent road networks with different transportation modes. Techniques, principles, and general layout used for any development also dictate the resulting internal road network. The arrangement and space allocations for this network may determine whether safe, efficient, and economical streets and highways are constructed or reconstructed.

Some land development practices do not promote the creation of a high quality road network. Poor development layouts often result in streets and highways with bad alignment, insufficient sight distance, and inadequate cross section. Insufficient space allocations result in cramped, hazardous intersections, narrow roadside clear zones, and inadequate room for future modifications and expansions. Failure to provide reasonable control of access causes hazardous operating conditions and a dramatic reduction in the capacity and economic value of streets and highways.

Although there are many conflicting demands in land development, the provision of an adequate road network is essential in preserving the social and economic value of any area. Development controls are needed to aid in the establishment of safe streets and highways that will retain their efficiency and economic worth. Provisions for adequate alignment, right of way, setbacks, expansion, and access control are essential.

It is recognized there are many legal, social, and economic problems involved in land use controls. Proper coordination among the public, various governmental bodies, and public transit and highway agencies should, however, allow for the solution of many problems. Implementation of responsible land use and development regulations along with intergovernmental respect for the goals and objectives of each, will promote a superior, long term transportation network.

Draft

B OBJECTIVES

Provisions for vehicular and pedestrian safety are important objectives to be considered in land development. Other land development objectives, related to surface transportation, should include the promotion of smooth traffic flow, efficiency, economy, aesthetics, and environmental compatibility of the transportation network.

General objectives for land development that should be followed to promote good highway design include the following:

- Preserve the function of each street and highway (i.e., use of arterial and collector streets for local circulation seriously compromises safety and capacity)
- Provide for smooth, logical, and energy efficient traffic types and flow patterns
- Provide for the appropriate vehicular speed
- Reduce traffic conflicts to a minimum and eliminate confusion
- Allow for the application of safe geometric design principles
- Provide for bicycle and pedestrian safety
- Provide for future modifications and expansion
- Provide for aesthetic and environmental compatibility
- Develop economic design, construction, and maintenance strategies
- Provide for appropriate public transit facilities
- Provide accessibility for disabled individuals

Draft

C PRINCIPLES AND GUIDELINES

There are many variables involved in land development; therefore, specific standards and requirements for land use and road network layouts cannot always be applied. Use of sound principles and guidelines can, however, aid in meeting the objectives of a better road network. Proper planning and design of the development layout are necessary to provide a satisfactory road network and to allow for the construction of safe roadways. The following principles and guidelines should be utilized in the design of the road network, in the control of access, and in the land use controls and space allocation that would affect vehicular and pedestrian use.

C.1 Network Design

The general layout of the road network establishes the traffic flow patterns and conflicts, thereby determining the basic safety and efficiency criteria. The design of the road network should be based on the following principles:

- The layout of street and highway systems should be logical and easily understood by the user.
- The design and layout of all streets and highways should clearly indicate their function (arterial, collector, etc.).
- Local circulation patterns should be compatible with adjacent areas. Arterials and collectors should not be interrupted or substantially altered at development or jurisdictional boundary lines.
- Flow patterns should be designed to interconnect neighborhoods while discouraging through motorized traffic on local street networks.
- Elements in the local circulation should be adequate to avoid the need for extensive traffic controls.
- Often there are streets where abuse of posted speed limits becomes an enforcement problem and can have a negative safety impact on the circulation within an urban or residential network. In other situations, there are community concerns with controlling speed levels such as in areas of concentrated pedestrian activities, those with narrow right of way, areas with numerous access points, on street parking, and other similar concerns. Local authorities may elect to use traffic calming design features which are presented in ***Chapter 15 - Traffic Calming***.

Draft

- The internal circulation should be sufficient to provide reasonable travel distance for local trips.

- The road network should be compatible with other transportation modes such as mass transit and pedestrian and bicycle facilities. Conflicts between different modes (particularly with pedestrian and bicycle traffic) should be kept to a minimum.

- The road network layout should be designed to reduce internal traffic and pedestrian conflicts and eliminate confusion. Particular emphasis should be directed toward eliminating substantial speed differentials and hazardous turning and crossing maneuvers. The following principles should be utilized for conflict reduction:

  - Generally the number of intersections should be kept to a minimum but should meet land use needs and flow requirements.

  - Local one-way streets are an option to consider where feasible.

  - Local streets should be designed to limit vehicle speeds (length, width, alignment, and intersections).

  - The network should be designed to reduce the number of crossings and left turn maneuvers that are required.

C.2 Access Control

The standards and requirements presented in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***, are absolutely necessary to maintain safe and efficient streets and highways. Failure to provide adequate control of access has seriously damaged many existing roadways. Unrestricted access to major collectors and arterials has dramatically reduced their capacity and general economic value. The safety characteristics of these facilities have similarly been diminished by significantly increasing the number of vehicular, pedestrian, and bicycle traffic conflicts.

The utilization of proper control over access is one of the most effective and economical means for maintaining the safety and utility of streets and highways. The procedures and controls used for land development significantly affect access control. The following principles should be utilized in the formation of land use controls for limiting access:

Draft

- The standards presented in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***, C.8 Access Control, should provide the basis for establishing land development criteria for control of access.

- The use of an arterial or major collector as an integral part of the internal circulation pattern on private property should be prohibited.

- The intersection of private roads and driveways with arterials or major collectors should be strictly controlled.

- Access to sites which generate major traffic (vehicular, pedestrian, and bicycle), should be located to provide the minimum conflict with other traffic. These generators include schools, shopping centers, business establishments, industrial areas, entertainment facilities, etc.

- Commercial strip development, with the associated proliferation of driveways, should be eliminated. Vehicular and pedestrian interconnections should be encouraged.

- The function of all streets and highways should be preserved by the application of the appropriate access controls.

- The spacing and location of access points should be predicated upon reducing the total traffic and pedestrian conflict.

- Hazardous maneuvers should be restricted by access controls. For example, crossing and left turn maneuvers may be controlled by continuous median separation. Pedestrian access should be allowed at appropriate intervals. Medians with waiting space for pedestrians crossing the street are often necessary.

C.3 Land Use Controls and Space Allocation

The provisions for adequate space and proper location of various activities is essential to promote safety and efficiency. The following guidelines should be utilized in land use:

- Adequate corridors and space should be considered for utilities. Utility locations should be carefully chosen to minimize interference with the operation of the streets, highways, and sidewalks.

Draft

- Adequate space for drainage facilities should be provided. Open drainage facilities should be located well clear of the traveled way.

- Design for pedestrian and bicycle facilities should comply with ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities*** and ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***.

- Adequate space should be provided for off-street and side-street parking. This is essential in commercial and industrial areas.

- Right of way and setback requirements should be adequate to provide ample sight distance at all intersections.

- Sufficient space should be allocated for the development of adequate intersections, including accessibility for disabled individuals.

- Space allocation for street lighting (existing or planned) should be incorporated into the initial plan. Supports for this lighting should be located outside of the required clear zone unless they are clearly of breakaway type, or are guarded by adequate protective devices. Lighting plans should provide for well-lit, safe waiting and walking areas and shall conform with the provisions of ***Chapter 6 – ~~Roadway~~ Lighting***.

- Sufficient right of way should be provided for future widening, modification, or expansion of the highway network.

- Adequate corridors for future freeways, High Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) lanes, arterials, or major collectors should be provided.

- Adequate space for desired or required greenways should be provided.

- Adequate space for appropriate public transit facilities should be provided.

Draft

D CONFLICT AND COORDINATION

There are many demands that tend to conflict with the development of safe and efficient streets and highways. Meeting the demand for access can frequently destroy the capacity of a roadway. Pressure to limit the amount of land dedicated for streets and highways inhibits the construction of an adequate road system. Coordination between highway agencies and other governmental bodies can, however, assist in improving the procedures used in land development. Proper coordination should be solicited from legislative bodies, courts, planning and zoning departments, and transit and other governmental agencies to aid in guaranteeing a well-designedwell-designed and adequate highway network. Coordination with transit planners, developers, engineers, architects, contractors, and other private individuals, which is also beneficial, should be a continuous process.

Draft

E CONTROL TECHNIQUES

The implementation of a sound highway transportation plan requires certain controls. A logical network design, adequate access controls, and proper land use controls are dependent upon and foster proper land development practices. Techniques that may be utilized to establish these necessary controls include the following:

E.1 Right of Way Acquisition

The acquisition of sufficient right of way is essential to allow for the construction of adequate streets and highways as specified in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design*** and ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***. The provision of adequate space for clear roadside, sight distance, drainage facilities, buffer zones, intersections, transit, sidewalks, frontage roads, and future expansion is also necessary to develop and maintain safe streets and highways.

E.2 Police Power

The regulatory authority of state and local highway agencies (and other related agencies) should be sufficient to implement the necessary land use controls. The following general regulatory requirements and specific areas of control should be considered as minimum:

E.2.a General Regulatory Requirements

The necessary elements for achieving the following transportation goals should be incorporated into all land use and zoning ordinances:

- General highway transportation plans should be created and implemented.
- Determination and acquisition of transportation corridors for future expansions is essential.
- Development plans clearly showing all street and highway layouts, transit facilities, pedestrian and bicycle facilities, and utility corridors should be required. The execution of these plans should be enforceable.

Draft

- Development plans, building permits, and zoning should be reviewed by the appropriate agency.
- A safety check of proposed streets and highways should be a required step in the review and acceptance of all development plans.

E.2.b Specific Control

Specific areas of control necessary to develop adequate and efficient roadways include the following:

- Land use control and development regulations
- Control of access
- Driveway design
- Street and highway layouts
- Location of vehicular and pedestrian generators
- Location of transit, pedestrian, and bicycle facilities
- Right of way and setback requirements for sight distances and clear zone
- Provisions for drainage

E.3 Contracts and Agreements

Where land purchase or regulatory authority is not available or appropriate, the use of contractual arrangements or agreements with individuals can be beneficial. Negotiations with developers, builders, and private individuals should be used, where appropriate, to aid in the implementation of the necessary controls.

Draft

E.4 Education

Education of the public, developers, and governmental bodies can be beneficial in promoting proper land development controls. The need for future planning, access control, and design standards should be clearly and continuously emphasized. Successful solidification of the cooperation of the public and other governmental bodies depends upon clear presentation of the necessity for reasonable land development controls.

Draft

CHAPTER 3

GEOMETRIC DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION 3-1

B OBJECTIVES 3-4

C DESIGN ELEMENTS 3-5
- C.1 Design Speed 3-5
- C.2 Design Vehicles 3-9
- C.3 Sight Distance 3-12
  - C.3.a Stopping Sight Distance 3-12
  - C.3.b Passing Sight Distance 3-15
  - C.3.c Sight Distance at Decision Points 3-16
  - C.3.d Intersection Sight Distance 3-16
- C.4 Horizontal Alignment 3-16
  - C.4.a General Criteria 3-16
  - C.4.b Superelevation 3-18
  - C.4.c Curvature 3-24
  - C.4.d Superelevation Transition (superelevation runoffs plus tangent runoff) 3-27
  - C.4.e Lane Widening on Curves 3-27
- C.5 Vertical Alignment 3-27
  - C.5.a General Criteria 3-27
  - C.5.b Grades 3-27
  - C.5.c Vertical Curves 3-30
- C.6 Alignment Coordination 3-35
- C.7 Cross Section Elements 3-36
  - C.7.a Number of Lanes 3-36
  - C.7.b Pavement 3-36
    - C.7.b.1 Pavement Width 3-36
    - C.7.b.2 Traveled Way Cross Slope (not in superelevation) 3-41
  - C.7.c Shoulders 3-41

C.7.c.1 Shoulder Width 3-42
C.7.c.2 Shoulder Cross Slope 3-43
C.7.d Sidewalks 3-44
C.7.e Medians 3-45
C.7.e.1 Type of Median 3-46
C.7.e.2 Median Width 3-46
C.7.e.3 Median Slopes 3-49
C.7.e.4 Median Barriers 3-49
C.7.f Roadside Clear Zone 3-50
C.7.f.1 Roadside Clear Zone Width 3-51
C.7.f.2 Roadside Slopes 3-52
C.7.f.3 Criteria for Guardrail 3-52
C.7.g Curbs 3-53
C.7.h Parking 3-54
C.7.i Right of Way 3-54
C.7.j Changes in Typical Section 3-55
C.7.j.1 General Criteria 3-55
C.7.j.2 Lane Deletions and Additions 3-56
C.7.j.3 Preferential Lanes 3-56
C.7.j.4 Structures 3-56
C.7.j.4.(a) Horizontal Clearance 3-58
C.7.j.4.(b) Vertical Clearance 3-58
C.7.j.4.(c) End Treatment 3-58
C.8 Access Control 3-58
C.8.a Justification 3-59
C.8.b General Criteria 3-59
C.8.b.1 Location of Access Points 3-59
C.8.b.2 Spacing of Access Points 3-59
C.8.b.3 Restrictions of Maneuvers 3-60
C.8.b.4 Auxiliary Lanes 3-60
C.8.b.5 Grade Separation 3-60
C.8.b.6 Roundabouts 3-61
C.8.c Control for All Limited Access Highways 3-62
C.8.d Control of Urban and Rural Streets and Highways 3-62

Draft

C.8.e Land Development 3-63
C.9 Intersection Design 3-64
C.9.a General Criteria 3-64
C.9.b Sight Distance 3-65
C.9.b.1 General Criteria 3-66
C.9.b.2 Obstructions to Sight Distance 3-69
C.9.b.3 Stopping Sight Distance 3-70
C.9.b.3.(a) Approach to Stops 3-70
C.9.b.3.(b) On Turning Roads 3-71
C.9.b.4 Sight Distance for Intersection Maneuvers 3-73
C.9.b.4.(a) Driver's Eye Position and Vehicle Stopping Position 3-77
C.9.b.4.(b) Design Vehicle 3-77
C.9.b.4.(c) Case B1 - Left Turns From the Minor Road 3-78
C.9.b.4.(d) Case B2 - Right Turns From the Minor Road and Case B3 – Crossing Maneuver From the Minor Road 3-78
C.9.b.4.(e) Intersections with Traffic Signal Control (AASHTO Case D) 3-79
C.9.b.4.(f) Intersections with All-Way Stop Control (AASHTO Case E) 3-80
C.9.b.4.(g) Left Turns from the Major Road (AASHTO Case F) 3-80
C.9.b.4.(h) Intersection Sight Distance References 3-80
C.9.c Auxiliary Lanes 3-82
C.9.c.1 Merging Maneuvers 3-82
C.9.c.2 Acceleration Lanes 3-84
C.9.c.3 Exit Lanes 3-88
C.9.d Turning Roadways at Intersections 3-94
C.9.d.1 Design Speed 3-94
C.9.d.2 Horizontal Alignment 3-94
C.9.d.3 Vertical Alignment 3-96
C.9.d.4 Cross Section Elements 3-96

C.9.e At Grade Intersections 3-101
C.9.e.1 Turning Radii 3-101
C.9.e.2 Cross Section Correlation 3-101
C.9.e.3 Median Openings 3-102
C.9.e.4 Channelization 3-102
C.9.f Driveways 3-103
C.9.g Interchanges 3-103
C.9.h Clear Zone 3-104
C.10 Other Design Factors 3-105
C.10.a Pedestrian Facilities 3-105
C.10.a.1 Policy and Objectives - New Facilities 3-105
C.10.a.2 Accessibility Requirements 3-105
C.10.a.3 Sidewalks 3-106
C.10.a.4 Curb Ramps 3-106
C.10.a.5 Additional Considerations 3-108
C.10.b Bicycle Facilities 3-108
C.10.c Bridge Design Loadings 3-108
C.10.d Dead End Streets and Cul-de-Sacs 3-108
C.10.e Bus Benches and Transit Shelters 3-109
C.10.f Traffic Calming 3-109
C.11 Reconstruction 3-110
C.11.a Introduction 3-110
C.11.b Evaluation of Streets and Highways 3-110
C.11.c Priorities 3-110
C.12 Design Exceptions 3-112
C.13 Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400) 3-113
C.13.a Bridge Width 3-113
C.13.b Roadside Design 3-113

Draft

TABLES

Table 3 – 1 Recommended Design Speed (mph) 3-8

Table 3 – 2 Design Vehicles 3-11

Table 3 – 3 Stopping Sight Distances 3-14

Table 3 – 4 Passing Sight Distances 3-15

Table 3 – 5 Horizontal Curvature 3-25

Table 3 – 6A Calculated and Design Values for Traveled Way Widening on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way) 3-24

Table 3 – 6B Adjustments for Traveled Way Widening Values on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way) 3-25

Table 3 – 7 Recommended Maximum Grades in Percent 3-28

Table 3 – 8 Maximum Change in Grade Without Using Vertical Curve 3-30

Table 3 – 9 Rounded K Values for Minimum Lengths Vertical Curves 3-31

Table 3 – 10 Minimum Lane Widths 3-38

Table 3 – 11 Shoulder Widths for Rural Highways 3-42

Table 3 – 12 Shoulder Cross Slope 3-43

Table 3 – 13 Median Width for Freeways (Urban and Rural) 3-48

Table 3 – 14 Median Width for Rural Highways (Multilane Facilities) 3-48

Table 3 – 15 Minimum Width of Clear Zone 3-51

Table 3 – 16 Access Control for All Limited Access Highways 3-62

Table 3 – 17 Sight Distance for Approach to Stops 3-70

Table 3 – 18 Length of Taper for Use in Conditions With Full Width Speed Change Lanes 3-82

Draft

Table 3 – 19 Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes Flat Grades - 2 Percent or Less 3-85

Table 3 – 20 Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade to Length on Level 3-86

Table 3 – 21 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals 3-87

Table 3 – 22 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals 3-90

Table 3 – 23 Superelevation Rates for Curves at Intersections 3-95

Table 3 – 24 Maximum Rate of Change in Pavement Edge Elevation for Curves at Intersections 3-95

Table 3 – 25 Maximum Algebraic Difference in Pavement Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals 3-96

Table 3 – 26 Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicles 3-98

FIGURES

Figure 3 – 1 Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways 3-20

Figure 3 – 2 Superelevation Rates (e) For Urban Highways and High Speed Urban Streets (eMAX =0.05) 3-21

Figure 3 – 3 Maximum Safe Speed For Horizontal Curves Urban-Lower Speed Streets 3-21

Figure 3 – 4 Sight Distance on Curves 3-23

Figure 3 – 5 Critical Length Versus Upgrade 3-29

Figure 3 – 6 Length of Crest Vertical Curve (Stopping Sight Distance) 3-32

Figure 3 – 7 Length of Crest Vertical Curve (Passing Sight Distance) 3-33

Figure 3 – 8 Length of Sag Vertical Curve (Headlight Sight Distance) 3-34

Draft

Figure 3 – 9 Standard Detail for FDOT Type F and E Curbs 3-53

Figure 3 – 10 Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades..... 3-72

Figure 3 – 11 Departure Sight Triangle (Traffic Approaching from Left or Right)..... 3-75

Figure 3 – 12 Intersection Sight Distance 3-76

Figure 3 – 13 Sight Distance for Vehicle Turning Left from Major Road 3-81

Figure 3 – 14 Termination of Merging Lanes 3-83

Figure 3 – 15 Entrance for Deceleration Lane 3-92

Figure 3 – 16 Typical Storage Lane 3-93

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 3

GEOMETRIC DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION

Geometric design is defined as the design or proportioning of the visible elements of the street or highway. The geometry of the street or highway~~roadway~~ is of central importance since it provides the framework for the design of other highway elements. In addition, the geometric design establishes the basic nature and quality of the vehicle path, which has a primary effect upon the overall safety characteristics of the street or highway.

The design of roadway geometry must be conducted in close coordination with other design elements of the street or highway. These other elements include: pavement design, roadway lighting, traffic control ~~devices, transit~~devices, transit, drainage, and structural design. The design should consider safe roadside clear zones, pedestrian safety, emergency response, and maintenance capabilities.

The safety characteristics of the design should be given primary consideration. The initial establishment of sufficient right of way and adequate horizontal and vertical alignment is not only essential from a safety standpoint, but also necessary to allow future upgrading and expansion without exorbitant expenditure of highway funds.

The design elements selected should be reasonably uniform but should not be inflexible.

The minimum standards presented in this chapter should not automatically become the standards for geometric design. The designer should consider use of a higher level, when practical, and consider cost-benefits as well as consistency with adjacent facilities. Reconstruction and maintenance of facilities should, where practical, include upgrading to these minimum standards.

In restricted or unusual conditions, it may not be possible to meet the minimum standards. In such cases, the designer shall ~~must~~ obtain an exception in accordance with ***Chapter 14 – Design Exceptions*** from the reviewing or permitting organization. However, every effort should be made to obtain the best possible alignment, grade, sight distance, and proper drainage consistent with the terrain, the development, safety, and fund availability. The concept of road~~highway~~ users has expanded in recent years creating additional considerations~~cerns~~ for the designer.

In making decisions on the standards to be applied to a particular project, the designer must also now address the needs of pedestrians, transit, bicyclists, elder road and transit users, people with disabilitiesthe disabled, freight movement and other users and uses. This is true for both urban and rural facilities.

The design features of urban local streets are governed by practical limitations to a greater extent than those of similar roads in rural areas. The two dominant design controls are: (1) the type and extent of urban development and its limitations on rights of way and (2) zoning or regulatory restrictions. Some streets primarily are land service streets in residential areas. In such cases, the overriding consideration is to foster a safe and pleasing environment. Other streets are land service only in part, and features of traffic and public transit service may be predominant.

The selection of the type and exact design details of a particular streetroadway or highway requires considerable study and thought. When reference is made to guidelines and design details given by current American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) publications, these guidelines and standards should generally be considered as minimum criteria. For the design of recreational roads, local service roads, and alleys, see ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)***, also known as the ***AASHTO Greenbook*** and other publications.

Right of way and pavement width requirements for new construction may be reduced for the paving of certain existing unpaved subdivision streets and very low volume rural roads provided all of the conditions listed below are satisfied:

- The road is functionally classified as a local road.
- The 20-year projected ADT is less than or equal to 400 750 vehicles per day and the design year projected peak hourly volume is 100 vehicles per hour or less. Note: The design year may be any time within a range of the present to 20 years in the future, depending on the nature of the improvement.
- The road has no foreseeable probability of changing to a higher functional classification through changes in land use, extensions to serve new developing land areas, or any other use which would generate daily or hourly traffic volumes greater than those listed above.
- There is no reasonable possibility of acquiring additional right of way without:
    - Incurring expenditures of public funds in an amount which would be excessive compared to the public benefits achieved

Draft

- Causing substantial damage or disruption to abutting property improvements to a degree that is unacceptable considering the local environment

Draft

B OBJECTIVES

The major objective in geometric design is to establish a vehicle path and environment providing a reasonable margin of safety for the motorist, transit, bicyclist, and pedestrian under the expected operating conditions and speed. It is recognized that Florida's design driver is aging and tourism is our major industry. This gives even more emphasis to focus on simplicity and easily understood geometry. The design of and street or highwayroadway features should consider. The achievement of this objective may be realized by meeting certain specific objectives, which include the following:

- Provide the most simple geometry attainable, consistent with the physical constraints
- Provide a design that has a reasonable and consistent margin of safety at the expected operating speed
- Provide a design that is safe at night and under adverse weather conditions
- Provide a facility that is adequate for the expected traffic conditions and transit needs
- Allow for reasonable deficiencies in the driver, such as:
  - Periodic inattention
  - Reduced skill and judgment
  - Slow reaction and response
- Provide an environment that minimizes hazards, is as hazard free as practical, and is "forgiving" to a vehicle that has deviated from the travel path or is out of control.

Draft

C DESIGN ELEMENTS

C.1 Design Speed

Design speed is a selected speed used to determine the various geometric design features of the street or highway. Selection of an appropriate design speed must consider the anticipated operating speed, topography, existing and future adjacent land use, and functional classification. Consideration must also be given to pedestrian and bicycle usage.

Many critical design features such as sight distance and curvature are directly related to, and vary appreciably with, design speed. For this reason, the selected design speed should be consistent with the speeds that drivers are likely to expect on a given street or highway facility. The design speed shall not be less than the expected posted or legal speed limit. Once the design speed is selected, all pertinent highway features should be related to it to obtain a balanced design.

Above minimum design criteria for specific design elements such as flatter curves and longer sight distances should be used where practical, particularly on high speed facilities. On lower speed facilities, use of above minimum values may encourage travel at speeds higher than the design speed.

The design speed utilized should be consistent over a given section of street or highway. Required changes in design speed should be effected in a gradual fashion. When isolated reductions in design speed cannot reasonably be avoided, appropriate speed signs should be posted.

~~The~~ ***AASHTO's A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (2011)*** may be referenced for a more thorough discussion of design speed.

Recommended values for design speed are provided in Table 3-1 Recommended Design Speed. These values should be considered as general guidelines only.

High speed facilities are defined as those facilities with design speeds 50 mph and greater. Low speed facilities are defined as those facilities with design speeds 45 mph and less.

~~The design speed is defined as a selected rate of travel used to determine the~~

various geometric features of the street or highwayroadway. The basic purpose in using the design speed concept is to achieve consistency in the various design elements that influence vehicle operations. Since many critical design features (e.g., sight distance and curvature) are predicated upon design speed, the selection of the proper value is essential to allow for the safe design of a street or highway.

The selection of an appropriate design speed is dependent on the predicted driver behavior and is, therefore, rather complex. This selection of design speed should receive considerable preliminary investigation and thought so safety will be realized from the design.

The primary basis for selecting the design speed should be a rational prediction of the probable maximum operating speed (by approximately 90 percent of the vehicles) on the street or highway. The "average running speed" is not acceptable as a design speed.

In selecting design speeds, consideration should also be given to pedestrians and bicycle usage and to the present and future adjacent land use.

Recommended minimum values for design speed are given in Table 3 - 1. These values should be considered as general guidelines only. The maximum normal operating speed is dependent on many variables including:

- Topography
- General roadway geometry
- Mix of users (e.g. pedestrians, bicyclists, transit vehicles, trucks)
- Surrounding land use
- Degree of access
- Frequency of traffic signals or other traffic control devices
- Posted speed limit and the degree of enforcement

The driver does not necessarily adjust speed to the classification of importance (or lack of it) of the street or highway.

The design speed shall not be less than the expected posted or legal speed limit. A design speed 5 mph to 10 mph greater than the posted speed limit will compensate for a slight overrunning of the speed limit by some drivers.

Draft

~~The use of the higher design speed (no speed restrictions) given in Table 3 - 1 is recommended for the following situations:~~

- ~~Topography allowing or encouraging higher operating speeds~~
- ~~Roadway geometry permitting high speeds~~
- ~~Long uninterrupted sections of roadway~~

~~The design speed utilized should be consistent over a given section of street or highway. Required changes in design speed should be effected in a gradual fashion. When isolated reductions in design speed cannot reasonably be avoided, appropriate speed signs should be posted.~~

Draft

Table 3 – 1
Recommended ~~MINIMUM~~ Design Speed (mph)

Facility[1]		AADT (vpd)	Terrain	Design Speed (mph)
Freeways	Rural	All	Level and Rolling	70
	Urban	All	Level and Rolling	50 – 70[2]
Arterials	Rural	All	Level	60 – 70
			Rolling	50 – 70
	Urban	All	All	30 – 60[3]
Collectors	Rural	≥ 400	Level	60 – 65 (50 mph min for AADT 400 to 2000)
			Rolling	50 – 65 (40 mph min for AADT 400 to 2000)
		< 400	Level	40 – 60
			Rolling	30 – 60
	Urban	All	All	30 – 50[3]
Local	Rural	≥ 400	Level	50 – 60
			Rolling	40 – 60
		< 400	Level	40 – 60 (30 mph min for AADT < 250)
			Rolling	30 – 60 (20 mph min for AADT < 50)
	Urban	All	All	20 – 30[4]

Footnotes:

1. Urban design speeds are applicable to streets and highways located within designated urban boundaries as well as those streets and highways outside designated urban boundaries yet within small communities or urban like developed areas~~in designated rural areas~~. Rural design speeds are applicable to all other rural areas.
2. A design speed of 70 mph should be used for urban freeways when practical. Lower design speeds should only be used in highly developed areas with closely spaced interchanges. For these areas a minimum design speed of 60 mph is recommended unless it can be shown lower speeds will be consistent with driver expectancy.
3. Lower speeds apply to central business districts and in more developed areas while higher speeds are more applicable to outlying and developing areas.
4. Since the function of urban local streets is to provide access to adjacent property, all design elements should be consistent with the character of activity on and adjacent to the street, and should encourage speeds generally not exceeding 30 mph.

Draft

Source: 2004 AASHTO Greenbook, Design Controls and Criteria, Design Speed, Pages 67 – 72, 420

* Speed restrictions are features of the design which would effectively limit the operating speed, such as:

a. **Short length of roadway (i.e., dead-end street)**
b. **Closely spaced stop signs, traffic signals or other control devices**
c. **Locations that would by nature of the surrounding development or land use, indicate to the driver that lower speeds were necessary**

** Design speeds lower that 30 mph may be used for local, subdivision type roads and streets. Streets with a design speed less than 30 mph shall be posted with appropriate legal speed limit signs.

C.2 Design Vehicles

A "design vehicle" is a selected motor vehicle with representative hose weight, dimensions, and operating characteristics, are used to establish street and highway design controls forto accommodatinge vehicles of a designated classestype[KM1]. For the purpose of geometric design, the design vehicle should be one with dimensions and minimum turning radii larger than those of almost all vehicles in its class. Design vehicles are listed in Table 3 - 2 Design Vehicles. One or more of these vehicles should be used as a control in the selection of geometric design elements. In certain industrial (or other) areas, special service vehicles may have to be considered in the design. Fire equipment and emergency vehicles should have reasonable access to all areas.

If a significant number or percentage (5 percent of all the total traffic) of vehicles of those classes larger than passenger vehicles are likely to use a particular street or highway, that class should be used as a design control. The design of major arterial streets and highways should normally be adequate to accommodate all design vehicles. The decision as to which of the design vehicles (or other special vehicles) should be used as a control is complex and requires careful study. Each situation must be evaluated individually to arrive at a reasonable estimate of the type and volume of expected traffic.

- Design criteria significantly affected by the type of vehicle include:
- Horizontal and vertical clearances
- Alignment
- Lane widening on curves

Draft

- Shoulder width requirements
- Turning roadway and intersection radii
- Intersection sight distance
- Acceleration criteria

Particular care should be taken in establishing the radii at intersections, so vehicles may enter the street or highway without encroaching on adjacent travel lanes or leaving the pavement. It is acceptable for occasional trucks or buses to make use of both receiving lanes, especially on side streets.

Draft

Table 3 – 2
Design Vehicles[JM2][KM3][KM4][KM5][KM6][MAK7]

DESIGN VEHICLE		DIMENSIONS IN FEET					
Type	Symbol	Wheelbase	Overhang		Overall Length	Overall Width	Height
			Front	Rear			
Passenger Car	P	11	3	5	19	7	4.325
Single Unit Truck	SU-30	20	4	6	30	8	11-13.5
Single Unit Truck – 3 Axle	SU-40	25	4	10.5	39.5	8	11-13.5
City Transit Bus	CITY-BUS	25	7	8	40	8.5	10.5
Conventional School Bus (65 passenger)	S-BUS 3611	21.3	2.5	12.0	35.8	8.0	10.5
Articulated Bus	A-BUS	22+19.4=41.4	8.6	10	60	8.5	11
Motor Home	MH	20	4	6	30	8	12
Car & Camper Trailer	P/T	11+5+17.79=335.7**	3	120	48.7	8	10
Car & Boat Trailer	P/B	11+5+15=31**	3	8	42	8	---
Intermediate Semitrailer	WB-40	12.5+257.5=3840	3	42.5	45.5	8	13.5
Intermediate Semitrailer	WB-50	14.6+35.4=50	3	2	55	8.5	13.5
Interstate Semitrailer	WB-62	19.521.6+410.4=602.5	4	42.5	698.5	8.5	13.5
Florida Interstate Semitrailer	WB-62FL	19.5+41=60.5	4	9	73.5	8.5	13.5
~~Interstate Semitrailer~~	~~WB-65~~	~~21.6+43.4=65~~	~~4~~	~~4.5~~	~~73.5~~	~~8.5~~	~~13.5~~
Interstate Semitrailer	WB-67	21.6+45.4=67	4	2.5	73.5	8.5	13.5
"Double-Bottom"-Semitrailer/Trailer Combination	WB-67D[JM8]	11+23+10*+22.53=667.5	2.33	3.0	72.3.3	8.5	13.5

Source: 20042011 AASHTO Greenbook, Design Controls and Criteria, Exhibit 2-1Table 2-1b.

* Distance between rear wheels of front trailer and front wheels of rear trailer
** Distance between rear wheels of trailer and front wheels of car

Draft

C.3 Sight Distance

The provision for adequate horizontal and vertical sight distance is an essential factor in the development of a safe street or highway. An unobstructed view of the upcoming roadway is necessary to allow time and space for the safe execution of passing, stopping, intersection movements, and other normal and emergency maneuvers. It is also important to provide as great a sight distance as possible to allow the driver time to plan for future actions. The driver is continuously required to execute normal slowing, turning, and acceleration maneuvers. If he can plan in advance for these actions, traffic flow will be smoother and less hazardous. Unexpected emergency maneuvers will also be less hazardous if they are not combined with uncertainty regarding the required normal maneuvers. The appropriate use of lighting (***Chapter 6 - ~~ROADWAY~~ Lighting***) may be required to provide adequate sight distances for night driving.

Future obstruction to sight distance that may develop (e.g., vegetation) or be constructed should be taken into consideration in the initial design. Areas outside of the road~~highway~~ right of way that are not under the highway agency's jurisdiction should be considered as points of obstruction. Planned future construction of median barriers, guardrails, grade separations, or other structures should also be considered as possible sight obstructions.

C.3.a Stopping Sight Distance

Safe stopping sight distances shall be provided continuously on all streets and highways. The factors, which determine the minimum distance required to stop, include:

- Vehicle speed
- Driver's total reaction time
- Characteristics and conditions of the vehicle
- Friction capabilities between the tires and the roadway surface
- Vertical and horizontal alignment of the roadway

It is desirable that the driver be given sufficient sight distance to avoid an object or slow moving vehicle with a natural, smooth maneuver rather than an extreme or panic reaction.

Draft

The determination of available stopping sight distance shall be based on a height of the driver's eye equal to 3.50 feet and a height of obstruction to be avoided equal to two feet (20.50 feet). It would, of course, be desirable to use a height of obstruction equal to zero (coincident with the roadway surface) to provide the driver with a more positive sight condition. Where horizontal sight distance may be obstructed on curves, the driver's eye and the obstruction shall be assumed to be located at the centerline of the trafficvel lane on the inside of the curve.

The stopping sight distance shall be no less than the values given in Table 3 - 3 Stopping Sight Distances.

Draft

Table 3 – 3
Stopping Sight Distances~~AND LENGTHS OF VERTICAL CURVES~~

MINIMUM STOPPING SIGHT DISTANCES (feet) (For application of stopping sight distance, use an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 2 feet~~6 inches~~ above the road surface)												
Design Speed (mph)	~~15~~	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Stopping Sight Distance (feet)	~~80~~	115	155	200	250	305	360	425	495	570	645	730

~~ROUNDED K VALUES FOR MINIMUM LENGTHS VERTICAL CURVES~~												
~~L = KA~~ ~~L = LENGTH OF VERTICAL CURVE A = ALGEBRAIC DIFFERENCE OF GRADES IN PERCENT~~												
~~Design Speed (MPH)~~	~~15~~	~~20~~	~~25~~	~~30~~	~~35~~	~~40~~	~~45~~	~~50~~	~~55~~	~~60~~	~~65~~	~~70~~
~~K Values for Crest Vertical Curves~~	~~5~~	~~710~~	~~12~~ ~~19~~	~~19~~ ~~31~~	~~29~~ ~~47~~	~~44~~ ~~70~~	~~61~~ ~~98~~	~~84~~ ~~136~~	~~114~~ ~~185~~	~~151~~ ~~245~~	~~193~~ ~~313~~	~~247~~ ~~401~~
~~K Values for Sag Vertical Curves~~	~~10~~	~~17~~	~~26~~	~~37~~	~~49~~	~~64~~	~~79~~	~~96~~	~~115~~	~~136~~	~~157~~	~~181~~

- ~~The length of vertical curve must never be less than three times the design speed of the highway~~
- ~~Curve lengths computed from the formula L = KA should be rounded upward when feasible~~
- ~~The minimum lengths of vertical curves to be used on COLLECTORS, ARTERIALS AND FREEWAYS major highways are shown in the table below~~

~~MINIMUM LENGTHS FOR VERTICAL CURVES ON COLLECTORS, ARTERIALS, AND FREEWAYSMAJOR HIGHWAYS (FEET)~~			
~~Design Speed (MPH)~~	~~50~~	~~60~~	~~70~~
~~Crest Vertical Curves (FEET)~~	~~300~~	~~400~~	~~500~~
~~Sag Vertical Curves (FEET)~~	~~200~~	~~300~~	~~400~~

~~MINIMUM PASSING SIGHT DISTANCES (FEET)~~ ~~(For application of passing sight distance, use an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 3.50 feet above the road surface)~~											
~~Design Speed (MPH)~~	~~20~~	~~25~~	~~30~~	~~35~~	~~40~~	~~45~~	~~50~~	~~55~~	~~60~~	~~65~~	~~70~~
~~Minimum Passing Sight Distance (FEET)~~	~~710~~	~~900~~	~~1090~~	~~1280~~	~~1470~~	~~1625~~	~~1835~~	~~1985~~	~~2135~~	~~2285~~	~~2480~~

Source: 2011~~04~~ AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3-1~~Exhibits 3-72 and 3-73, page 272~~.

Draft

C.3.b Passing Sight Distance

The passing maneuver, which requires occupation of the opposing travel lane, is inherently dangerous. The driver is required to make simultaneous estimates of time, distance, relative speeds, and vehicle capabilities. Errors in these estimates result in frequent and serious crashes.

Streets or h~~H~~ighways with two or more travel lanes in a given direction are not subject to requirements for safe passing sight distance. Two-lane, two-way highways should be provided with safe passing sight distance for as much of the highway as feasible. The driver demand for passing opportunity is high and serious limitations on the opportunity for passing reduces the capacity and safe characteristics of the highway.

The distance traveled after the driver's final decision to pass (while encroaching into the opposite travel path) is that which is required to pass and return to the original travel lane in front of the overtaken vehicle. In addition to this distance, the safe passing sight distance must include the distance traveled by an opposing vehicle during this time period, as well as a reasonable margin of safety. Due to the many variables in vehicle characteristics and driver behavior, the passing sight distance should be as long as is practicable.

The determination of passing sight distance shall be based on a height of eye equal to 3.50 feet and a height of object passing equal to 3.50 feet. Where passing is permitted, the passing sight distance shall be no less than the values given in Table 3 - 4 Passing Sight Distances~~3~~.

Table 3 – 4
Passing Sight Distances

MINIMUM PASSING SIGHT DISTANCES (feet) (For application of passing sight distance, use an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 3.50 feet above the road surface)											
Design Speed (mph)	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Minimum Passing Sight Distance (feet)	~~710~~ 400	~~900~~ 450	~~1090~~ 500	~~1280~~ 550	~~1470~~ 600	~~1625~~ 700	~~1835~~ 800	~~1985~~ 900	~~2135~~ 1000	~~2285~~ 1100	~~2480~~ 1200

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3-4.

Draft

C.3.c Sight Distance at Decision Points

It is desirable to provide sight distances exceeding the minimum at changes in geometry, approaches to intersections, entrances and exits, and other potential decision points or hazards. The sight distance should be adequate to allow the driver sufficient time to observe the upcoming situation, make the proper decision, and take the appropriate action in a normal manner.

Minimum stopping distance does not provide sufficient space or time for the driver to make decisions regarding complex situations requiring more than simple perception-reaction process. In many cases, rapid stopping or lane changing may be extremely undesirable and cause hazardous maneuvers (i.e., in heavy traffic conditions); therefore, it would be preferable to provide sufficient sight distance to allow for a more gradual reaction.

The sight distance on a freeway preceding the approach nose of an exit ramp should exceed the minimum by 25 percent or more. A minimum sight distance of 1000 feet, measured from the driver's eye to the road surface is a desirable goal. There should be a clear view of the exit terminal including the exit nose.

C.3.d Intersection Sight Distance

Sight distances for intersection movements are given in the general intersection requirements (C.9 Intersection Design, this chapter).

C.4 Horizontal Alignment

C.4.a General Criteria

The standard of alignment selected for a particular section of street or highway should extend throughout the section with no sudden changes from easy to sharp curvature. Where sharper curvature is unavoidable, a sequence of curves of increasing degree should be utilized.

Winding alignment consisting of sharp curves is hazardous, reduces capacity, and should be avoided. The use of as flat a curve as possible is recommended. Flatter curves are not only less hazardous, but also frequently less costly due to the shortened roadway.

Draft

Maximum curvature should not be used in the following locations:

- High fills or elevated structures. The lack of surrounding objects reduces the driver's perception of the roadway alignment.
- At or near a crest in grade
- At or near a low point in a sag or grade
- At the end of long tangents
- At or near intersections, transit stops, or points of ingress or egress
- At or near other decision points

The "broken back" arrangement of curves (short tangent between two curves in the same direction) should be avoided. This is acceptable only at design speeds of 30 mph or less. This arrangement produces an unexpected and hazardous situation.

When reversals in alignment are used and superelevation is required, a sufficient length of tangent between the reverse curves is required for adequate superelevation transition.

Compound curves should be avoided, especially when curves are sharp. They tend to produce erratic and dangerous vehicle operations. When compound curves are necessary, the radius of the flatter curve should not be more than 50 percent greater than the sharper curve.

The transition between tangents and curves should normally be accomplished by the use of appropriate straight-line transitions or spirals. This is essential to assist the driver in maintaining his vehicle in the proper travel path.

For small deflection angles, curves should be suitably lengthened to avoid the distracting appearance of a kink. Curves should be at least 900 feet long for a central angle of 1 degree or 500 feet long for a central angle of 5 degrees. Gently flowing alignment is generally more pleasing in appearance, as well as, superior from a safety standpoint.

Draft

C.4.b Superelevation

In the design of street and highway curves, it is necessary to establish a proper relationship between curvature of the roadway and design speed. The use of superelevation (rotation of the roadway about its axis) is employed to counteract centrifugal force and allow drivers to comfortably and safely travel through curves at the design speed.

The superelevation rates for rural highways, urban freeways, and high speed urban highwaysarterials are shown in Figure 3 - 1Figure 3 - 1 Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways. These rates are based on a maximum rate of 0.10 foot per foot of roadway width. Additional superelevation details, given in the Department's Design Standards, may be considered.

The superelevation rates recommended for urban highways and high speed urban streets are shown in Figure 3 - 2Figure 3 - 2 Superelevation Rates (e) For Urban Highways and High Speed Urban Streets. These rates are based on a maximum superelevation rate of 0.05 foot per foot of roadway width and are recommended for arterials and collectorsmajor streets in built up areas. Additional information regarding superelevation, given in the Department's Design Standards, and ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - (AASHTO, 2011)01***, may be considered.

Although superelevation is advantageous for traffic operations, various factors combine to make its use impractical in many built-up areas. Such factors include:

- Wide pavement areas
- Need to meet grade of adjacent property
- Surface drainage considerations
- Frequency of cross streets, alleys, and driveways

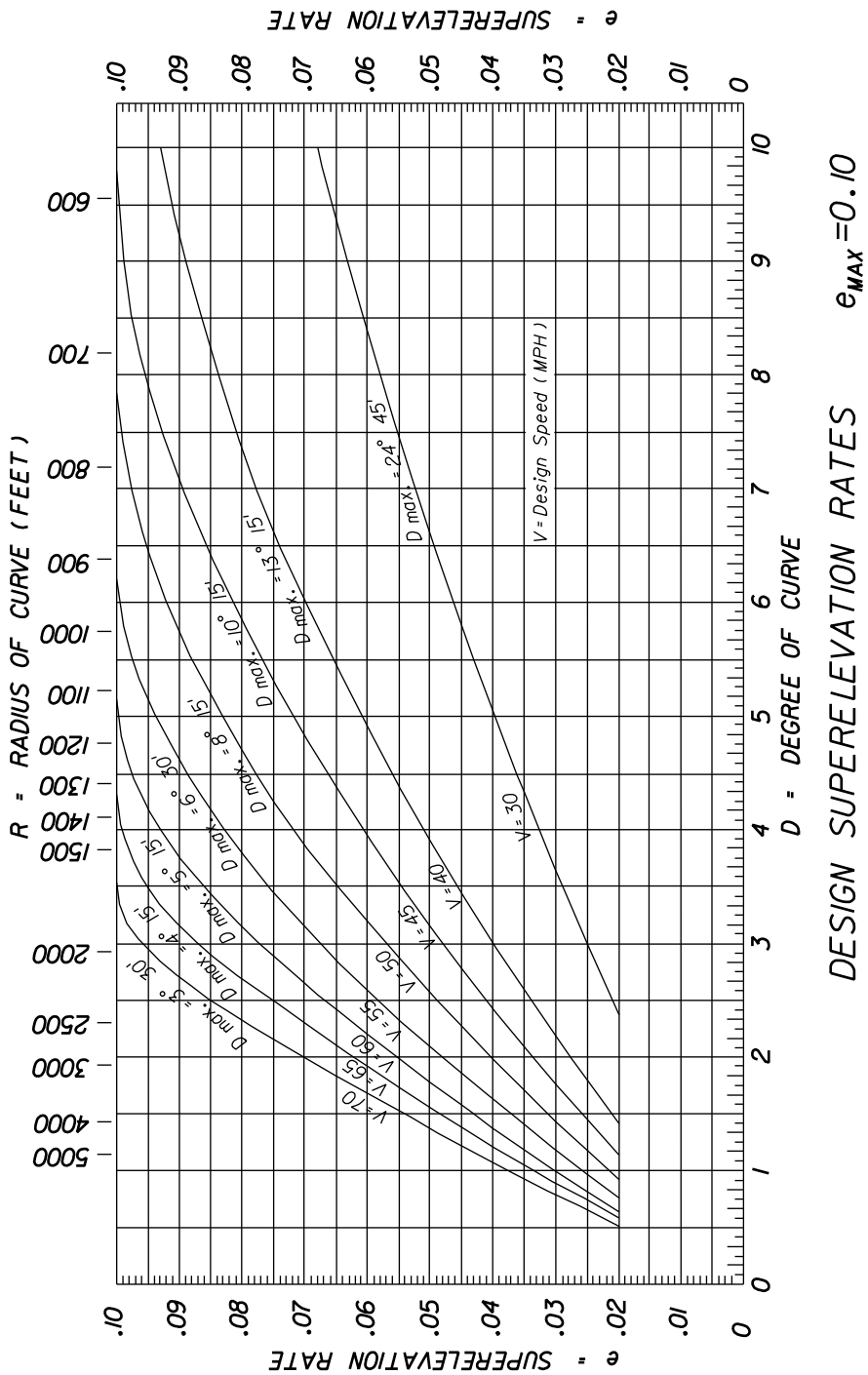
Therefore, horizontal curves on lower speed streets in residentialsubdivision and urban areas are usually designed without superelevation, only side friction being used to counteract the centrifugal force. Figure 3 - 3 Maximum Safe Speed or Horizontal CurvesUrban-Lower Speed Streets 2Figure 3 -- 3 Maximum Safe Speed for Horizontal Curves Urban-Lower Speed Streets 2 may be used for determination of the

Draft

maximum safe speed for horizontal curves on lower speed urban streets.

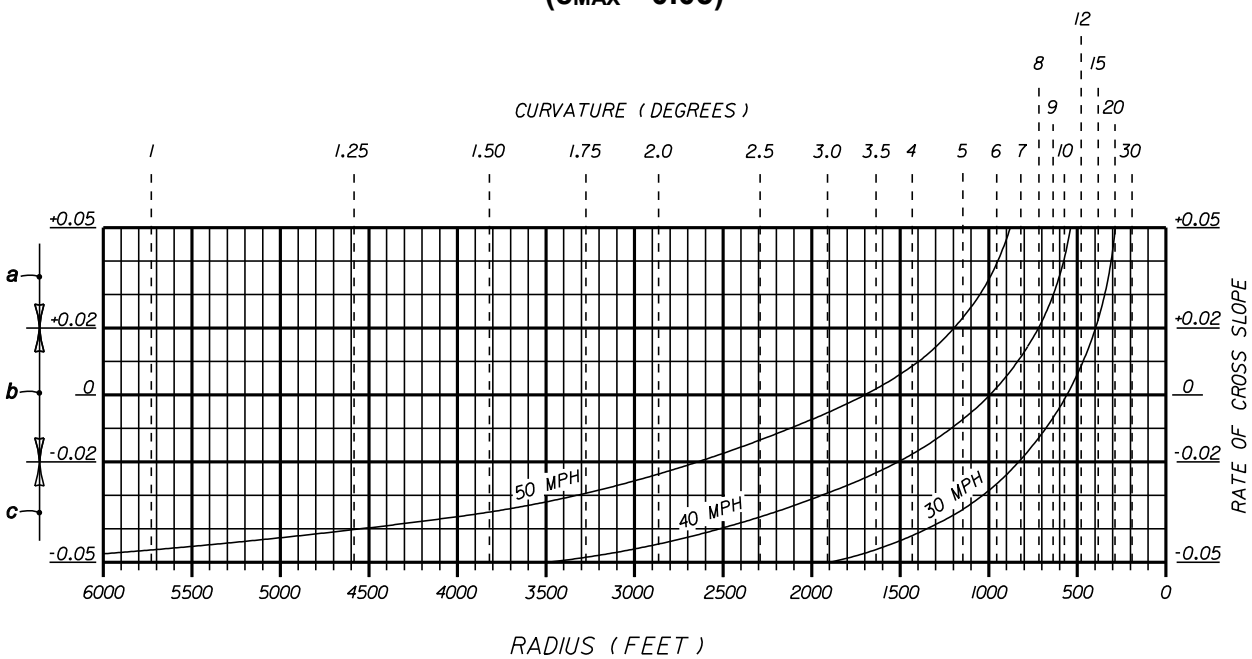
Draft

Figure 3 – 1
Rural Highways, Urban Freeways
and High Speed Urban Highways ARTERIALS



Draft

Figure 3 – 2
Superelevation Rates (e) For Urban Highways and High Speed Urban Streets
(e_{MAX} =0.05)



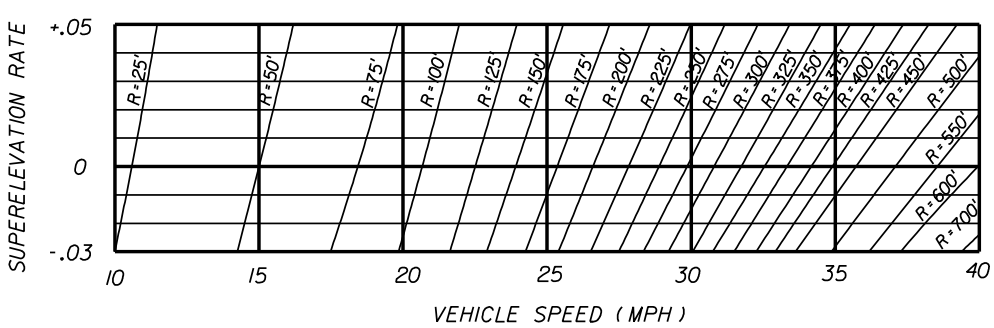
a. When the speed curves and the degree of curve lines intersect above this line, the pavement is to be superelevated (positive slope) at the rates indicated at the lines intersecting points.

b. When the speed curves and the degree of curve lines intersect between these limits, the pavement is to be superelevated at the rate of 0.02 (positive slope).

c. When the speed curves and the degree of curve lines intersect below this line, the pavement is to have normal crown (typically 0.02 and 0.03 downward slopes).

~~**SUPERELEVATION RATES (e) FOR URBAN HIGHWAYS AND HIGH SPEED URBAN STREETS (e_{MAX} = 0.05)**~~[MAK9]

Figure 3 – 3 Maximum Safe Speed For Horizontal Curves Urban-Lower Speed Streets[MAK10]



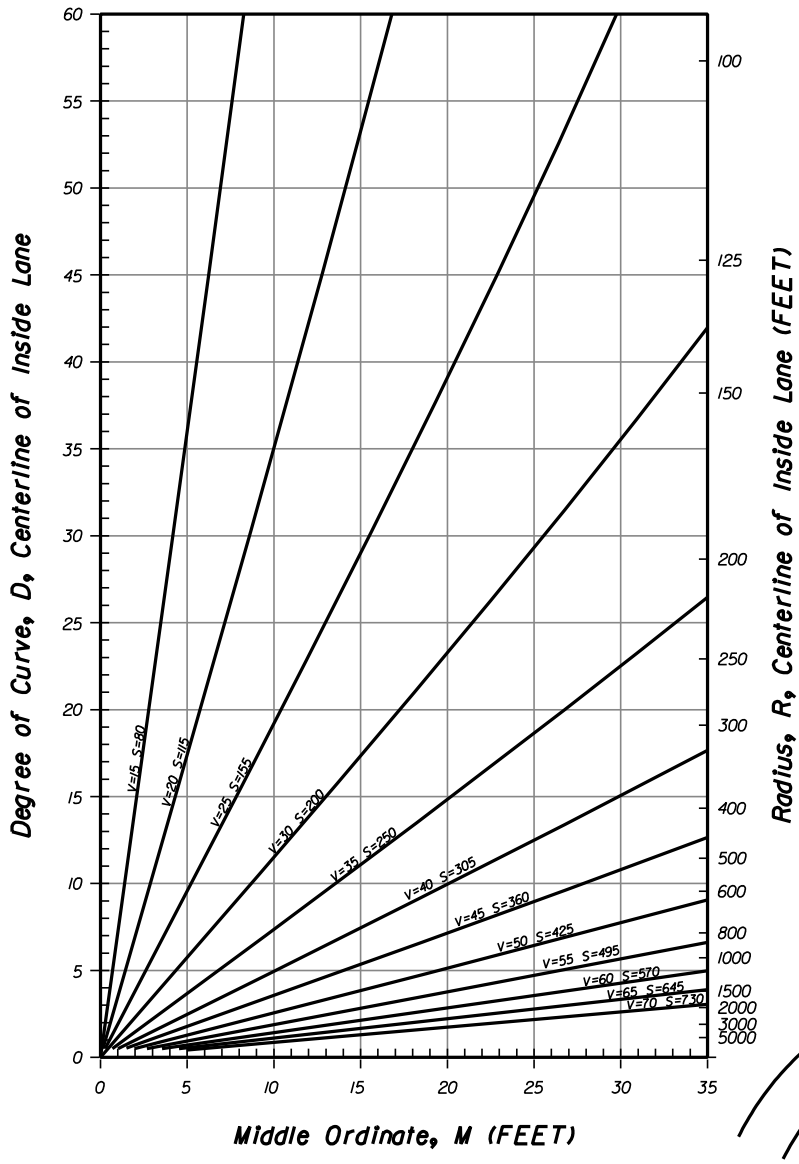
~~**MAXIMUM SAFE SPEED FOR HORIZONTAL CURVES**~~

Draft

~~URBAN-LOWER SPEED STREETS~~

Draft

Figure 3 – 4~~2A~~
Sight Distance on Curves



$$M = \frac{5730}{D}\left(1 - \cos\frac{SD}{200}\right)$$

$$R = \frac{5730}{D} \quad \text{and} \quad \theta = \frac{SD}{200}$$

$$M = R\,(1 - \cos\theta)$$

$$M = R\left(1 - \cos\frac{28.65\,S}{R}\right)$$

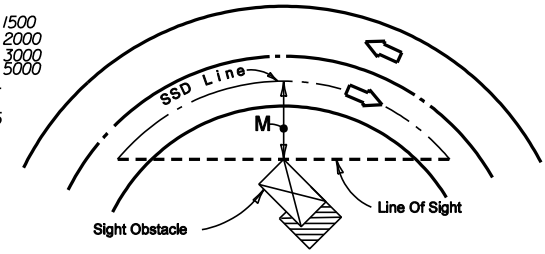
Where

S = Stopping Sight Distance (FEET)

D = Degree of Curve

M = Middle Ordinate (FEET)

R = Radius (FEET)



RELATION BETWEEN DEGREE OF CURVE AND VALUE OF MIDDLE ORDINATE NECESSARY TO PROVIDE STOPPING SIGHT DISTANCE ON HORIZONTAL CURVES UNDER OPEN ROAD CONDITIONS.

Draft

C.4.c Curvature

Where a directional change in alignment is required, every effort should be made to utilize the smallest degree (largest radius) curvature possible. The use of the maximum degree of curvature should be avoided when possible. Design speed maximum degree of curvature relationships are given in Table 3 - 5 Horizontal Curvature. The use of sharper curvature for the design speeds shown in Table 3 - 5 would call for superelevation beyond the limit considered practical or for operation with tire friction beyond safe or comfortable limits or both. The maximum degree of curvature is a significant value in alignment design.

Draft

Table 3 – 54
Horizontal Curvature[HMJ11]

RURAL Based on e_{MAX} = 0.10			URBAN High-Speed Highways and Streets Based on e_{MAX} = 0.05		
Design Speed (mph)	Max. Degree of Curvature	Min. Radius (feet)	Design Speed (mph)	Max. Degree of Curvature	Min. Radius (feet)
~~15~~	~~104° 45'~~	~~55~~	~~---~~	~~---~~	~~---~~
20	~~57~~79° ~~45'~~30'	~~100~~75	---	---	---
25	~~36~~45° 15'	~~160~~130	---	---	---
30	~~24~~28° ~~45'~~30'	~~230~~200	30	~~20~~23° ~~00'~~45'	~~285~~245
35	~~17~~19° ~~45'~~30'	~~320~~295	35	~~14~~16° ~~15'~~00'	~~400~~360
40	13° ~~15'~~45'	~~430~~415	40	~~10~~11° ~~45'~~15'	~~535~~510
45	10° ~~15'~~30'	~~555~~540	45	8° 15'	~~695~~680
50	8° 15'	695	50	6° 30'	880
55	6° 30'	880	55	5° 00'	1125
60	5° 15'	1095	---	---	---
65	4° 15'	1345	---	---	---
70	3° 30'	1640	---	---	---

LOW-SPEED URBAN STREETS				
Design Speed (mph)	With e_{MAX} = 0.05		Without Superelevation (e_{MAX} = -0.02)	
	Max. Degree of Curvature	Min. Radius (feet)	Max. Degree of Curvature	Min. Radius (feet)
~~15~~	~~144° 45'~~	~~40~~	~~118° 15'~~	~~50~~
20	~~75~~68° ~~00'~~45'	~~75~~85	~~60~~53° ~~00'~~30'	~~95~~110
25	~~41~~38° 30'	~~140~~150	~~31~~28° 45'	~~180~~200
30	~~25~~23° 45'	~~225~~240	~~19~~17° ~~15'~~00'	~~300~~335

(TABLE CONTINUES ON NEXT PAGE)

Draft

Table 3 – 54
Horizontal Curvature
(Continued)

LATERAL CLEARANCE FROM EDGE OF TRAVELED WAYPAVEMENT TO OBSTRUCTION FOR MAXIMUM CURVATURE (DEGREES), BASED ON LINE OF SIGHT ON INSIDE LANE (Lateral Clearance = $M_{Inside\ Lane}$ – 6') Based on e_{MAX} = 0.10		
Design Speed (mph)	Maximum Curvature	Clearance (feet)
20	5779° 4530'	11[KM12][KM13][HMJ14][KM15]15
25	3645° 15'"	1317
30	2428° 45'30'	1618
35	1719° 45'30'	1920
40	13° 15'45'	2122
45	10° 15'30'	2324
50	8° 15'	27
55	6° 30'	29
60	5° 15'	31
65	4° 15'	33
70	3° 30'	35

Draft

C.4.d Superelevation Transition (superelevation runoffs plus tangent runoff)

Superelevation runoff is the general term denoting the length of street or highway needed to accomplish the change in cross slope from a section with the adverse crown removed (level) fully superelevated section, or vice versa. Tangent runoff is the general term denoting the length of street or highway needed to accomplish the change in cross slope from a normal cross section to a section with the adverse crown removed, or vice versa. Spiral curves can be used to transition from the tangent to the curve. Where the spiral curve is employed, its length is used to make the entire superelevation transition.

The Department's Design Standards show in detail superelevation transitions for various sections and methods for determining length of transition.

C.4.e Lane Widening on Curves

The traveled waylane should be widened on sharp curves due to the increased difficulty for the driver to follow the proper path. Trucks and transit vehicles experience additional difficulty due to the fact that the rear wheels may track considerably inside the front wheels thus requiring additional width. Adjustments to traveled waylane widths for mainline and turning roadways are given in Tables 3 - 5ATables 3 - 65A Calculated and Design Values for Traveled Way Widening on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way and 3 - 5B3 - 65B Adjustments or Traveled Way Widening Values on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way. A transition length shall be introduced in changing to an increased/decreased lane width. This transition length shall be proportional to the increase/decrease in traveled waypavement width in a ratio of not less than 50 feet of transition length for each foot of change in lane width.

Draft

Table 3 – 6~~5~~A
Calculated and Design Values for Traveled Way Widening on Open Highway Curves
(Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way)

Radius of Curve (feet)	Roadway width = 24 feet. Design Speed (mph)							Roadway width = 22 feet. Design Speed (mph)							Roadway width = 20 feet. Design Speed (mph)						
	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
7000	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.9	0.9	1.6	1.6	1.7	1.7	1.8	1.9	1.9
6500	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.6	1.7	1.7	1.8	1.8	1.9	2.0
6000	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.0	1.6	1.7	1.8	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.0
5500	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.7	1.7	1.8	1.9	1.9	2.0	2.1
5000	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.7	0.8	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.1	1.7	1.8	1.9	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.1
4500	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.8	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.8	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.1	2.2
4000	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.2	0.2	0.3	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.3	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.2	2.3
3500	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.4	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.3	1.4	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.3	2.4
3000	0.0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.4	2.5	2.6
2500	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8	2.2	2.3	2.4	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.8
2000	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	1.0	1.1	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8	2.0	2.1	2.4	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.8	3.0	3.1
1800	0.5	0.6	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.5	1.6	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.5	2.6	2.8	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.2
1600	0.7	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.7	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.2	2.3	2.4	2.7	2.8	2.9	3.0	3.2	3.3	3.4
1400	0.8	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.8	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.4	2.5	2.6	2.8	3.0	3.1	3.2	3.4	3.5	3.6
1200	1.1	1.2	1.4	1.5	1.7	1.8	1.9	2.1	2.2	2.4	2.5	2.7	2.8	2.9	3.1	3.2	3.4	3.5	3.7	3.8	3.9
1000	1.4	1.6	1.7	1.9	2.0	2.2	2.4	2.4	2.6	2.7	2.9	3.0	3.2	3.4	3.4	3.6	3.7	3.9	4.0	4.2	4.4
900	1.6	1.8	2.0	2.1	2.3	2.5		2.6	2.8	3.0	3.1	3.3	3.5		3.6	3.8	4.0	4.1	4.3	4.5	
800	1.9	2.1	2.2	2.4	2.6	2.8		2.9	3.1	3.2	3.4	3.6	3.8		3.9	4.1	4.2	4.4	4.6	4.8	
700	2.2	2.4	2.6	2.8	3.0			3.2	3.4	3.6	3.8	4.0			4.2	4.4	4.6	4.8	5.0		
600	2.7	2.9	3.1	3.3	3.5			3.7	3.9	4.1	4.3	4.5			4.7	4.9	5.1	5.3	5.5		
500	3.3	3.5	3.7	3.9				4.3	4.5	4.7	4.9				5.3	5.5	5.7	5.9			
450	3.7	3.9	4.1					4.7	4.9	5.1					5.7	5.9	6.1				
400	4.2	4.4	4.7					5.2	5.4	5.7					6.2	6.4	6.7				
350	4.8	5.1	5.3					5.8	6.1	6.3					6.8	7.1	7.3				
300	5.6	5.9						6.6	6.9						7.6	7.9					
250	6.8							7.8							8.8						
200	8.5							9.5							10.5						

Notes: Values shown are for WB-50[JM16][KM17] design vehicle and represent widening in feet. For other design vehicles, use adjustments in ~~Table 3-20B~~Table 3-6~~20~~B.

Values less than 2.0 feet may be disregarded.

For 3-lane roadways, multiply above values by 1.5

Draft

Table 3 – 65B
Adjustments for Traveled Way Widening Values on Open Highway Curves
(Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way)

Radius of Curve (feet)	Design Vehicle						
	SU	WB-40	WB-62	WB-65	WB-67D	WB-100T	WB-109D
7000	-1.1	-1.1	0.1	0.1	0.0	0.0	0.3
6500	-1.1	-1.1	0.1	0.1	0.0	0.1	0.3
6000	-1.2	-1.1	0.1	0.2	0.0	0.1	0.3
5500	-1.2	-1.1	0.1	0.2	0.0	0.1	0.4
5000	-1.2	-1.1	0.1	0.2	0.0	0.1	0.4
4500	-1.2	-1.1	0.1	0.2	0.0	0.1	0.5
4000	-1.2	-1.2	0.2	0.2	-0.1	0.1	0.5
3500	-1.3	-1.2	0.2	0.3	-0.1	0.1	0.6
3000	-1.3	-1.2	0.2	0.3	-0.1	0.1	0.7
2500	-1.4	-1.2	0.3	0.4	-0.1	0.1	0.8
2000	-1.5	-1.3	0.3	0.5	-0.1	0.2	1.0
1800	-1.5	-1.3	0.4	0.5	-0.1	0.2	1.1
1600	-1.6	-1.4	0.4	0.6	-0.1	0.2	1.3
1400	-1.7	-1.4	0.5	0.6	-0.2	0.2	1.5
1200	-1.8	-1.5	0.5	0.8	-0.2	0.3	1.7
1000	-2.0	-1.6	0.6	0.9	-0.2	0.3	2.0
900	-2.1	-1.7	0.7	1.0	-0.2	0.4	2.3
800	-2.2	-1.8	0.8	1.1	-0.3	0.4	2.6
700	-2.4	-1.9	0.9	1.3	-0.3	0.5	2.9
600	-2.6	-2.0	1.1	1.5	-0.4	0.6	3.4
500	-2.9	-2.2	1.3	1.8	-0.4	0.7	4.1
450	-3.2	-2.4	1.4	2.0	-0.5	0.7	4.6
400	-3.4	-2.5	1.6	2.3	-0.5	0.8	5.1
350	-3.8	-2.8	1.9	2.6	-0.6	1.0	5.9
300	-4.3	-3.0	2.2	3.0	-0.7	1.1	6.9
250	-4.9	-3.5	2.6	3.7	-0.9	1.4	8.3
200	-5.9	-4.1	3.3	4.6	-1.1	1.7	10.5

Draft

Notes: Adjustments are applied by adding to or subtracting from the values in Table 3-20ATable 3-620A

Adjustments depend only on radius and design vehicle; they are independent of traveled wayroadway width and design speed.

For 3-lane roadways, multiply above values by 1.5.

For 4-lane roadways, multiply above values by 2.0.

Draft

C.5 Vertical Alignment

C.5.a General Criteria

The selection of vertical alignment should be predicated to a large extent upon the following criteria:

- Obtaining maximum sight distances
- Limiting speed differences (particularly for trucks and buses) by reducing magnitude and length of grades
- A "hidden dip" which would not be apparent to the driver must be avoided.
- Steep grades and sharp crest vertical curves should be avoided at or near intersections.
- Flat grades and long gentle vertical curves should be used whenever possible.

C.5.b Grades

The grades selected for vertical alignment should be as flat as practical, and should not be greater than the value given in Table 3 - 6Table 3 - 76 Recommended Maximum Grades Inin Percent.

For streets and highways requiring long upgrades, the maximum grade should be reduced so the speed reduction of slow-moving vehicles (e.g., trucks and buses) is not greater than 10 mph. The critical lengths of grade for these speed reductions are shown in Figure 3 — Critical Length Versus Upgrade 3Figure 3 — 5 Critical Length Versus Upgrade Upgrade3. Where reduction of grade is not practical, climbing lanes should be provided to meet these speed reduction limitations.

The criteria for a climbing lane and the adjacent shoulder are the same as for any travel lane except that the climbing lane should be clearly designated by the appropriate pavement markings. Entrance to and exit from the climbing lane shall follow the same criteria as other merging traffic lanes; however, the climbing lane should not be terminated until well beyond the crest of the vertical curve. Differences in superelevation should not be sufficient to produce a change in pavement cross slope between the

Draft

climbing lane and through lane in excess of 0.04 feet per foot.

Recommended minimum gutter grades:

Rolling terrain - 0.5% Flat terrain - 0.3%

Table 3 – 7~~6~~
Recommended Maximum Grades in Percent

TYPE OF ROADWAY		FLAT TERRAIN											ROLLING TERRAIN										
		DESIGN SPEED (mph)											DESIGN SPEED (mph)										
		~~15~~ 20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	~~15~~ 20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Freeway		~~---~~ ---	---	---	---	---	---	4	4	3	3	3	~~---~~ ---	---	---	---	---	---	5	5	4	4	4
Arterial*	Rural	~~---~~ ---	---	---	---	5	5	4	4	3	3	3	~~---~~ ---	---	---	---	6	6	5	5	4	4	4
	Urban	~~---~~ ---	---	8	7	7	6	6	5	5	---	---	~~---~~ ---	---	9	8	8	7	7	6	6	---	---
Collector*	Rural	~~---~~ 7	7	7	7	7	7	6	6	5	---	---	~~---~~ 10	10	9	9	8	8	7	7	6	---	---
	Urban	~~---~~ 9	9	9	9	9	8	7	7	6	---	---	~~---~~ ~~1~~1 2	12	11	10	10	9	8	8	7	---	---
Local*		~~9~~ 8	7	7	7	7	7	6	6	5	---	---	~~12~~ 11	11	10	10	10	9	8	7	6	---	---
Industrial**		~~---~~ ---	---	4	4	4	4	3	3	3	---	---	~~---~~ ---	---	5	5	5	5	4	4	4	---	---

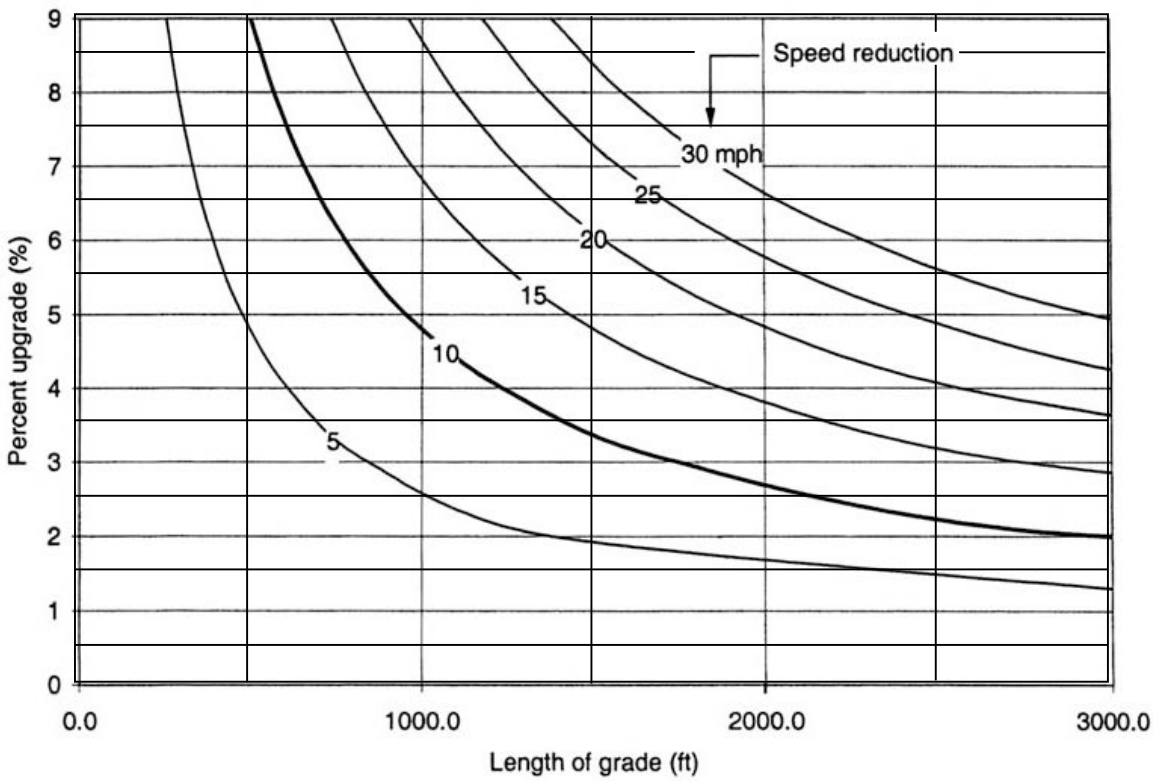
* May be increased by 2 percent for urban streets under extreme conditions.

** Local and collector streets with significant (15% or more) truck traffic.

For short sections less than 500' and for one-way downgrades, the maximum gradient may be 1% steeper.

Draft

Figure 3 – 543
Critical Length Versus Upgrade



Critical Lengths of Grade for Design[JM18][KM19]**, Assumed Typical Heavy Truck of 200 lb/hp, Entering Speed = 70 mph**

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, (REF: Figure 3-28Exhibit 3-63, AASHTO A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets 2001)

Draft

C.5.c Vertical Curves

Changes in grade should be connected by a parabolic curve (the vertical offset being proportional to the square of the horizontal distance). Vertical curves are required when the algebraic difference of intersecting grades exceeds the values given in ~~Table 3 - 7~~Table 3 - 8~~7~~ Maximum Change In Grade
Without Using Vertical Curve. Table 3 – 9~~8~~ Rounded K Values for Minimum Lengths Vertical Curves provides additional information. The length of vertical curve on a crest, as governed by stopping sight distance, is obtained from ~~Figure 3 - 4~~Figure 3 - 6~~4~~ Length of Crest Vertical Curve (Stopping Sight Distance). The minimum length of a crest vertical curve to obtain minimum passing sight distance is given in ~~Figure 3 - 5~~Figure 3 - 7~~5~~ Length of Crest Vertical Curve (Passing Sight Distance). The minimum length of a sag vertical curve, as governed by vehicle headlight capabilities, is obtained from ~~Figure 3 - 6~~Figure 3 - 8~~6~~ Length of Sag Vertical Curve (Headlight Sight Distance).

Wherever feasible, curves longer than the minimum should be considered to improve both aesthetic and safety characteristics.

Table 3 – 8~~7~~
Maximum Change in Grade
Without Using Vertical Curve

Design Speed (mph)	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Maximum Change in Grade in Percent	1.20	1.10	1.00	0.90	0.80	0.70	0.60	0.50	0.40	0.30	0.20

Draft

Table 3 – 9 8 Rounded K Values for Minimum Lengths Vertical Curves

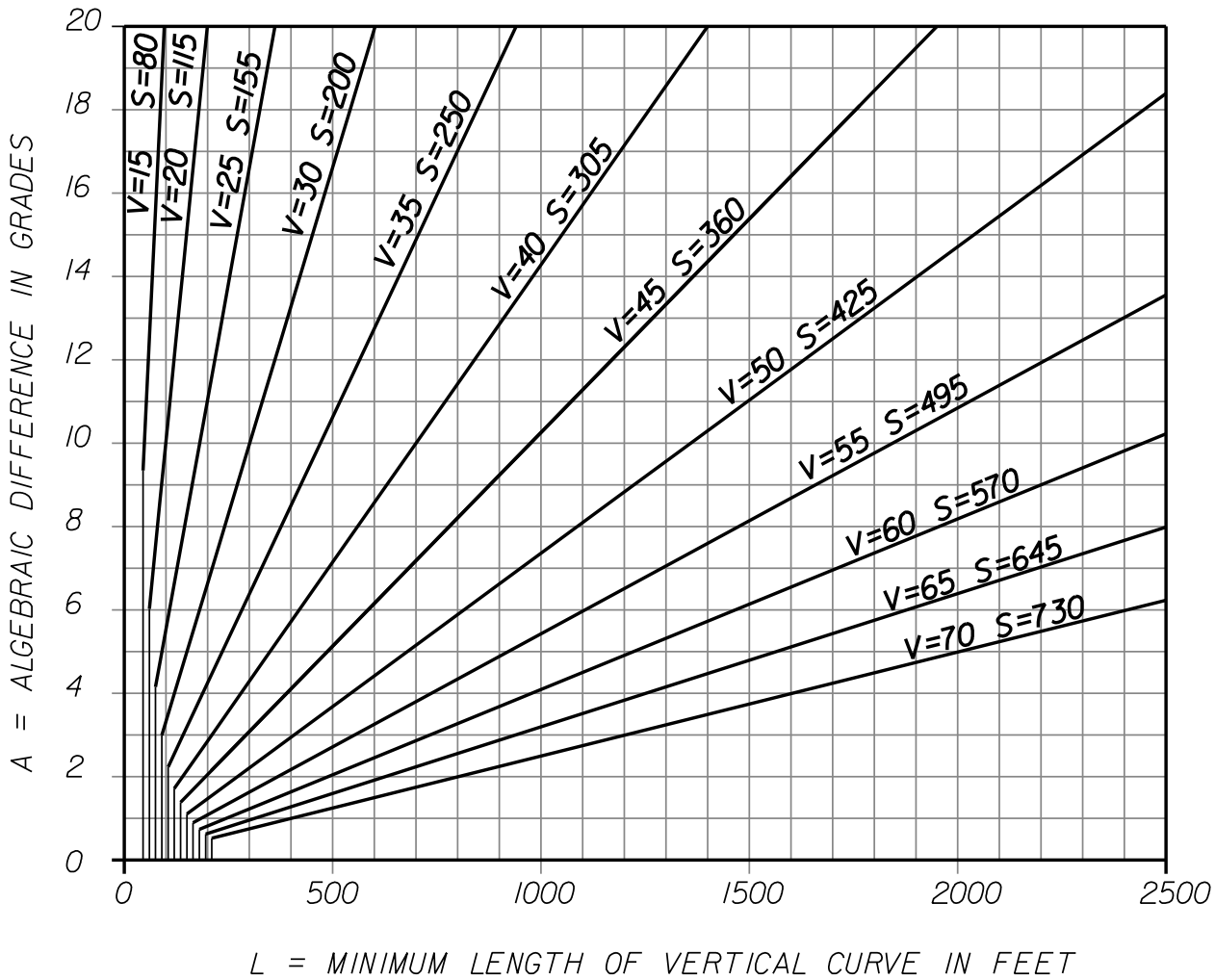
Rounded K Values For Minimum Lengths VVertical Curves (Based upon an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 2 feet above the road surface)											
L = KA L = LENGTH OF VERTICAL CURVE, A = ALGEBRAIC DIFFERENCE OF GRADES IN PERCENT											
Design Speed (mph)	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
K Values for Crest Vertical Curves	7	12	19	29	44	61	84	114	151	193	247
K Values for Sag Vertical Curves	17	26	37	49	64	79	96	115	136	157	181

- The length of vertical curve must never be less than three times the design speed of the highway
- Curve lengths computed from the formula L = KA should be rounded upward when feasible
- The minimum lengths of vertical curves to be used on collectors, arterials and freeways are shown in the table below:

Minimum Lengths for Vertical Curves on Collectors, Arterials, and Freeways (feet)			
Design Speed (mph)	50	60	70
Crest Vertical Curves (feet)	300	400	500
Sag Vertical Curves (feet)	200	300	400

Draft

Figure 3 – 6~~5~~~~4~~
Length of Crest Vertical Curve
(Stopping Sight Distance)

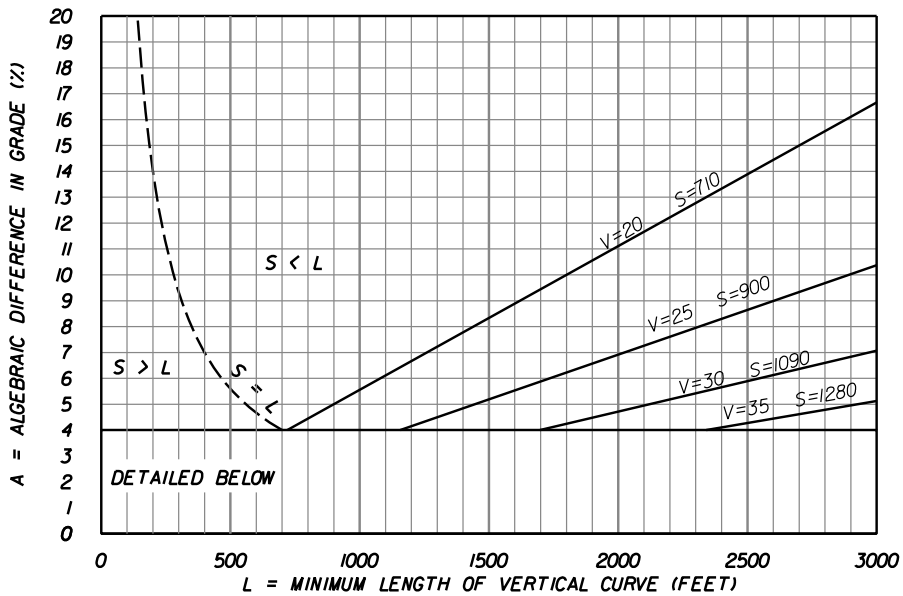


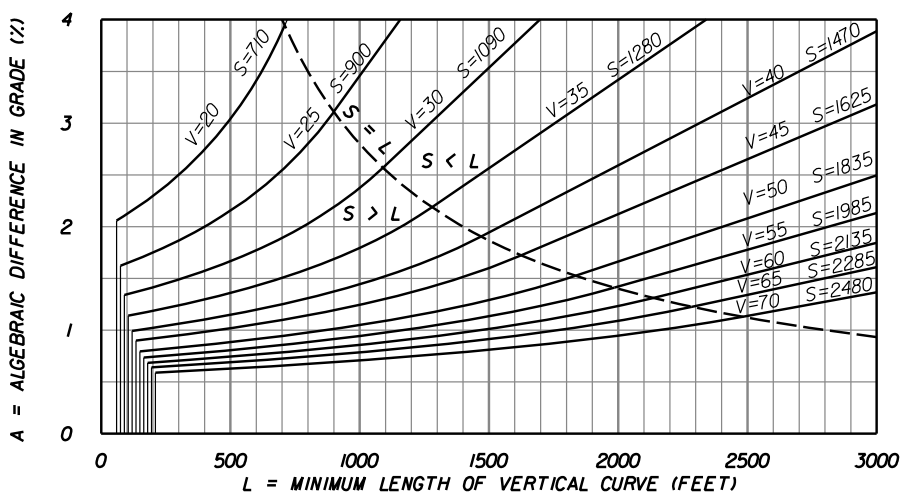
Lengths of vertical curves are computed from the formula: $L = \frac{AS^2}{1329}$

A = Algebraic Difference In Grades In Percent
S = Sight Distance
L = Minimum Length of Vertical Curve In Feet

Draft

Figure 3 – 7~~65~~
Length o~~O~~f Crest Vertical Curve
(Passing Sight Distance)





The sight distance is computed from the following formulas:

$$S < L, \quad L = \frac{AS^2}{2800} \qquad S > L, \quad L = 2S - \frac{2800}{A}$$

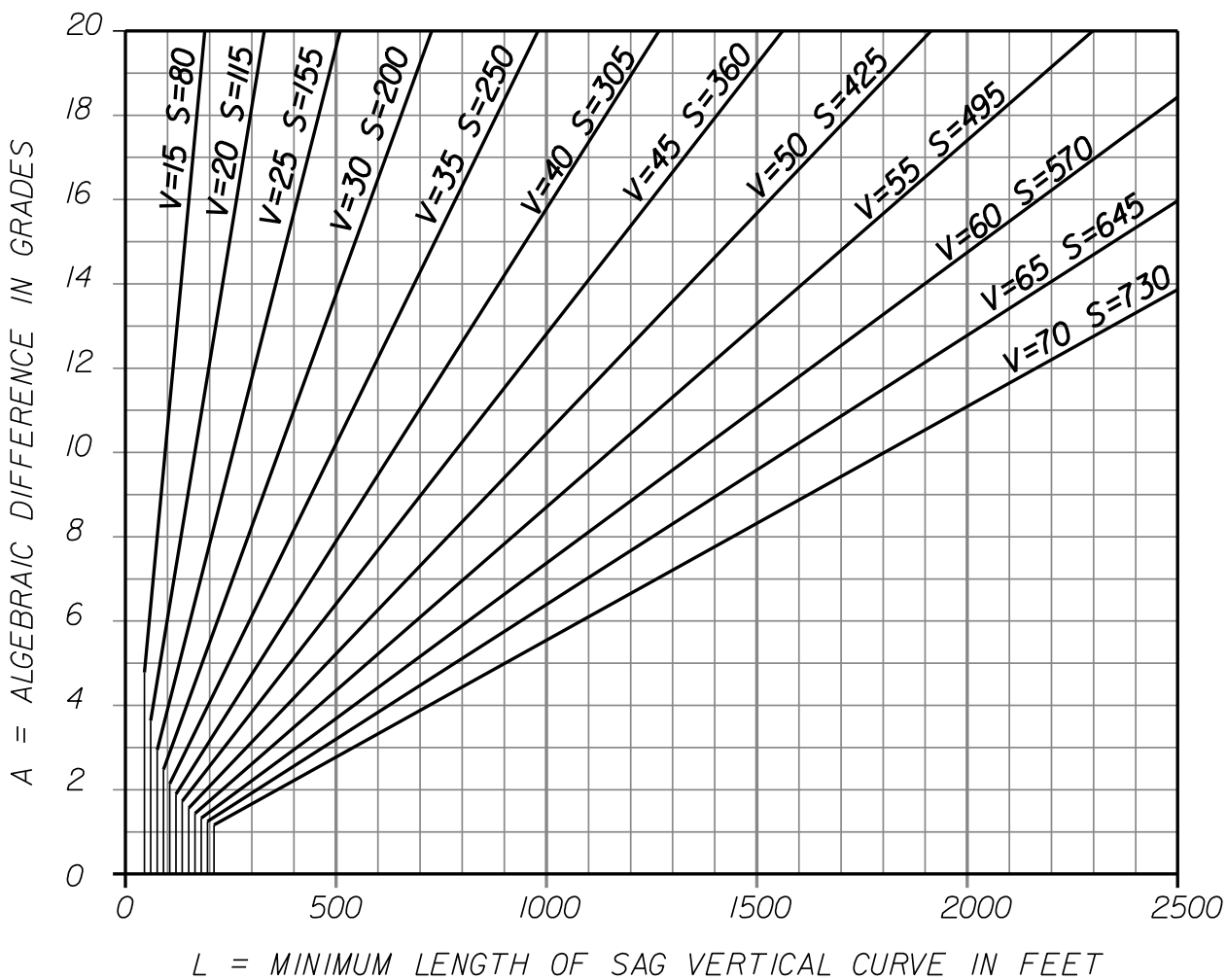
A = Algebraic Difference in Grades, Percent
S = Sight Distance
L = Length of Vertical Curve

Draft

Figure 3 – 876
Length oOf Sag Vertical Curve
(Headlight Sight Distance)

Lengths of vertical curves are computed from the formula:

$$L = \frac{AS^2}{400 + 3.5(S)}$$



Draft

C.6 Alignment Coordination

Horizontal and vertical alignment should not be designed independently. Poor combinations can spoil the good points of a design. Properly coordinated horizontal and vertical alignment can improve appearance, enhance community values, increase safety, and encourage uniform speed. Coordination of horizontal and vertical alignment should begin with preliminary design, during which stage adjustments can be readily made.

Proper combinations of horizontal alignment and profile can be obtained by engineering study and consideration of the following general controls:

- Curvature and grades should be in proper balance. Tangent alignment or flat curvature with steep grades and excessive curvature with flat grades are both poor design. A logical design is a compromise between the two conditions. Wherever feasible the roadway should "roll with" rather than "buck" the terrain.
- Vertical curvature superimposed on horizontal curvature, or vice versa, generally results in a more pleasing facility, but it should be analyzed for effect on driver's view and operation. Changes in profile not in combination with horizontal alignment may result in a series of disconnected humps to the driver for some distance.
- Sharp horizontal curvature should not be introduced at or near the top of a pronounced crest vertical curve. Drivers cannot perceive the horizontal change in alignment, especially at night. This condition can be avoided by setting the horizontal curve so it leads the vertical curve or by making the horizontal curve longer. Suitable design can be made by using design values well above the minimums.
- Sharp horizontal curvature should not be introduced at or near the low point of a pronounced sag vertical curve to prevent an undesirable distorted appearance. Vehicle speeds are often high at the bottom of grades and erratic operation may result, especially at night.
- On divided highways, variation of the median width and the use of independent vertical and horizontal alignment should be considered. Where right of way is available, a superior design without significant additional costs can result from the use of independent alignment.

Draft

- Horizontal alignment and profile should be made as flat as possible at interchanges and intersections where sight distance along both highways is important. Sight distances above the minimum are desirable at these locations.
- Alignment should be designed to enhance scenic views for the motorists.
- In residential areas, the alignment should be designed to minimize nuisance to the neighborhood.

C.7 Cross Section Elements

The design of the street or highway cross section should be predicated upon the design speed, terrain, adjacent land use, classification, and the type and volume of traffic expected. The cross section selected should be uniform throughout a given length of street or highway without frequent or abrupt changes.

C.7.a Number of Lanes

The number of travel lanes is determined by several interrelated factors such as capacity, level of service, and service volume. (***(AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)" - latest edition,*** and the current ***Highway Capacity Manual***)

C.7.b Pavement

The paved surface of roadwaysall travel lanes shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements set forth in ***Chapter 5 - Pavement Design and Construction***.

C.7.b.1 Pavement Width

Minimum lane widths for travel lanes, speed change lanes, turn lanes and passing lanes are provided in Table 3 - 8Table 3 - 108 Minimum Lane Widths. On multilane urban curb and gutter streets where there is insufficient space for a separate bicycle lane, consideration should be given to using unequal-width lanes. In such cases, the wider lane is located on the outside (right). This provides more space for large vehicles that usually occupy that lane, provides more space for bicycles, and allows drivers to keep their vehicles at a greater

Draft

distance from the right edge. See ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities.****Traffic lanes should be 12 feet in width, but shall not be less than 10 feet in width. Streets and highways with significant truck/bus traffic should have 12 feet wide traffic lanes. For minimum lane widths, see Table 3 - 8 and Table 3 - 9. If additional lane width is required for bicycles, see CHAPTER 9 – BICYCLE FACILITIES.*

Draft

Table 3 – 10~~8~~ Minimum Lane Widths

Facility		ADT (vpd)	Design Speed (mph)	Divided/ Undivided	Lane Width - FT			
					Travel Lanes[1]	Speed Change Lanes	Turn Lanes[5] (LT/RT/MD)	Passing Lanes
Freeway	Rural	All	All	All	12	12	--	--
	Urban	All	All	All	12	12	--	--
Arterial	Rural	All	All	All	12[8]	12[8]	12[8]	12[8]
	Urban	All	> 45	All	12	12	12	12
		All	≤ 45	Undivided	11~~2~~[3]	11~~2~~[3]	11~~2~~[3, 6]	11~~2~~[3]
				Divided	11[3]	11[3]	11~~6~~[3, 6]	11[3]
Collector	Rural	> 1500	All	All	12[8]	12[8]	12[8]	12[8]
		400 to 1500	All	All	11[3]	11[3]	11[3]	--
		< 400	> 45	All	11	11	11[6]	--
			≤ 45	All	10	10	10	--
	Urban	All	All	All	11~~2,3~~[2, 3]	11~~2~~[2, 3]	11~~6~~[2, 6]	--
Local	Rural	> 1500	All	All	12[8]	12[8]	12[8]	12[8]
		400 to 1500	All	All	11[3]	--	11[3]	--
		< 400	> 50	All	11[3]	--	11[3]	--
			45 to 50	All	10	--	10	--
			< 45	All	9	--	9	--
	Urban	All	All	All	10[2,4]	--	10~~7~~[7]	--

Footnotes

1. A minimum traveled way width equal to the width of two adjacent travel lanes (one way or two way) shall be provided on all rural facilities.
2. ~~12' i~~In industrial areas and where truck volumes are significant, 12' lanes should be provided, but may be reduced to 11' where right of way severely limited.
3. ~~10' may be used i~~In constrained areas where truck and bus volumes are low and speeds are less than 35 mph, 10; lanes may be used.~~.~~
4. ~~9' may be used i~~In residential areas where right of way is severely limited, 9' may be used.~~.~~
5. Median turn lane widths shall not exceed 15'.
6. Turn Lane width should be same as Travel Lane width. May be reduced to 10' where right of way is constrained.
7. Turn Lane width should be same as Travel Lane width. May be reduced to 9' where truck volumes are low.
8. For design speeds below 50 mph, lane widths of 11 feet are acceptable.

Draft

	Minimum Lane Width (FEET)	
Freeways	12	
Major Arterials	11	
Minor Arterials	11	
Collectors (Major and Minor)	11	
Local Roads *	10	
Auxiliary Lanes	10	

* Pavement widths may be reduced for the paving of certain existing unpaved subdivision streets and low volume rural roads. See CHAPTER 3, SECTION A for conditions.

Draft

Table 3 – 9
Minimum Widths Of Pavement And Shoulders
For Two (2) Lane Rural Highways

DESIGN SPEED (MPH)	AVERAGE DAILY TRAFFIC (2 - WAY)				
	250	0250 - 400	400 - 750	750 - 1,600	ABOVE 1,600
	MINIMUM WIDTH OF PAVEMENT (FEET)				
20					
30	20	20	22	22	24
35	20	20	22	22	24
40	20	20	22	22	24
45	20	20	22	22	24
50	20	20	22	24	24
55	20	22	22	24	24
60	20	22	22	24	24
65	20	22	24	24	24
MINIMUM WIDTH OF SHOULDER (FEET)					
ALL	6	26	6	8	8

Draft

C.7.b.2 Traveled WayPavement Cross Slope (not in superelevation)

The selection of traveled waypavement cross slope should be a compromise between meeting the drainage requirements and providing for smooth vehicle operation. The recommended traveled waypavement cross slope is 0.02 feet per foot. When three lanes in each direction are necessary, the outside lane should have a cross slope of 0.03 feet per foot. The cross slope shall not be less than 0.015 feet per foot or greater than 0.04 feet per foot. The change in cross slope between adjacent through travel lanes should not exceed 0.04 feet per foot.

C.7.c Shoulders

The primary functions of a shoulder are to provide emergency parking for disabled vehicles and an alternate path for vehicles during avoidance or other emergency maneuvers. In order to fulfill these functions satisfactorily, the shoulder should have adequate stability and surface characteristics. The design and construction of shoulders shall be in accordance with the requirements given in ***Chapter 5 - Pavement Design and Construction.***

Shoulders should be provided on all streets and highways incorporating open drainage. The absence of a contiguous emergency travel or storage lane is not only undesirable from a safety standpoint, but also is disadvantageous from an operations viewpoint. Disabled vehicles that must stop in a through lane impose a severe safety hazard and produce a dramatic reduction in traffic flow. Shoulders should be free of abrupt changes in slope, discontinuities, soft ground, or other hazards that would prevent the driver from retaining or regaining vehicle control.

Paved outside shoulders are required for rural high speed mulitilane highways and freeways. They provide recommended for added safety to the motorist, public transit and pedestrians, for accommodation of bicyclists, reduced shoulder maintenance costs, and improved drainage.

Draft

C.7.c.1 Shoulder Width

Since the function of the shoulders is to provide an emergency storage or travel path, the desirable width of all shoulders should be at least 10 feet. Where economic or practical constraints are severe, it is permissible, but not desirable, to reduce the shoulder width. Outside shoulders shall be provided on all streets and highways with open drainage and should be at least 6 feet wide. Facilities with a heavy traffic volume or a significant volume of truck traffic SHOULD have outside shoulders at least 8 feet wide. The width of outside shoulders for two-lane, two-way shoulders shall not be less than the values given in Table 3 - 9Table 3 - 119 Shoulder Widths for Rural Highways.

Median shoulders are desirable on all multi-lane, non-curb and gutter divided streets and highways. For shoulder widths on multi-lane divided highways see Table 3 - 10Table 3 - 1110.

Table 3 – 1110
Shoulder Widths for Multilane Rural Divided Highways[KM20]

Two Lane

Design Speed (mph)	Average Daily Traffic (2 – Way)		
	0 - 400	400 - 750	750 - 1600
All	2 feet	6 feet	8 feet

Multilane Divided

Number of Lanes Each DirectionNUMBER OF LANES EACH DIRECTION	Shoulder Width HOULDER WIDTH (feetFEET)			
	OutsideUTSIDE		MedianEDIAN	
	RoadwayOAD WAY	BridgeRIDGE	RoadwayOAD WAY	BridgeRIDGE
2	10 (min.imum)	10	6 (min.imum)	6
3 or more	10 (min.imum)	10	10 (min.imum)	10

Draft

C.7.c.2 Shoulder Cross Slope

The shoulder serves as a continuation of the drainage system, therefore, the shoulder cross slope should be somewhat greater than the adjacent trafficvel lane. The cross slope of shoulders should be within the range given in Table 3 – 12 Shoulder Cross Slope. shall not be less than 0.03 feet per foot or greater than 0.08 feet per foot. For local subdivision type streets, a maximum cross slope of 0.12 feet per foot may be used.

Table 3 – 12
Shoulder Cross Slope

	Shoulder Type		
	Paved	Gravel or Crushed Rock	Turf
Shoulder Cross Slope (Percent)	2 to 6%	4 to 6%	6 to 8%

Notes: 1. Existing shoulder cross-slope (paved and unpaved) ≤ 12% may remain.

Source – 2011~~0~~4 AASHTO Greenbook, Section 4.4.3 Shoulder Cross Sections.

Whenever possible, shoulders should be sloped away from the traveled wayffic lanes to aid in their drainage. The combination of shoulder cross slope and texture should be sufficient to promote rapid drainage and to avoid retention of surface water. The maximum algebraic difference change in cross slope between thea traveled wayffic lane and adjacent shoulder should not be greater than 0.07 feet per foot., except on local subdivision streets where the change in cross slope should not exceed 0.10 feet per foot. Shoulders on the outside of superelevated curves should be rounded (vertical curve) to avoid an excessive break in cross slope and to divert a portion of the drainage away from the adjacent traveled waylanes.

Draft

C.7.d Sidewalks

The design of sidewalks is affected by many factors, including, but not limited to, pedestrian volume, roadway type, characteristics of vehicular traffic, and other design elements. ***Chapter 8 - Pedestrian Facilities*** of this Manual and the ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011),"*** present the various factors that influence the design of sidewalks and other pedestrian facilities.

Sidewalks should be constructed in conjunction with new construction and major reconstruction in or within one mile of an urban area. As a general rule, sidewalks should be constructed on both sides of the roadway. Exceptions may be made where physical barriers (e.g., a canal paralleling one side of the roadway) would substantially reduce the expectation of pedestrian use of one side of the roadway. Also, if only one side is possible, sidewalks should be availableused onin the same side of the road as such features as transit stops or other pedestrian generators.

The decision to construct a sidewalk in a rural area should be based on engineering judgment, after observation of existing pedestrian traffic and expectation of additional demand, should a sidewalk be made available.

The minimum sidewalk width shall be 5 feet when separated from the back of curb by a buffer strip. The minimum sidewalk width may be reduced to 4 feet when physical constraints exist. See Section C.10.a.3 of this chapter for additional clear width criteria. When sidewalks must be constructed adjacent to the curb, the minimum width shall be 6 feet.

Sidewalks should be constructed as defined in this Manual - ***Chapter 8 - Pedestrian Facilities***. In areas of high use, refer to the ***Highway Capacity Manual, Volume 3, Chapter 23, Off-Street Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities (2010)***Chapter 18 of the Highway Capacity Manual for calculation of appropriate additional width. Excessively wide sidewalks may not necessarily add to pedestrian and bicycle safety. Wide sidewalks may encourage higher speed bicycle use and can increase the potential for conflict with motor vehicles at intersections and driveways, as well as with pedestrians and fixed objects.

Maximum cross slope shall be 2%, and grades shall not exceed 8.33%. Curb ramps shall be provided at all intersections with curb (***Section 336.045***

Draft

(3), Florida Statutes). In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by 49 C.F.R 37.41 or 37.43 and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by 61G20-4.002 impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities.

C.7.e Medians

Median separation of opposing traffic lanes provides a beneficial safety feature and should be used wherever feasible. Separation of the opposing traffic also reduces the problem of headlight glare, thus improving safety and comfort for night driving. When sufficient width of medians is available, some landscaping is also possible.

The use of medians often aids in the provision of drainage for the roadway surface, particularly for highways with six or more traffic lanes. The median also provides a vehicle refuge area, improves the safety of pedestrian crossings, provides a logical location for left turn storage lanesauxiliary lanes, and provides the means for future addition of traffic lanes and mass transit. In many situations, the median strip aids in roadway delineation and the overall highway aesthetics.

Median separation is required on the following streets and highways:

- Freeways
- All streets and highways, rural and urban, with 4 or more travel lanes and with a design speed of 40 mph or greater

Median separation is desirable on all other multi-lane roadways to enhance pedestrian crossings.

The nature and degree of median separation required is dependent upon the design speed, traffic volume, adjacent land use, and the frequency of access. There are basically two approaches to median separation. The first is the use of horizontal separation of opposing lanes to reduce the probability of vehicles crossing the median into incoming traffic. The second method is to attempt to limit crossovers by introducing a positive median barrier structure.

In rural areas, the use of wide medians is not only aesthetically pleasing, but is often more economical than barriers. In urban areas where space and/or economic constraints are severe, the use of barriers is permitted to fulfill the requirements for median separation.

Uncurbed medians should be free of abrupt changes in slope, discontinuities, soft ground, or other hazards that would prevent the driver from retaining or regaining control of the vehicle. Consideration should be given to increasing the width and decreasing the slope of medians on horizontal curves. The requirements for a hazard free median environment are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***, and shall be followed in the design and construction of medians.

C.7.e.1 Type of Median

A wide, gently depressed median is the preferred design. This type allows a reasonable vehicle recovery area and aids in the drainage of the adjacent shoulders and travel lanes. Where space and drainage limitations are severe, narrower medians, flush with the roadway, or raised medians, are permitted. Raised medians should be used to support pedestrian crossings of multi-laned streets and highways.

C.7.e.2 Median Width

The median width is defined as the horizontal distance between the inside (median) pavement edges of travel lanes of the opposing roadways. The selection of the median width for a given type of street or highwayroadway is primarily dependent on design speed and traffic volume. Since the probability of crossover crashes is decreased by increasing the separation, medians should be as wide as practicable. Median widths in excess of 30 feet to 35 feet reduce the problem of disabling headlight glare from opposing traffic.

The minimum permitted widths of freeway medians are given in Table 3 - 11Table 3 - 131 Median Width for Freeways (Urban and Rural). Where the expected traffic volume is heavy, the widths should be increased over these minimum values. Median barriers shall be used on freeways when these minimum values are not attainable.

Draft

The minimum permitted median widths for multi-lane rural highways are given in Table 3 - 12Table 3 - 142 Median Width for Rural Highways (Multilane Facilities). On urban streets, the median widths shall not be less than the values given in Table 3 - 12Table 3 - 142. Where median openings or access points are frequent, the median width should be increased.

The minimum median widths given in these Tables may have to be increased to meet the requirements for cross slopes, drainage, and turning movements (C.9 Intersection DesignC.9 Intersection Design, this chapter). The median area should also include adequate additional width to allow for expected additions of through lanes and left turn storage lanesauxiliary lanes. Where the median width is sufficient to produce essentially two separate, independent roadways, the left side of each roadway shall meet the requirements for roadside clear zone. Changes in the median width should be accomplished by gently flowing horizontal alignment of one or both of the separate roadways.

Draft

Table 3 – 131 [JM21]
Median Width for Freeways
(Urban and Rural)

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	MINIMUM PERMITTED MEDIAN WIDTH (feet)
60 and Over	60 **
Under 60	40 *

* Applicable for urban areas ONLY.

** Applicable for new construction ONLY.
(40 feet minimum allowed when lanes added to median)

Table 3 – 142 [JM22]
Median Width for Rural Highways
(Multilane Facilities)

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	MINIMUM WIDTH (feet)
55 and Over[JM23]	40
Under 55	22

Median Width for Urban Streets[JM24][KM25]

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	MINIMUM WIDTH (feet)
50[JM26]	19.5
45 [JM27]and LESS	15.5

Paved medians with a minimum width of 10 feet may be used for two-way turn lanes and painted or raised medians when design speeds are 40 mph or less.

Draft

C.7.e.3 Median Slopes

A vehicle should be able to transverse a median without turning over and with sufficient smoothness to allow the driver a reasonable chance to control the vehicle. The transition between the median slope and the shoulder (or pavement) slope should be smooth, gently rounded, and free from discontinuities.

The median cross slope should not be steeper than1:6 (preferably not steeper than 1:10). The depth of depressed medians may be controlled by drainage requirements. Increasing the width of the median, rather than increasing the cross slope, is the proper method for developing the required median depth.

Longitudinal slopes (median profile parallel to the roadway) should be shallow and gently rounded at intersections of grade. The longitudinal slope, relative to the roadway slope, shall not exceed a ratio of 1:10 and preferably 1:20. The change in longitudinal slope shall not exceed 1:8 (change in grade of 12.5 %).

C.7.e.4 Median Barriers

The primary objective for placing a barrier structure in the median is to prevent vehicles from entering the opposing traffic stream, either accidentally or intentionally. Median barriers may also be used to reduce the glare produced by oncoming vehicle headlights. When selecting the type of barrier, care should be exercised to avoid headlight flicker through barriers.

The use of median barriers to reduce horizontal separation is permitted on facilities with substantially full control of access. Frequent openings in the barrier for intersections or crossovers expose the barrier end, which constitute severe hazard at locations with an inherently high crash potential and should be shielded. Median barriers may be considered for urban freeways and high speed~~major~~ arterials with controlled access.

Draft

Median barriers shall be used on controlled access facilities if the median width is less than the minimum permitted values given in Table 3 - 11Table 3 - 131. The median barrier should not be placed closer than 10 feet[JM28][KM29] from the inside pavement edge of traveled way. Further requirements for median barriers are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

C.7.f Roadside Clear Zone

The roadside clear zone is that area outside the traveled way available for use by errant vehicles. Vehicles frequently leave the traveled way during avoidance maneuvers, due to loss of control by the driver (e.g., falling asleep) or due to collisions with other vehicles. The primary function of the clear zone is to allow space and time for the driver to retain control of his vehicle and avoid or reduce the consequences of collision with roadside objects. This area also serves as an emergency refuge location for disabled vehicles.

The design of the roadway must also provide for adequate drainage of the roadway. Drainage swales within the clear zone should be gently rounded and free of discontinuities. Where large volumes of water must be carried, the approach should be to provide wide, rather than deep drainage channels. Side slopes and drainage swales that lie within the clear zone should be free of protruding drainage structures (***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design, D.6.c. Culverts***).

In the design of the roadside, the designer should consider the consequences of a vehicle leaving the traveled way at any location. It should always be the policy that protection of vehicles and occupants shall take priority over the protection of roadside objects. Further criteria and requirements for safe roadside design are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

Draft

C.7.f.1 Roadside Clear Zone Width

The clear zone width is defined as follows:

- Flush Shoulder~~Rural~~ S~~s~~ections - measured from the edge of the outside motor vehicular traveled way
- Urban Curbed [JM30]S~~s~~ections ≤ 45 mph - measured from the face of the curb

The minimum permitted widths are provided in ~~Table 3 - 13~~Table 3 - 15~~3~~ Minimum Width of Clear Zone. These are minimum values only and should be increased wherever practical.

In rural areas, it is desirable, and frequently economically feasible, to increase the width of the clear zone. Where traffic volumes and speeds are high, the width should be increased. The clear zone on the outside of horizontal curves should be increased due to the possibility of vehicles leaving the roadway at a steeper angle.

Table 3 – 15~~3~~ Minimum Width of Clear Zone

Type of Facility	DESIGN SPEED (mph)							
	25 and Below	30	35	40	45	50	55	60 and Above
	MINIMUM CLEAR ZONE (feet)							
Flush Shoulder ~~Rural~~•	6	6 Local 10 Collectors 14 Arterials	6 Local 10 Collectors 14 Arterials	10 Collectors 14 Arterials	14 Arterials and Collectors ADT < 1500 18 Arterials and Collectors ADT ≥ 1500	14 Arterials and Collectors ADT < 1500 18 Arterials and Collectors ADT ≥ 1500	18 Arterials and Collectors ADT < 1500 24 Arterials and Collectors ADT ≥ 1500	18 Arterials and Collectors ADT < 1500 30 Arterials and Collectors ADT ≥ 1500
Curbed ~~Urban~~*	1 ½	4**	4**	4**	4 ** [JM31] [KM32]	N/A ••	N/A ••	N/A ••

* From face of curb.

** On projects where the 4 foot minimum offset cannot be reasonably obtained and other alternatives are deemed impractical, the minimum may be reduced to 1 ½'.

• Use rural for urban facilities when no curb and gutter is present. Measured from the edge of through travel lane on rural section.

•• Curb and gutter not to be used on facilities with design speed > 45 mph.

NOTE: ADT in ~~Table 3-13~~Table 3-15~~3~~ refers to Design Year ADT.

Draft

C.7.f.2 Roadside Slopes

The slopes of all roadsides should be as flat as possible to allow for safe traversal by out of control vehicles. A slope of 1:4 or flatter should be used. The transition between the shoulder and adjacent side slope should be rounded and free from discontinuities. The adjacent side slope, within the clear zone, shall not be steeper than 1:3. The side slopes should be reduced flatter on the outside of horizontal curves.

Where roadside ditches or cuts require backslope, these slopes should not exceed 1:3 in steepness within the clear zone. The desirable backslope is 1:4. Ditch bottoms should be at least 4 feet wide and can be flat or gently rounded.

C.7.f.3 Criteria for Guardrail

If space and economic constraints are severe, it is permissible, but not desirable, to use guardrails in lieu of the requirements for width and slope of clear zone. Where the previously described requirements for clear zone are not met, guardrails (or other longitudinal barriers) should be considered. Guardrails should also be considered for protection of pedestrian pathways or protection from immovable roadside hazards.

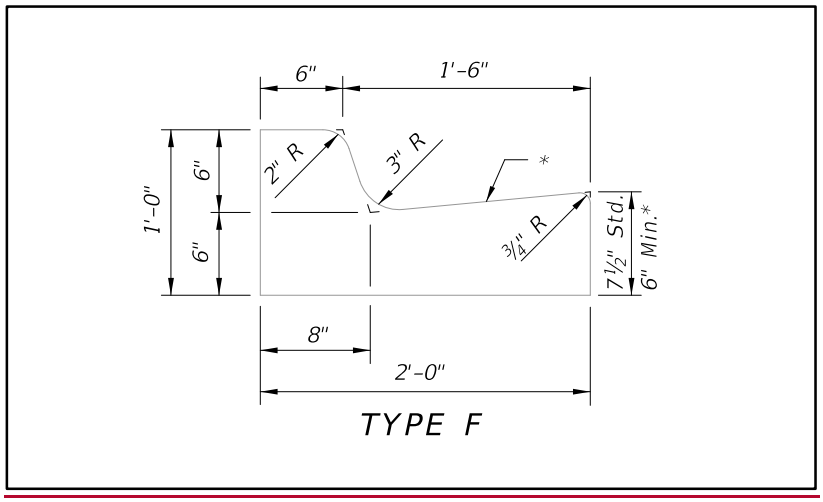
The general policy to be followed is that guardrails should be used if impact with the guardrail is less likely or considered less severe than impact with roadside objects. Further requirements and design criteria for guardrails are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

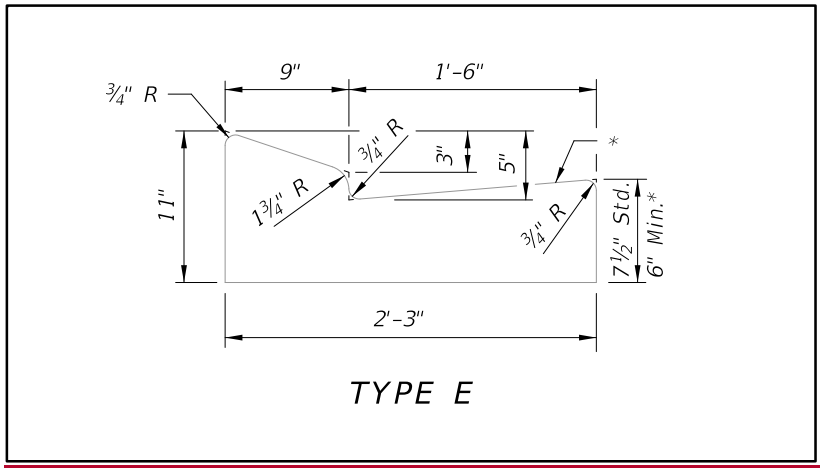
Draft

C.7.g Curbs

Curbs may be used to provide drainage control and to improve delineation of the roadway. Curbs are generally designed with a gutter to form a combination curb and gutter section. Sloping c~~C~~urbs ~~with nearly vertical faces~~ are used along the outside edge of the roadway to discourage vehicles from leaving the roadway. In Florida, the standard curb of this type is 6 inches in height. See Figure 3 – ~~.~~9 Standard Detail for FDOT Type F and E Curbs for examples of sloping curbs. These curbs are not to be used on facilities with design speeds greater than 45 mph.

Figure 3 ~~–~~ 9~~-~~ Standard Detail for FDOT Type F and E Curbs





Draft

C.7.h Parking

When on-street parking is to be an element of design, parallel parking should be considered. Under certain circumstances, angle parking is an allowable form of street parking. The type of on-street parking selected should depend on the specific function and width of the street, the adjacent land use, traffic volume, as well as existing and anticipated traffic operations.

It can generally be stated that on-street parking decreases through capacity, impedes traffic flow, and increases crash potential. However, where parking is needed, and adequate off-street parking facilities are not available or feasible, on-street parking may be necessary.

C.7.i Right of Way

The acquisition of sufficient right of way is necessary in order to provide space for a safe street or highway. The width of the right of way required depends on the design of the roadway, the arrangement of bridges, underpasses and other structures, and the need for cuts or fills. The right of way acquired should be sufficient to:

- Allow development of the full cross section, including adequate medians and roadside clear zones. Determination of the necessary width requires that adequate consideration also be given to the accommodation of utility poles beyond the clear zone.
- Allow the layout of safe intersections, interchanges, and other access points.
- Allow adequate sight distance at all points, particularly on horizontal curves, at an intersection, and other access points.
- Allow, where appropriate, transit bus bays, additional buffer zones to improve roadside safety, noise attenuation, and the overall aesthetics of the street or highway.
- Allow adequate space for placement of pedestrian and bicycle facilities, including curb ramps, bus baysstorage turning areas, and transit shelters, where applicable.

Draft

- Allow for future lane additions, increases in cross section, or other improvement. Frontage roads should also be considered in the ultimate development of many high volume facilities.

- Allow treatment of stormwater runoff.

- Allow construction of future grade separations or other intersection improvements at selected crossroads.

- Allow corner cuts for upstream corner crossing drainage systems and placement of poles, boxes, and other visual screens out of the critical sight triangle.

- Allow landscaping and irrigation as required for the project.

The acquisition of wide rights of way is costly, but it may be necessary to allow the construction and future improvement of safe streets and highways. The minimum right of way should be at least 50 feet for all two-lane roads. For pre-existing conditions, when the existing right of way is less than 50 feet, efforts should be made to acquire the necessary right of way.

Local cul-de-sac and dead end streets having an ADT of less than or equal to 400250, and a length of 600 feet or less, may utilize a right of way of less than 50 feet, if all elements of the typical section meet the standards included in this Manual.

The right of way for frontage roads may be reduced depending on the typical section requirements and the ability to share right of way with the adjacent street or highway facility.

C.7.j Changes in Typical Section

C.7.j.1 General Criteria

Changes in cross section should be avoided. When changes in widths, slopes, or other elements are necessary, they should be affected in a smooth, gradual fashion.

Draft

C.7.j.2 Lane Deletions and Additions

The addition or deletion of traffic or bicycle lanes should be undertaken on tangent sections of roadways. The approach to lane deletions and additions should have ample advance warning and sight distance.

The termination of lanes (including auxiliary lanes) shall meet the general requirements for merging lanes. See Section C.9.c.1 for additional information.

Where additional lanes are intermittently provided on two-lane, two-way highways, median separation should be considered.

C.7.j.3 Preferential Special Use Lanes

To increase the efficiency and separation of different vehicle movements, preferentialspecial use lanes, such as bike lanes and bus lanes, should be considered. These lanes are often an enhancement to corridor safety and increase the horizontal clearance to roadside aboveground fixed objects. The ***MUTCD, Chapter 3D*** provides further information on preferential lane markings. See ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities*** for information on marking bicycle lanes.

C.7.j.4 Structures

The pavement, median, and shoulder width, and sidewalks should be carried across structures such as bridges and box culverts. Shoulder widths for multi-lane rural divided highway bridges may be reduced as shown in Table 3 - 10Table 3 - 110. The designer should evaluate the economic practicality of utilizing dual versus single bridges for roadway sections incorporating wide medians.

Draft

The minimum roadway width for bridges on urban streets with curb and gutter shall be the same as the curb-to-curb width of the approach roadway. Sidewalks on the approaches should be carried across all structures. Curbed sidewalks should not be used adjacent to traffic lanes when design speeds exceed 45 mph. When the bridge rail (barrier wall) is placed between the traffic and sidewalk, it should be offset a minimum distance of 2½ feet from the edge of the travel lane, wide curb lane or bicycle lane. For long (500 feet or greater), and/or high level bridges, it is desirable to provide an offset distance that will accommodate a disabled vehicle. The transition from the bridge to the adjacent roadway section may be made by dropping the curb at the first intersection or well in advance of the traffic barrier, or reducing the curb in front of the barrier to a low sloping~~mountable~~ curb with a gently sloped traffic face. See Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures for additional requirements.

Draft

C.7.j.4.(a) Horizontal Clearance[JM33][KM34]

Supports for bridges, barriers, or other structures should be placed at or beyond the required shoulder. Where possible, these structures should be located outside of the required clear zone.

C.7.j.4.(b) Vertical Clearance

Vertical clearance should be adequate for the type of expected traffic. Freeways and major arterials shall have a vertical clearance of at least 16 feet-6 inches (includes 6 inch allowance for future resurfacing). Other streets and highways should have a clearance of 16 feet unless the provision of a reduced clearance is fully justified by a specific analysis of the situation (14 feet minimum). The minimum vertical clearance for a pedestrian or shared use bridge over a roadway is 17 feet. The minimum vertical clearance for a bridge over a railroad is 23 feet; however additional clearance may be required by the rail owner.

C.7.j.4.(c) End Treatment

The termini of guardrails, bridge railings, abutments, and other structures should be constructed to protect vehicles and their occupants from serious impact. Requirements for end treatment of structures are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

C.8 Access Control

All new facilities (and existing when possible) should have some degree of access control, since each point of access produces a traffic conflict. The control of access is one of the most effective, efficient, and economical methods for improving the capacity and safety characteristics of streets and highways. The reduction of the frequency of access points and the restriction of turning and crossing maneuvers, which should be primary objectives, is accomplished more effectively by the design of the roadway geometry than by the use of traffic control devices. Design criteria for access points are presented under the general requirements for intersection design.

Draft

C.8.a Justification

The justification for control of access should be based on several factors, including safety, capacity, economics, and aesthetics.

C.8.b General Criteria

C.8.b.1 Location of Access Points

All access locations should have adequate sight distance available for the safe execution of entrance, exit, and crossing maneuvers.

Locations of access points near structures, decision points, or the termination of street or highway lighting should be avoided.

Driveways[JM35][KM36] should not be placed near intersections or other points that would tend to produce traffic conflict.

C.8.b.2 Spacing of Access Points

The spacing of access points should be adequate to prevent conflict or mutual interference of traffic flow.

Separation of entrance and exit ramps should be sufficient to provide adequate distance for required weaving maneuvers.

Adequate spacing between access and decision points is necessary to avoid burdening the driver with the need for rapid decisions or maneuvers.

Frequent median openings should be avoided.

The use of a frontage road or other auxiliary roadways is recommended on minor arterials and higher classifications where the need for direct driveway or minor road access is frequent.

Draft

C.8.b.3 Restrictions of Maneuvers

Where feasible, the number and type of permitted maneuvers (crossing, turning slowing, etc.) should be restricted.

The restriction of crossing maneuvers may be accomplished by the use of grade separations and continuous raised medians.

The restriction of left turns is achieved most effectively by continuous medians.

Channelization should be considered for the purposes of guiding traffic flow and reducing vehicle conflicts.

C.8.b.4 Auxiliary ~~Turn~~ Lanes [JM37]

Deceleration lanes for right turn exits (and left turns, where permitted) should be provided on all high-speed facilities. These turn lanes should not be excessive or continuous, since they complicate pedestrian crossings and bicycle/motor vehicle movements.

Storage (or deceleration lanes) to protect turning vehicles should be provided, particularly where turning volumes are significant.

Special consideration should be given to the provisions for deceleration, acceleration, and storage lanes in commercial or industrial areas with significant truck/bus traffic.

C.8.b.5 Grade Separation

Grade separation interchange design should be considered for junctions of high volume ~~major~~ arterial streets and highways.

Grade separation (or an interchange) should be utilized when the expected traffic volume exceeds the intersection capacity.

Grade separation should be considered to eliminate conflict or long waiting periods at potentially hazardous intersections.

Draft

C.8.b.6 Roundabouts

Roundabouts have proven safety and operational characteristics and should be evaluated as an alternative to conventional intersections whenever practical. Modern roundabouts, when correctly designed, are a proven safety countermeasure to conventional intersections, both stop controlled and signalized. In addition, when constructed in appropriate locations, drivers will experience less delay with modern roundabouts. ***NCHRP Report 672. Roundabouts: An Informational Guide***, is adopted by FHWA and establishes criteria and procedures for the justification, operational and safety analysis of modern roundabouts in the United States. The modern roundabout is characterized by the following:

- A central island of sufficient diameter to accommodate vehicle tracking and to provide sufficient deflection to promote lower speeds
- Entry is by gap acceptance through a yield condition at all legs
- Speeds through the intersection are 25 mph or less

Roundabouts should be considered under the following conditions:

1 New construction

2. Reconstruction

3. Traffic Operations improvements

4. Resurfacing (3R) with Right of Way acquisition

5. Need to reduce frequency and severity of crashes

Draft

C.8.c Control for All Limited Access Highways

Entrances and exits on the right side only are highly desirable for all limited access highways. Acceleration and deceleration lanes are mandatory. Intersections shall be accomplished by grade separation (interchange) and should be restricted to connect with arterials or collector roads.

The control of access on freeways should conform to the requirements given in Table 3 - 14Table 3 - 164 Access Control for All Limited Access Highways. The spacing of exits and entrances should be increased wherever possible to reduce conflicts. Safety and capacity characteristics are improved by restricting the number and increasing the spacing of access points.

Table 3 – 164
Access Control for All Limited Access Highways

	URBAN	RURAL
MINIMUM SPACING		
Interchanges	1 to 3 miles	3 to 25 miles[KM38]
MANEUVER RESTRICTIONS		
Crossing Maneuvers	Via Grade Separation Only	
Exit and Entrance	From Right Side Only	
Turn Lane Required	Acceleration Lane at all Entrances Deceleration Lane at all Exits	

C.8.d Control of Urban and Rural Streets and Highways

The design and construction of urban, as well as rural, highways should be governed by the general criteria for access control previously outlined. In addition, the design of urban streets should be in accordance with the criteria listed below:

Draft

- The general layout of local and collector streets should follow a branching network, rather than a highly interconnected grid pattern.
- The street network should be designed to reduce, consistent with origin/destination requirements, the number of crossing and left turn maneuvers.
- The design of the street layout should be predicated upon reducing the need for traffic signals.
- The use of a public street or highway as an integral part of the internal circulation pattern for commercial property should be discouraged.
- The number of driveway access points should be restricted as much as possible through areas of strip development.
- Special consideration should be given to providing turn lanes (auxiliary lane for turning maneuvers) where the total volume or truck/bus volume is high.
- Major traffic generators may be exempt from the restrictions on driveway access if the access point is designed as a normal intersection adequate to handle the expected traffic volume.

These are minimum requirements only; it is generally desirable to use more stringent criteria for control of access.

C.8.e Control for Rural Highways

The design of rural highways should be in accordance with the general criteria for access control for urban streets. The use of acceleration and deceleration lanes on all high-speed highways, particularly if truck and bus traffic is significant, is strongly recommended.

C.8.ef Land Development

It should be the policy of each agency with responsibility for street and highway design, construction, or maintenance to promote close liaison with utility, lawmaking, zoning, building, and planning agencies. Cooperation should be solicited in the formulation of laws, regulations, and master plans for land use, zoning, and roadhighway construction. Further requirements and criteria for access control and land use relationships are given in ***Chapter 2 - Land Development***.

Draft

C.9 Intersection Design

Intersections increase traffic conflicts and the demands on the driver, and are inherently hazardous locations. The design of an intersection should be predicated on reducing motor vehicle, bicycle, and pedestrian conflicts, minimizing the confusion and demands on the driver for rapid and/or complex decisions, and providing for smooth traffic flow. The location and spacing of intersections should follow the requirements presented in C.8 Access Control, this chapter. Intersections should be designed to minimize time and distance of all who pass through or turn at an intersection.

The additional effort and expense required to provide a high quality intersection is justified by the corresponding safety benefits. The overall reduction in crash potential derived from a given expenditure for intersection improvements is generally much greater than the same expenditure for improvements along an open roadway. Properly designed intersections increase capacity, reduce delays, and improve safety.

One of the most common deficiencies that may be easy to correct is lack of adequate left turn storage.

The requirements and design criteria contained in this section are applicable to all driveways, intersections, and interchanges. All entrances to, exits from, or interconnections between streets and highways are subject to these design standards.

C.9.a General Criteria

The layout of a given intersection may be influenced by constraints unique to a particular location or situation. The design shall conform to sound principles and criteria for safe intersections. The general criteria include the following:

- The layout of the intersection should be as simple as is practicable. Complex intersections, which tend to confuse and distract the driver, produce inefficient and hazardous operations.

- The intersection arrangement should not require the driver to make rapid or complex decisions.

- The layout of the intersection should be clear and understandable so a proliferation of signs, signals, or markings is not required to adequately inform and direct the driver.

- The design of intersections, particularly along a given street or highway, should be as consistent as possible.

- The approach roadways should be free from steep grades and sharp horizontal or vertical curves.

- Intersections with driveways or other roadways should be as close to right angle as possible.

- Adequate sight distance should be provided to present the driver a clear view of the intersection and to allow for safe execution of crossing and turning maneuvers.

- The design of all intersection elements should be consistent with the design speeds of the approach roadways.

- The intersection layout and channelization should encourage smooth flow and discourage wrong way movements.

- Special attention should be directed toward the provision of safe roadside clear zones.

- The provision of auxiliaryspecial turn lanes should be in conformance with the criteria set forth in C.8 Access Control, this chapter.

- The requirements for bicycle and pedestrian movements should receive special consideration.

C.9.b Sight Distance

Inadequate sight distance is a contributing factor in the cause of a large percentage of intersection crashes. The provision of adequate sight distance at intersections is absolutely essential and should receive a high priority in the design process.

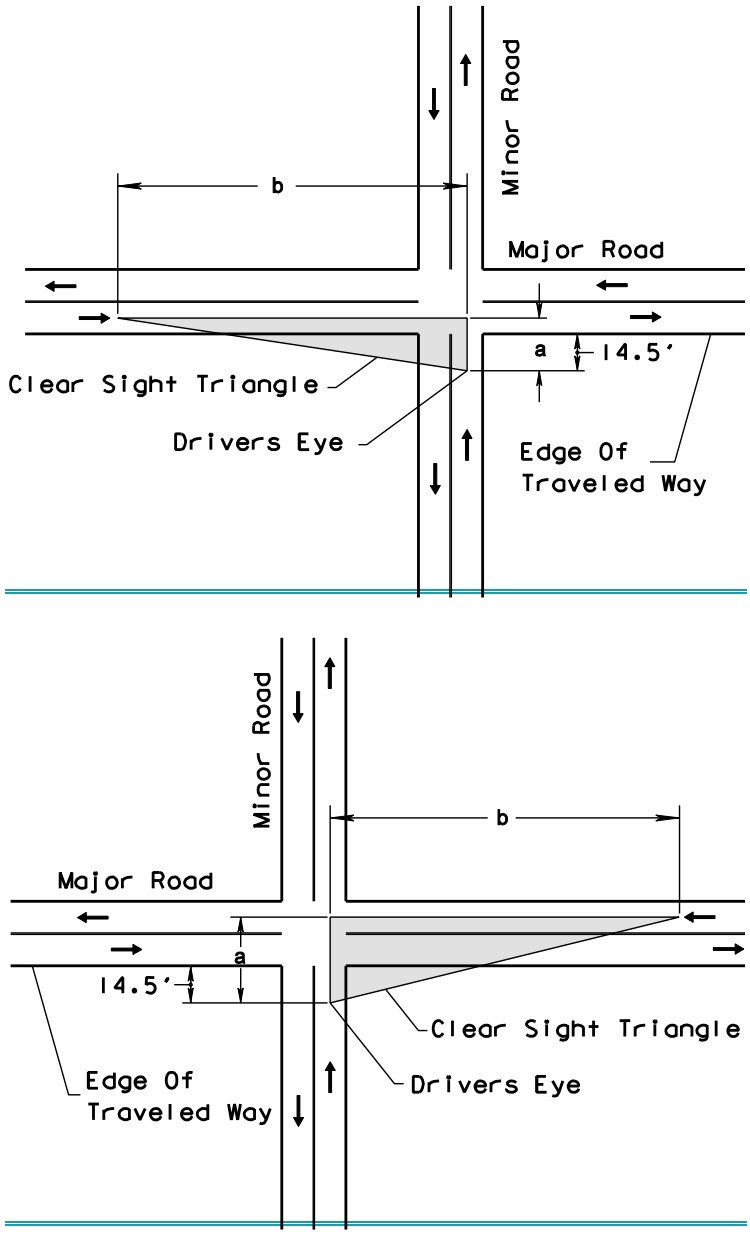
C.9.b.1 General Criteria

General criteria to be followed in the provision of sight distance include the following:

- Sight distance exceeding the minimum stopping sight distance should be provided on the approach to all intersections (entrances, exits, stop signs, traffic signals, and intersecting roadways). The use of proper approach geometry free from sharp horizontal and vertical curvature will normally allow for adequate sight distance.
- The approaches to exits or intersections (including turn, storage, and deceleration lanes) should have adequate sight distance for the design speed and also to accommodate any allowed lane change maneuvers.
- Adequate sight distance should be provided on the through roadway approach to entrances (from acceleration or merge lanes, stop or yield signs, driveways or traffic signals) to provide capabilities for defensive driving. This lateral sight distance should include as much length of the entering lane or intersecting roadway as is feasible. A clear view of entering vehicles is necessary to allow through traffic to aid merging maneuvers and to avoid vehicles that have "run" or appear to have the intention of running stop signs or traffic signals.
- Approaches to school or pedestrian crossings and crosswalks should have sight distances exceeding the minimum values. This should also include a clear view of the adjacent pedestrian pathways or shared use paths.
- Sight distance in both directions should be provided for all entering roadways (intersecting roadways and driveways) to allow entering vehicles to avoid through traffic. See Section C.9.B.4 for further information.Refer to Figures 3 - 7 and 3 - 8.
- Safe stopping sight distances shall be provided throughout all intersections, including turn lanes, speed change lanes, and turning roadways.
- The use of lighting (***Chapter 6 - ROADWAY Lighting***) should be considered to improve intersection sight distance for night driving.

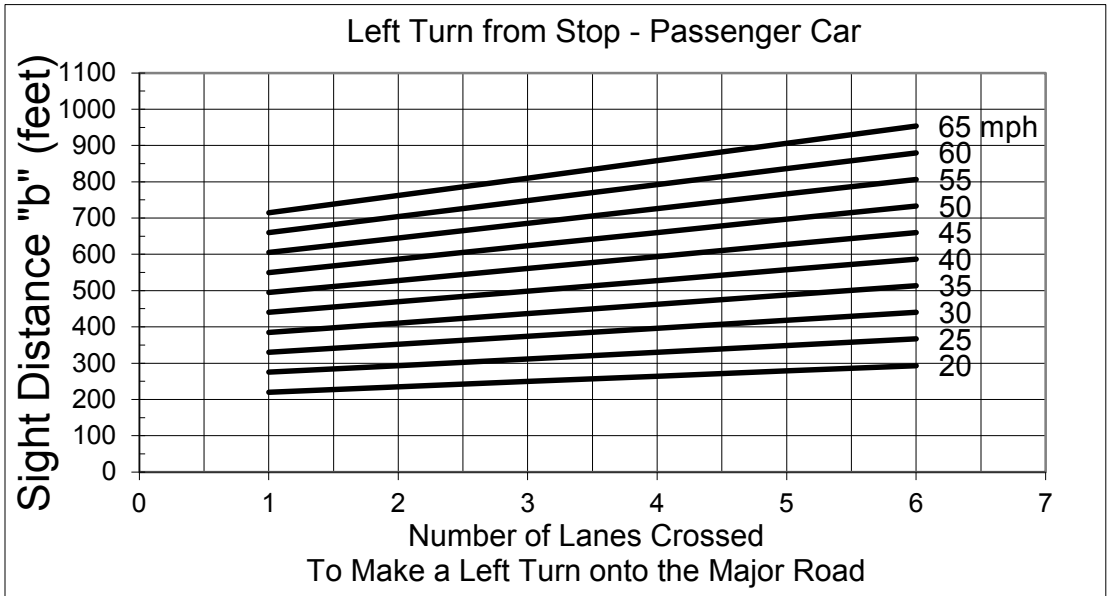
Draft

~~Figure 3 – 7~~
~~Departure Sight Triangle~~
~~(Traffic Approaching From Left Or Right)~~

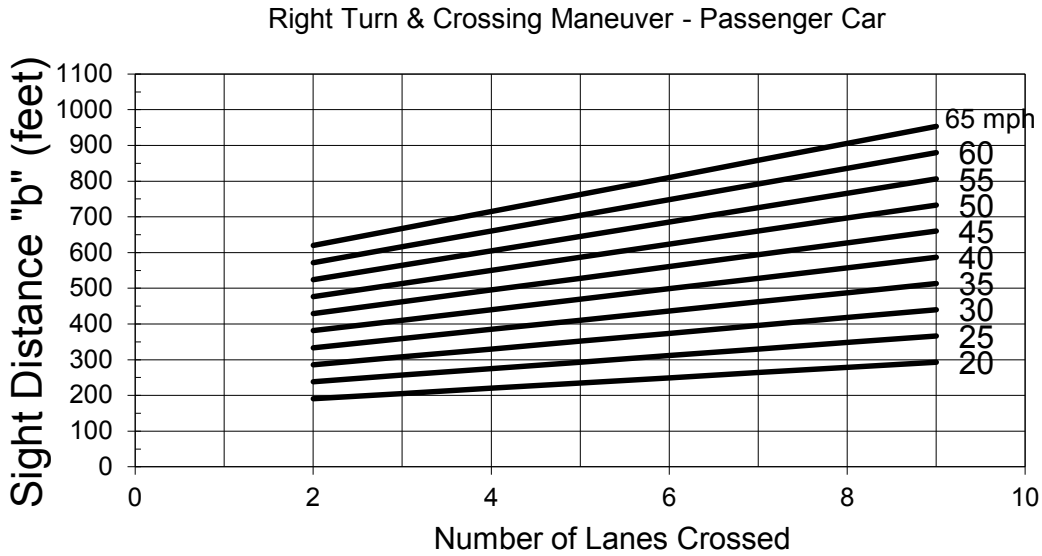


Draft

~~Figure 3 – 8~~
~~Intersection Sight Distance~~



A vehicle crosses one lane to make a left turn onto a two lane-two way road; crosses two lanes on a four lane undivided road; and so forth. For divided highways, convert median widths to equivalent number of lanes. For medians 25' and greater a two step maneuver may be considered - see text.



For right turn maneuver use distance based on 2 lanes crossed.
For crossing divided highways, convert median widths to equivalent number of lanes. For medians 25' and greater a two step maneuver may be considered - see text.

Draft

C.9.b.2 Obstructions to Sight Distance[MAK39]

The provisions for sight distance are limited by the street or highway geometry and the nature and development of the area adjacent to the roadway. Where line of sight is limited by vertical curvature or obstructions, stopping sight distance shall be based on the eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 20.50 feet. At exits or other locations where the driver may be uncertain as to the roadway alignment, a clear view of the pavement surface should be provided. At locations requiring a clear view of other vehicles or pedestrians for the safe execution of crossing or entrance maneuvers, the sight distance should be based on a driver's eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 3.00 feet (preferably 1.50 feet). The height of eye for truck traffic may be increased for determination of line of sight obstructions for intersection maneuvers. Obstructions to sight distance at intersections include the following:

- Any property not under the highway agency's jurisdiction, through direct ownership or other regulations, should be considered as an area of potential sight distance obstruction. Based on the degree of obstruction, the property should be considered for acquisition by deed or easement.
- Areas which contain vegetation (trees, shrubbery, grass, etc.) that cannot easily be trimmed or removed by regular maintenance activity should be considered as sight obstructions.
- Parking lanes shall be considered as obstructions to line of sight. Parking shall be prohibited within clear areas required for sight distance at intersections.
- Large (or numerous) poles or support structures for lighting, signs, signals, or other purposes that significantly reduce the field of vision within the limits of clear sight shown in Figure 3 - 7Figure 3 - 117 Departure Sight Triangle in Section C.9.b.4. may constitute sight obstructions. Potential sight obstructions created by poles, supports, and signs near intersections should be carefully investigated.

Draft

In order to ensure the provision for adequate intersection sight distance, on-site inspections should be conducted before and after construction, including placement of signs, lighting, guardrails, or other objects and how they impact intersection sight distance.

C.9.b.3 Stopping Sight Distance

The provision for safe stopping sight distance at intersections and on turning roadways is even more critical than on open roadways. Vehicles are more likely to be traveling in excess of the design or posted speed and drivers are frequently distracted from maintaining a continuous view of the upcoming roadway.

C.9.b.3.(a) Approach to Stops

The approach to stop signs, yield signs, or traffic signals should be provided with a sight distance no less than values given in Table 3 - 15Table 3 - 175 Sight Distance for Approach to Stops . These values are applicable for any street, highway, or turning roadway. The driver should, at this required distance, have a clear view of the intersecting roadway, as well as the sign or traffic signal.

Where the approach roadway is on a grade or vertical curve, the sight distance should be no less than the values shown in Figure 3 - 9Figure 3 - 109 Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades. In any situation where it is feasible, sight distances exceeding those should be provided. This is desirable to allow for more gradual stopping maneuvers and to reduce the likelihood of vehicles running through stop signs or signals. Advance warnings for stop signs are desirable.

Table 3 – 17
Sight Distance for Approach to Stops
(Rounded Values[MAK40])

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
STOPPING SIGHT DISTANCE (feet) (Minimum)	115	155	200	250	305	360	425	495	570	645	730

Draft

C.9.b.3.(b) On Turning Roads

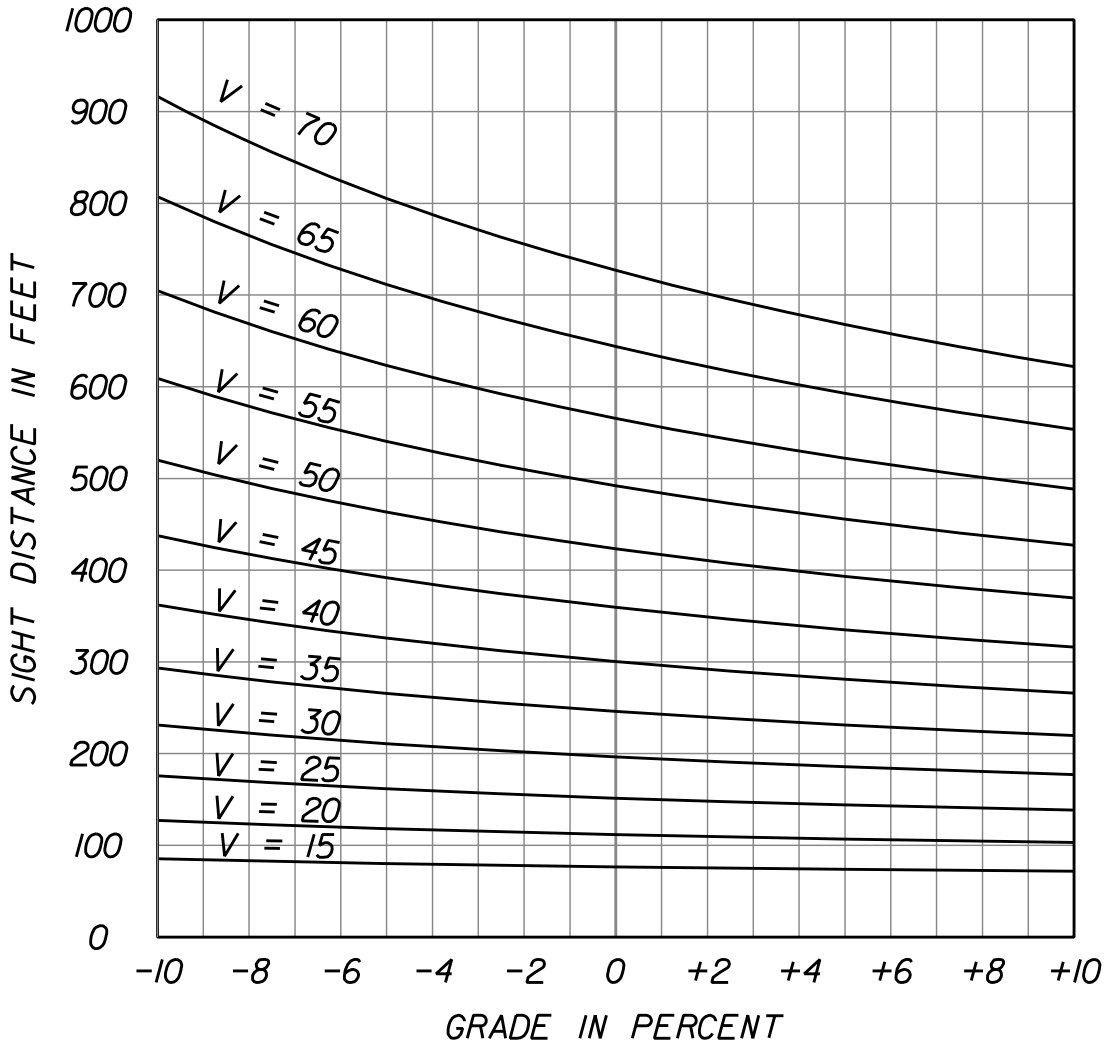
The required stopping sight distance at any location on a turning roadway (loop, exit, etc.) shall be based on the design speed at that point. Ample sight distance should be provided since the driver is burdened with negotiating a curved travel path and the available friction factor for stopping has been reduced by the roadway curvature. The minimum sight distance values are given in Table 3 - 15Table 3 - 175 or Figure 3 - 9Figure 3 - 109. Due to the inability of vehicle headlights to adequately illuminate a sharply curved travel path, roadway lighting should be considered for turning roadways.

Table 3 – 15
Sight Distance For Approach To Stops
(Rounded Values)

DESIGN SPEED (MPH)	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
STOPPING SIGHT DISTANCE (FEET) (Minimum)	50	80	115	155	200	250	305	360	425	495	570	645	730

Draft

Figure 3 – 10~~9~~
Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades



$$S = 3.675V + \frac{V^2}{30(0.3478 \pm G)}$$

S = Sight Distance
V = Design Speed
G = Grade

Draft

C.9.b.4 Sight Distance for Intersection Maneuvers

Sight distance is also provided at intersections to allow the drivers of stopped vehicles a sufficient view of the intersecting street or highway to decide when to enter or cross the intersecting street or highway. Sight triangles, which are specified areas along intersection approach legs and across their included corners, shall, where practical, be clear of obstructions that would prohibit a driver's view of potentially conflicting vehicles. Departure sight triangles shall be provided in each quadrant of each intersection approach controlled by stop signs.

Figures ~~3 - 7~~3 - 11~~7~~ Departure Sight Triangle (Traffic Approaching from Left or Right) and ~~3 - 8~~3 - 12~~8~~ Intersection Sight Distance show typical departure sight triangles to the left and to the right of the location of a stopped vehicle on a minor road (stop controlled) and the intersection sight distances for the various movements.

Distance "a" is the length of leg of the sight triangle along the minor road. This distance is measured from the driver's eye in the stopped vehicle to the center of the nearest lane on the major road (through road) for vehicles approaching from the left, and to the center of the nearest lane for vehicles approaching from the right.

Distance "b" is the length of the leg of the sight triangle along the major road measured from the center of the minor road entrance lane. This distance is a function of the design speed and the time gap in major road traffic needed for minor road drivers turning onto or crossing the major road. This distance is calculated as follows:

$$ISD = 1.47V_{major}t_g$$

Where:

ISD=Intersection Sight Distance (ft.) – length of leg of sight triangle along the major road.

V_{major}= Design Speed (mph) of the Major Road

t_g= Time gap (sec.) for minor road vehicle to enter the major road.

Draft

Time gap values, t_g, to be used in determination of ISD are based on studies and observations of the time gaps in major road traffic actually accepted by drivers turning onto or across the major road. Design time gaps will vary and depend on the design vehicle, the type of the maneuver, the crossing distance involved in the maneuver, and the minor road approach grade.

For intersections with stop control on the minor road, there are three maneuvers or cases that must be considered. ISD is calculated for each maneuver case that may occur at the intersection. The case requiring the greatest ISD will control. Cases that must be considered are as follows (Case numbers correspond to cases identified in the AASHTO – "***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*" *(AASHTO, -2011):***

Case B1 – Left Turns from the Minor (stop controlled) Road

Case B2 – Right Turns from the Minor (stop controlled) Road

Case B3 – Crossing the Major Road from the Minor (stop controlled) Road

See Sections C.9.b.4.(c)Sections C.9.b.4.(c) and (d)(d) for design time gaps for Case B.

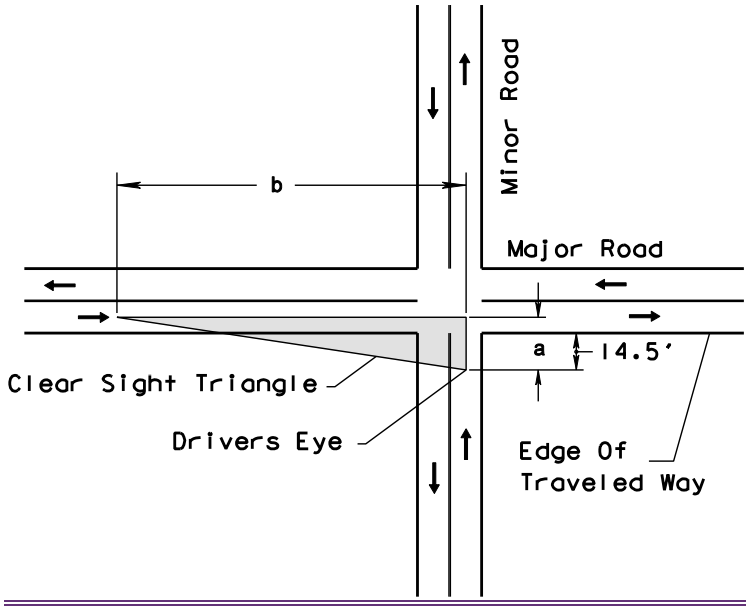
For Intersections with Traffic Signal Control see Section C.9.b.4.(e)Section C.9.b.4.(e) (AASHTO Case D).

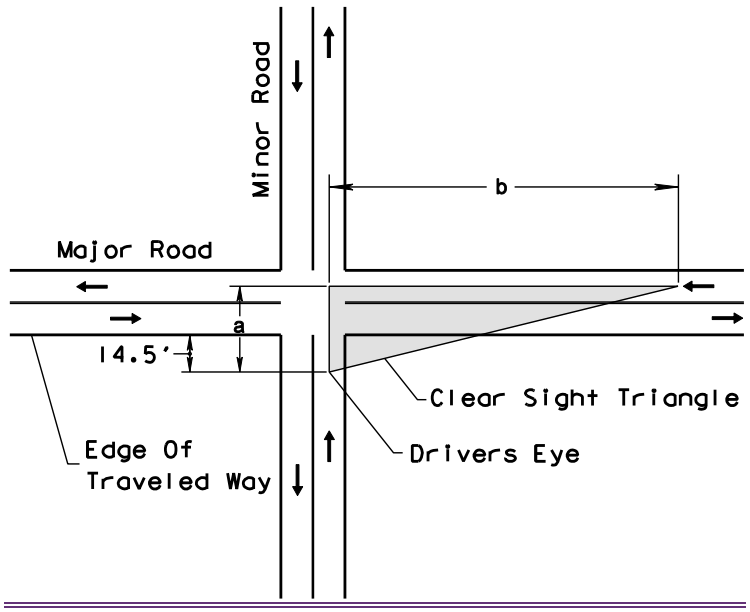
For intersections with all way stop control see Section C.9.b.4.(f)Section C.9.b.4.(f) (AASHTO Case E).

For left turns from the major road see Section C.9.b.4.(g)Section C.9.b.4.(g) (AASHTO Case F).

Draft

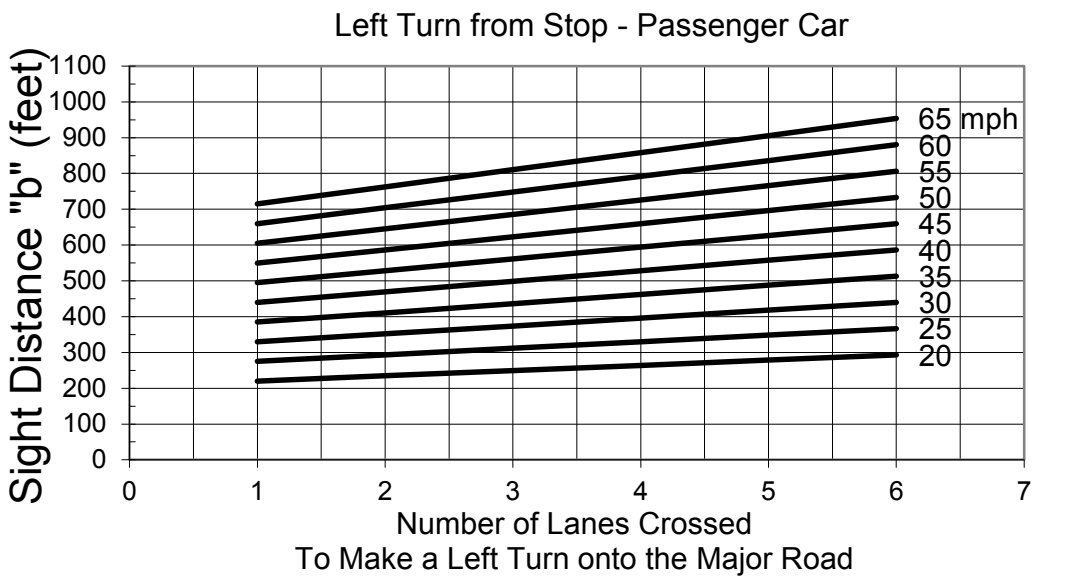
Figure 3 – 11
Departure Sight Triangle
(Traffic Approaching from Left or Right)



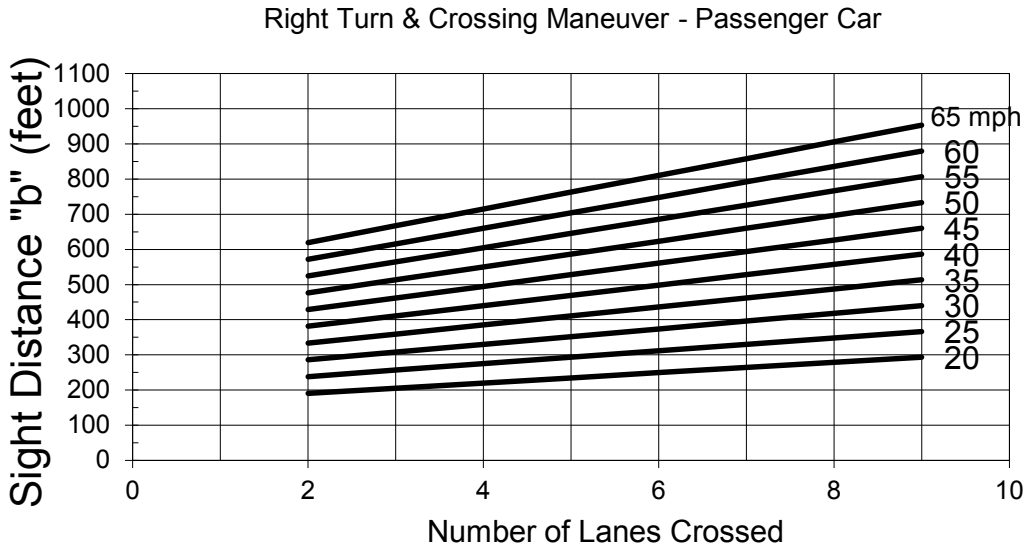


Draft

Figure 3 – 12
Intersection Sight Distance[KM41]



A vehicle crosses one lane to make a left turn onto a two lane-two way road; crosses two lanes on a four lane undivided road; and so forth. For divided highways, convert median widths to equivalent number of lanes. For medians 25' and greater a two step maneuver may be considered - see text.



For right turn maneuver use distance based on 2 lanes crossed.
For crossing divided highways, convert median widths to equivalent number of lanes. For medians 25' and greater a two step maneuver may be considered - see text.

Draft

C.9.b.4.(a) Driver's Eye Position and Vehicle Stopping Position

The vertex (decision point or driver's eye position) of the departure sight triangle on the minor road shall be a minimum of 14.5 feet from the edge of the major road traveled way. This is based on observed measurements of vehicle stopping position and the distance from the front of the vehicle to the driver's eye. Field observations of vehicle stopping positions found that, where necessary, drivers will stop with the front of their vehicle 6.5 feet or less from the edge of the major road traveled way. Measurements of passenger cars indicate that the distance from the front of the vehicle to driver's eye for the current U.S. passenger car fleet is almost always 8 feet or less.

When executing a crossing or turning maneuver after stopping at a stop sign, stop bar, or crosswalk as required in ***Section 316.123, Florida Statutes***, it is assumed that the vehicle will move slowly forward to obtain sight distance (without intruding into the crossing travel lane) stopping a second time as necessary.

C.9.b.4.(b) Design Vehicle

Dimensions of clear sight triangles are provided for passenger cars, single unit trucks, and combination trucks stopped on the minor road. It can usually be assumed that the minor road vehicle is a passenger car. However, where substantial volumes of heavy vehicles enter the major road, such as from a ramp terminal, the use of tabulated values for single unit or combination trucks should be considered.

Draft

C.9.b.4.(c) Case B1 - Left Turns From the Minor Road

Design time gap values for left turns from the minor road onto two lane two way major highway are as follows:

Design Vehicle	Time Gap (t_g) in Seconds
Passenger Car	7.5
Single Unit Truck	9.5
Combination Truck	11.5

If the minor road approach grade is an upgrade that exceeds 3 percent, add 0.2 seconds for each percent grade for left turns.

For multilane streets and highways without medians wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane from the left, in excess of one, to be crossed by the turning vehicle. The median width should be included in the width of additional lanes. This is done by converting the median width to an equivalent number of 12 foot lanes.

For multilane streets and highways with medians wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle a two step maneuver may be assumed. Use case B2 for crossing to the median.

C.9.b.4.(d) Case B2 - Right Turns From the Minor Road and Case B3 – Crossing Maneuver From the Minor Road

Design time gap values for a stopped vehicle on a minor road to turn right onto or cross a two lane highway are as follows:

Design Vehicle	Time Gap (t_g) in Seconds
Passenger Car	6.5
Single Unit Truck	8.5
Combination Truck	10.5

Draft

If the approach grade is an upgrade that exceeds 3 percent, add 0.1 seconds for each percent grade.

For crossing streets and highways with more than 2 lanes, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane to be crossed. Medians not wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle should be included in the width of additional lanes. This is done by converting the median width to an equivalent number of 12 foot lanes.

For crossing divided streets and highways with medians wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle, a two step maneuver may be assumed. Only the number of lanes to be crossed in each step are considered.

C.9.b.4.(e) Intersections with Traffic Signal Control (AASHTO Case D)

At signalized intersections, the first vehicle stopped on one approach should be visible to the driver of the first vehicle stopped on each of the other approaches. Left turning vehicles should have sufficient sight distance to select gaps in oncoming traffic and complete left turns. Apart from these sight conditions, no other sight triangles are needed for signalized intersections. However, if the traffic signal is to be placed on two-way flashing operation in off peak or nighttime conditions, then the appropriate departure sight triangles for Cases B1, B2, or B3, both to the left and to the right, should be provided. In addition, if right turns on red are to be permitted, then the appropriate departure sight triangle to the left for Case B2 should be provided to accommodate right turns.

Draft

C.9.b.4.(f) Intersections with All-Way Stop Control (AASHTO Case E)

At intersections with all-way stop control, the first stopped vehicle on one approach should be visible to the drivers of the first stopped vehicles on each of the other approaches. There are no other sight distance criteria applicable to intersections with all-way stop control.

C.9.b.4.(g) Left Turns from the Major Road (AASHTO Case F)

All locations along a major roadhighway from which vehicles are permitted to turn left across opposing traffic shall have sufficient sight distance to accommodate the left turn maneuver. In this case, the ISD is measured from the stopped position of the left turning vehicle (see Figure 3 - 10Figure 3 - 130 Sight Distance for Vehicle Turning Left from Major Road).

Design time gap values for left turns from the major road are as follows:

Design Vehicle	Time Gap (t_g) in Seconds
Passenger Car	5.5
Single Unit Truck	6.5
Combination Truck	7.5

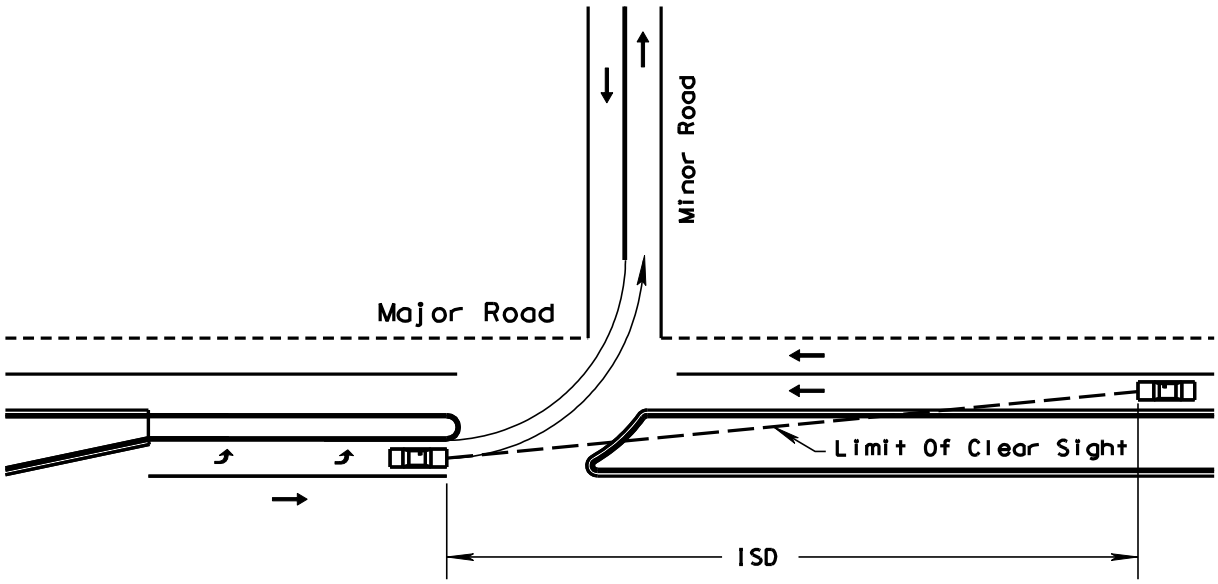
For left turning vehicles that cross more than one opposing lane, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars and 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane to be crossed.

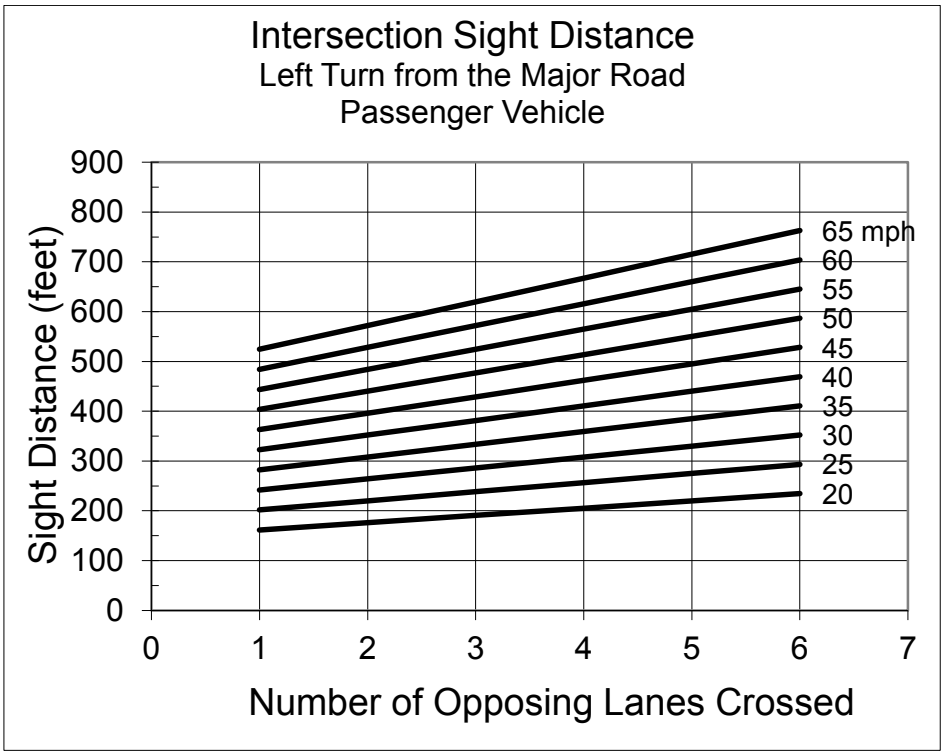
C.9.b.4.(h) Intersection Sight Distance References

The Department's ***Design Standards, Index 546***, provides ISD values for several basic intersection configurations based on Cases B1, B2, B3, and D, and may be used when applicable. For additional guidance on Intersection Sight Distance, see ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)***the AASHTO Green Book.

Draft

Figure 3 – 13~~0~~
Sight Distance for Vehicle Turning Left from Major Road





Draft

C.9.c Auxiliary Lanes

Auxiliary lanes are desirable for the safe execution of speed change maneuvers (acceleration and deceleration) and for the storage and protection of turning vehicles. Auxiliary lanes for exit or entrance turning maneuvers shall be provided in accordance with the requirements set forth in C.8 Access Control, this chapter. The pavement width and cross slopes of auxiliary lanes should meet the minimum requirements shown in Table 3 - 10~~8~~ Minimum Lane Widths~~for all travel lanes~~.

C.9.c.1 Merging Maneuvers

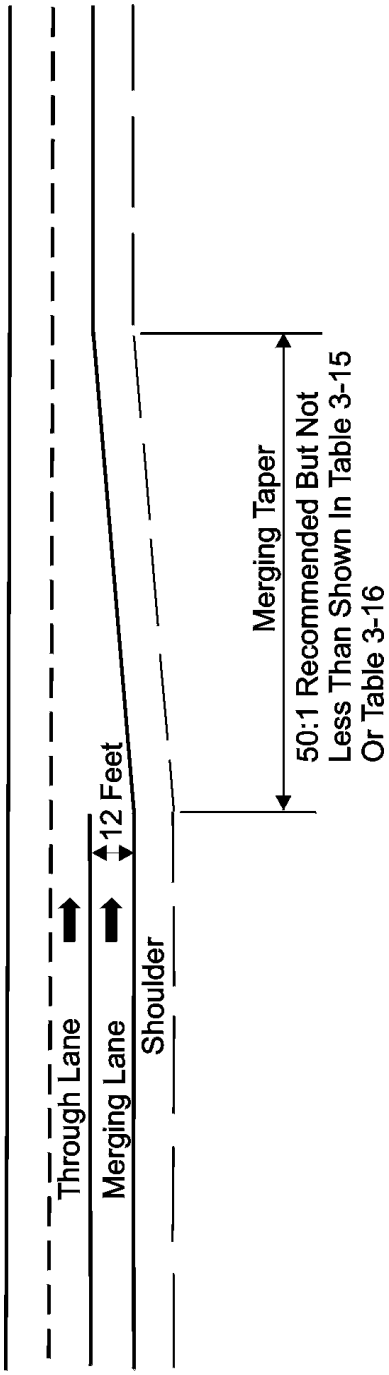
Merging maneuvers occur at the termination of climbing lanes, lane drops, entrance acceleration, and turning lanes. The location provided for this merging maneuver should, where possible, be on a tangent section of the roadway and should be of sufficient length to allow for a smooth, safe transition. The provision of ample distance for merging is essential to allow the driver time to find an acceptable gap in the through traffic and then execute a safe merging maneuver. It is recommended that a merging taper be on a 1:50 transition, but in no case shall the length be less than set forth in ~~Table 3 - 16~~Table 3 - 18~~6~~ Length of Taper for Use In Conditions With Full Width Speed Change Lanes. The termination of this lane should be clearly visible from both the merging and through lane and should correspond to the general configuration shown in ~~Figure 3 - 11~~Figure 3 - 14~~1~~ Termination of Merging Lanes. Advance warning of the merging lane termination should be provided. Lane drops shall be marked in accordance with ***Section 14-15.010, F.A.C. Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)***.

Table 3 – 18~~6~~
Length of Taper for Use ~~In~~in Conditions
With Full Width Speed Change Lanes

DESIGN SPEED (mph)	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
LENGTH OF DECELERATION TAPER (feet)	110	130	150	170	190	210	230	250	270	290	300
LENGTH OF ACCELERATION TAPER (feet)	80	100	120	140	160	180	210	230	250	260	280

Draft

Figure 3 – 14~~1~~
Termination of Merging Lanes



Draft

C.9.c.2 Acceleration Lanes

Acceleration lanes are required for all entrances to expressway and freeway ramps. Acceleration lanes may be desirable at access points to any street or highway with a large percentage of entering truck traffic.

The distance required for an acceleration maneuver is dependent on the vehicle acceleration capabilities, the grade, the initial entrance speed, and the final speed at the termination of the maneuver. The distances required for acceleration on level roadways for passenger cars are given in Table 3 - 17Table 3 - 197 Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes Flat Grades. Where acceleration occurs on a grade, the required distance is obtained by using Tables 3 - 173 - 197 and 3 - 183 - 2018 Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade to Length on Level.

The final speed at the end of the acceleration lane, should, desirably, be assumed as the design speed of the through roadway. The length of acceleration lane provided should be at least as long as the distance required for acceleration between the initial and final speeds. Due to the uncertainties regarding vehicle capabilities and driver behavior, additional length is desirable. The acceleration lane should be followed by a merging taper (similar to Figure 3 - 11Figure 3 - 141 Termination of Merging Lanes), not less than that length set forth in Table 3 - 16Table 3 - 186. The termination of acceleration lanes should conform to the general configuration shown for merging lanes in Figure 3 - 11Figure 3 - 141. Recommended acceleration lanes for freeway entrance terminals are given in Table 3 - 19Table 3 - 2119 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals.

Draft

Table 3 – 19~~7~~
Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes
Flat Grades - 2 Percent or Less

Design Speed of turning roadway curve (mph)		Stop Condition	~~15~~ 20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Minimum curve radius (feet)		---	~~55~~ 100	160	230	320	430	555	695
Design Speed of Highway (mph)	Length of Taper (feet)*	Total length of DECELERATION LANE, including taper, (feet)							
30	150	385	~~350~~ 320	290	---	---	---	---	---
35	170	450	~~420~~ 380	355	320	---	---	---	---
40	190	510	~~485~~ 455	425	375	345	---	---	---
45	210	595	~~560~~ 535	505	460	430	---	---	---
50	230	665	~~635~~ 615	585	545	515	455	405	---
55	250	730	~~705~~ 690	660	630	600	535	485	---
60	270	800	~~770~~ 750	730	700	675	620	570	510
65	290	860	~~830~~ 810	790	760	730	680	630	570
70	300	915	~~890~~ 870	850	820	790	740	690	640
Design Speed of Highway (mph)	Length of Taper (feet)*	Total length of ACCELERATION LANE, including taper (feet)							
30	120	300	~~260~~ ---	---	---	---	---	---	---
35	140	420	~~360~~ 300	---	---	---	---	---	---
40	160	520	~~460~~ 430	370	280	---	---	---	---
45	180	740	~~670~~ 620	560	460	340	---	---	---
50	210	930	~~870~~ 820	760	660	560	340	---	---
55	230	1190	~~1130~~ 1040	1010	900	780	550	380	---
60	250	1450	~~1390~~ 1350	1270	1160	1050	800	670	430
65	260	1670	~~1610~~ 1570	1480	1380	1260	1030	860	630
70	280	1900	~~1840~~ 1800	1700	1630	1510	1280	1100	860

* For urban street auxiliary lanes, shorter tapers may be used due to lower operating speeds. Refer to Figure 3-16~~3~~ for allowable taper rates.

Draft

Table 3 – 20~~18~~
Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade
~~To~~to Length on Level

DECELERATION LANE			ACCELERATION LANE					
	Design Speed of Turning Roadway (mph)			Design Speed of Turning Roadway (mph)				
Design Speed of Highway (mph)	All Speeds 3% -4% Upgrade	All Speeds 3%-4% Downgrade	Design Speed of Highway (mph)	20	30	40	50	All Speeds
				3% - 4% Upgrade				3% - 4% Downgrade
All Speeds	0.9	1.2	40	1.3	1.3	---	---	0.7
			45	1.3	1.35	---	---	0.675
			50	1.3	1.4	1.4	---	0.65
			55	1.35	1.45	1.45	---	0.625
			60	1.4	1.5	1.5	1.6	0.6
			65	1.45	1.55	1.6	1.7	0.6
			70	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8	0.6
	5% - 6% Upgrade	5% - 6% Downgrade		5% - 6% Upgrade				5% - 6% Downgrade
All Speeds	0.8	1.35	40	1.5	1.5	---	---	0.6
			45	1.5	1.6	---	---	0.575
			50	1.5	1.7	1.9	---	0.55
			55	1.6	1.8	2.05	---	0.525
			60	1.7	1.9	2.2	2.5	0.5
			65	1.85	2.05	2.4	2.75	0.5
			70	2.0	2.2	2.6	3.0	0.5

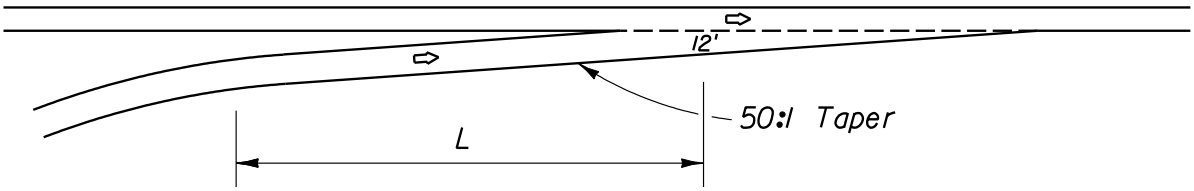
Ratios in this table multiplied by the values in ~~Table 3-16~~Table 3 - 18~~6~~ give the length of speed change lane
for the respective grade.

Draft

Table 3 – 21~~19~~
Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals

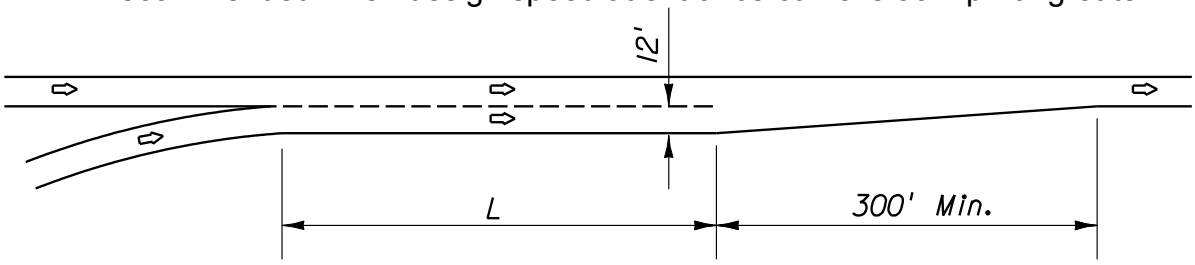
Highway Design Speed (mph)	L = Acceleration Length (feet)							
	For Entrance Curve Design Speed (mph)							
	Stop ~~Condition~~	~~15~~ 20	25	30	35	40	45	50
30	180	~~140~~ ---	---	---	---	---	---	---
35	280	~~220~~ 160	---	---	---	---	---	---
40	360	~~300~~ 270	210	120	---	---	---	---
45	560	~~490~~ 440	380	280	160	---	---	---
50	720	~~660~~ 610	550	450	350	130	---	---
55	960	~~900~~ 810	780	670	550	320	150	---
60	1200	~~1140~~ 1100	1020	910	800	550	420	180
65	1410	~~1350~~ 1310	1220	1120	1000	770	600	370
70	1620	~~1560~~ 1520	1420	1350	1,230	1000	820	580

Expressway and Freeway Entrance Terminals



TAPER TYPE

Recommended when design speed at entrance curve is 50 mph or greater.



PARALLEL TYPE

Recommended when design speed at entrance curve is less than 50 mph.

Draft

C.9.c.3 Exit Lanes

Auxiliary lanes for exiting maneuvers provide space outside the through lanes for protection and storage of decelerating vehicles exiting the facility.

- Deceleration Lanes - The primary function of deceleration lanes is to provide a safe travel path for vehicles decelerating from the operating speed on the through lanes. Deceleration lanes are required for all freeway exits and are desirable on high-speed (design speed greater than 50 mph) streets and highways.

The distance required for deceleration of passenger cars is given in Table 3 - 17Table 3 - 197.

The required distance for deceleration on grades is given in Tables 3 - 173 - 197 and 3 - 183 - 2018.

The length of deceleration lanes shall be no less than the values obtained from Tables 3 - 173 - 197 and 3 - 183 - 2018, and should be increased wherever feasible. The initial speed should, desirably, be taken as the design speed of the highway. The final speed should be the design speed at the exit (e.g., a turning roadway) or zero, if the deceleration lane terminates at a stop or traffic signal. A reduction in the final speed to be used is particularly important if the exit traffic volume is high, since the speed of these vehicles may be significantly reduced.

The entrance to deceleration (and climbing) lanes should conform to the general configuration shown in Figure 3 - 12Figure 3 - 152 Entrance for Deceleration Lane. The initial length of straight taper, shown in Table 3 - 17Table 3 - 197, may be utilized as a portion of the total required deceleration distance. The pavement surface of the deceleration lane should be clearly visible to approaching traffic, so drivers are aware of the maneuvers required. Recommended deceleration lanes for exit terminals are given in Table 3 - 20Table 3 - 220 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals.

Draft

- Storage Lanes - Where exit lanes are required (C.8 Access ControlC.8 Access Control, this chapter), or desirable on low speed streets and highways, storage lanes may be used in place of or in conjunction with deceleration lanes. Storage lanes should be considered on all facilities. Although the primary function of storage lanes is to provide protection and storage for turning vehicles, it is desirable to provide sufficient length to allow for deceleration capabilities. Storage lanes should conform to the general configuration shown in Figure 3 - 13Figure 3 - 163 Typical Storage Lane.

The length of storage lanes for unsignalized intersections may be obtained from the table in Figure 3 - 13Figure 3 - 163. The full width portion of storage lanes should, where possible, be increased to allow for expected storage of vehicles (Table 3 - 2Table 3 - 2 for vehicle lengths). As a minimum requirement, storage for at least two passenger cars (40 - 50 feet) should be provided.

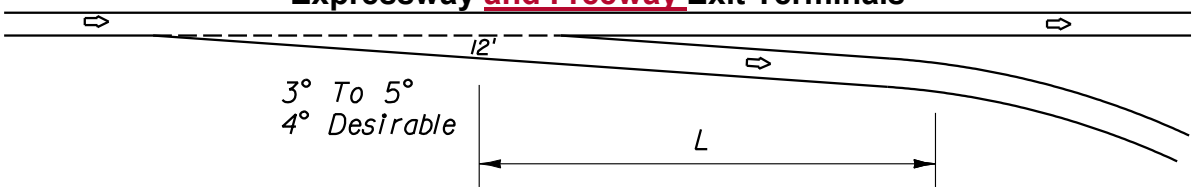
On collector or arterial streets (design speed 45 mph or less), tapers preceding storage lanes and approaching intersections at grade may be shorter than those given in Table 3 - 17Table 3 - 197 (see ***AASHTO Greenbook*** for recommended lengths).

Draft

Table 3 – 22~~0~~
Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals

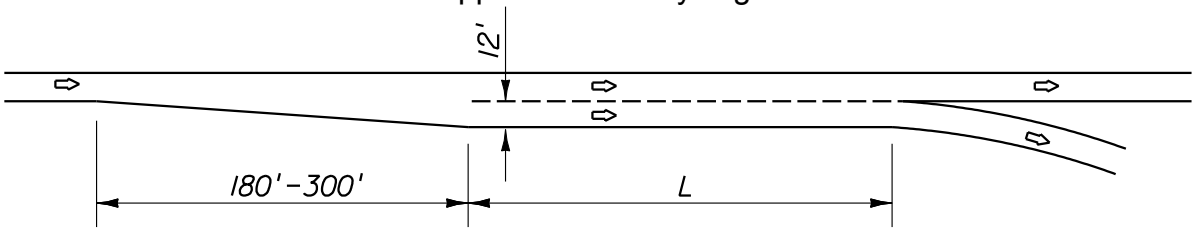
Highway Design Speed (mph)	L = Deceleration Length (feet)							
	For Design Speed of Exit Curve (mph)							
	Stop Condition	~~15~~ 20	25	30	35	40	45	50
30	235	~~200~~ 170	140	---	---	---	---	---
35	280	~~250~~ 210	185	150	---	---	---	---
40	320	~~295~~ 265	235	185	155	---	---	---
45	385	~~350~~ 325	295	250	220	---	---	---
50	435	~~405~~ 385	355	315	285	225	175	---
55	480	~~455~~ 440	410	380	350	285	235	---
60	530	~~500~~ 480	460	430	405	350	300	240
65	570	~~540~~ 520	500	470	440	390	340	280
70	615	~~590~~ 570	550	520	490	440	390	340

Expressway and Freeway Exit Terminals



TAPER TYPE

Recommended when design speed at exit curve is 50 mph or greater and when approach visibility is good.



PARALLEL TYPE

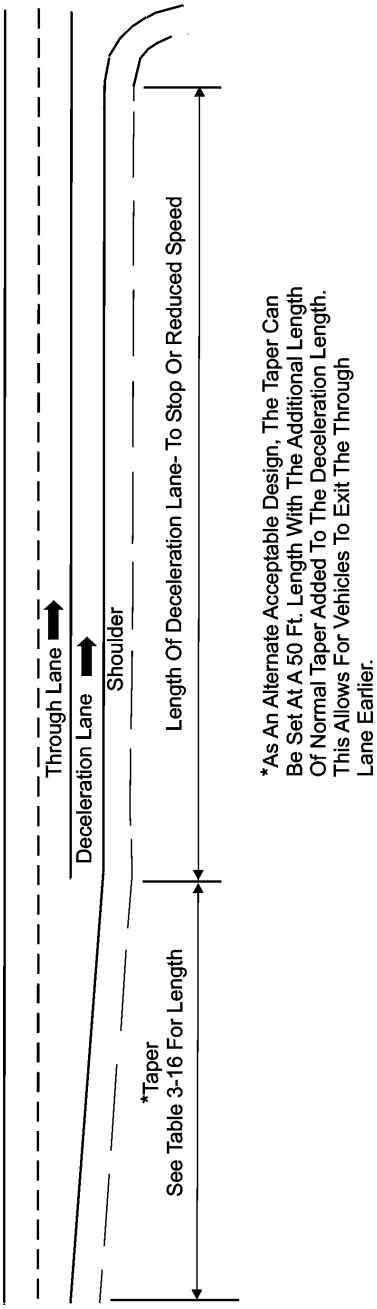
Recommended when design speed at exit curve is less than 50 mph or when approach

Draft

visibility is not good.

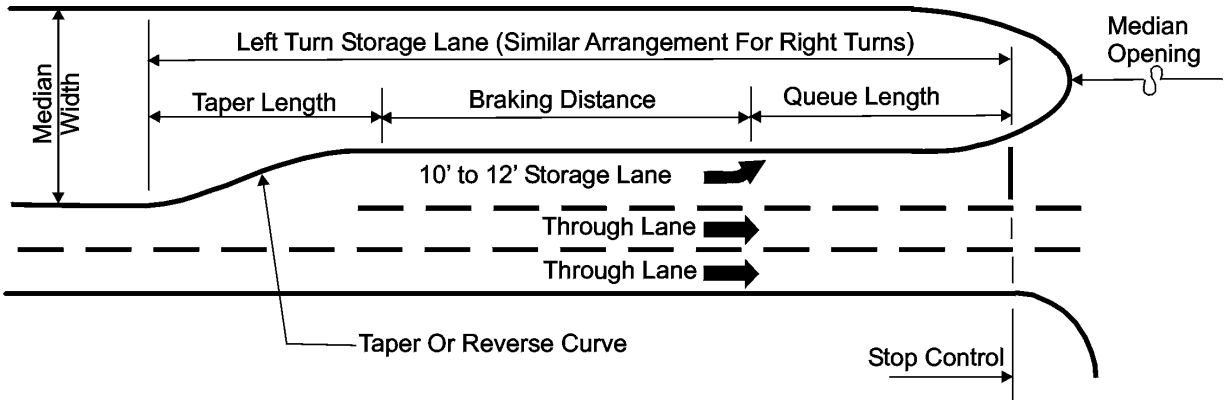
Draft

Figure 3 – 15~~2~~
Entrance for Deceleration Lane



Draft

Figure 3 – 16~~3~~
Typical Storage Lane[MAK42]



Storage Queue Length - Unsignalized Intersections

Turning Vehicles Per Hour	30	60	100	200	300
Required Storage Length (feet)	25	50	100	175	250

At signalized intersections, the required queue length depends on the signal cycle length, the signal phasing arrangement, and rate of arrivals and departures of turning vehicles.

In absence of a turning movement study, it is recommended that 100 ft. of queue length be provided in urban/suburban areas and 50 ft. of queue length be provided in rural/town areas as a minimum.

Taper Length And Braking Distance (feet)

Highway Design Speed (mph)	Storage Entry Speed* (mph)	Taper Length	Brake To Stop	
			Urban**	Rural***
35	25	70	75	---
40	30	80	75	---
45	35	85	100	---
50	40/44	105	135	215
55	48	125	---	260
60	52	145	---	310
65	55	170	---	350

* Reaction Precedes Entry
** Minimum Braking Distance, Wet Conditions
*** Customary Braking Distance, Wet Conditions

The storage lane may be in place of or in addition to deceleration length (See Section C.9.c.3).

C.9.d Turning Roadways at Intersections

The design and construction of turning roadways shall meet the same general requirements for through roadways, except for the specific requirements given in the subsequent sections.

C.9.d.1 Design Speed

Lanes for turning movements at grade intersections may, where justified, be based on a design speed as low as 10 mph. Turning roadways with design speeds in excess of 40 mph shall be designed in accordance with the requirements for through roadways.

A variable design speed may be used to establish cross section and alignment criteria for turning roadways that will experience acceleration and deceleration maneuvers.

C.9.d.2 Horizontal Alignment

- Curvature - The minimum permitted radii (maximum degree) of curvature for various values of superelevation are given in Table 3 - 21Table 3 - 231 .Superelevation Rates for Curves at Intersections. These should be considered as minimum values only and the radius of curvature should be increased wherever feasible. Further information contained in ***AASHTO - "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - (AASHTO, 2011 01)***, should also be considered.

Draft

Table 3 – 231
Superelevation Rates for Curves at Intersections

		Design Speed (mph)					
		10 15 **20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**
Minimum Superelevation Rate		0.00* 0.00* 0.02	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.09	0.10
Minimum Radius (feet)		25 50 90	150	230	310	430	540

The rate of 0.02 is considered the practical minimum for effective drainage across the surface.

Note: Preferably use superelevation rates greater than these minimum values.

- Superelevation Transition - Minimum superelevation transition (runoff) rates (maximum relative gradients) are given in Tables 3 - 223 - 242 Maximum Rate of Change in Pavement Edge Elevation for Curves at Intersections and 3 - 233 - 253 Maximum Algebraic Difference in Pavement Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals. Other information given in ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - (AASHTO, 2011 01)***, should also be considered.

Table 3 – 242
Maximum Rate of Change in Pavement Edge Elevation for Curves at Intersections

Design Speed (mph)	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**	**55**	**60**	**65**	**70**
Maximum relative gradients for profiles between the edge of two lane pavement and the centerline (percent)	0.74	0.70	0.66	0.62	0.58	0.54	0.50	0.47	0.45	0.43	0.40

Draft

Table 3 – 253
Maximum Algebraic Difference in Pavement Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals

Design Speed of Exit or Entrance Curve (mph)	Maximum Algebraic Difference in Cross Slope at Crossover Line (percent)
20 and under	5.0 to 8.0
25 and 30	5.0 to 6.0
35 and over	4.0 to 5.0

C.9.d.3 Vertical Alignment

Grades on turning roadways should be as flat as practical and long vertical curves should be used wherever feasible. The length of vertical curves shall be no less than necessary to provide minimum stopping sight distance. Minimum stopping sight distance values are given in Table 3 - 15Table 3 - 175. For additional guidance on vertical alignment for turning roadways, see ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - (AASHTO, 2011)01***.

C.9.d.4 Cross Section Elements

- Number of Lanes - One-way turning roadways are often limited to a single trafficvel lane. In this case, the total width of the roadway shall be sufficient to allow traffic to pass a disabled vehicle. Two-way, undivided turning roadways should be avoided. Medians or barriers should be utilized to separate opposing traffic on turning roadways.
- Lane WidthTravel Lanes - The width of all traffictravel lanes should be sufficient to accommodate (with adequate clearances) the turning movements of the expected types of vehicles. The minimum required lane widths for turning roadways are given in Table 3 – 24Table 3 - 264 Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicles. Changes in lane widths should be gradual and

Draft

should be accomplished in coordination with adequate transitions in horizontal curvature.

- Shoulders - On one-lane turning roadways, serving expressways and other principal arterials (e.g., loops, ramps), the right hand shoulder should be at least 6 feet wide. The left hand shoulder should be at least 6 feet wide in all cases. On two-lane, one-way roadways, both shoulders should be at least 6 feet wide. Where guardrails or other barriers are used, they should be placed at least 8 feet from edge of travel lane. Guardrails should be placed 2 feet outside the normal shoulder width.
- Clear Zones - Turning roadways should, as a minimum, meet all open highway criteria for clear zones on both sides of the roadway. The areas on the outside of curves should be wider and more gently sloped than the minimum values for open highways. Guardrails or similar barriers shall be used if the minimum width and slope requirements cannot be obtained.

Further criteria and requirements for roadway design are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

Draft

Table 3 – 264
Derivedsign Pavement Widths of Pavements for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicles

Pavement Width (feet)

Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (feet)	Case 1, One-Lane Operation, No Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle												
	P	SU-30	Su-40	City Bus	S-Bus-36	A-Bus	WB-40	WB-62	WB-67	WB-67D	MH	P/T	P/B
50	13	18	21	21	18	22	23	44	57	29	18	19	18
75	13	17	18	19	17	19	20	30	33	23	17	17	17
100	13	16	17	18	16	18	18	25	28	21	16	16	16
150	12	15	16	17	16	17	17	22	23	19	15	16	15
200	12	15	16	16	15	16	16	20	21	18	15	15	15
300	12	15	15	16	15	16	15	18	19	17	15	15	15
400	12	15	15	15	15	15	15	17	18	16	15	15	14
500	12	14	15	15	14	15	15	17	17	16	14	14	14
Target	12	14	14	15	14	15	14	15	15	15	14	14	14

Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (feet)	Case II, One-Lane, One-Way Operation, with Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle by Another of the Same Type												
	P	SU-30	SU-40	City Bus	S-Bus-36	A-Bus	WB-40	WB-62	WB-67	WB-67D	MH	P/T	P/B
50	20	30	36	38	31	40	39	81	109	50	30	30	28
75	19	27	30	32	27	34	32	53	59	39	27	27	26
100	18	25	27	30	25	30	29	44	48	34	25	25	24
150	18	23	25	27	23	27	26	36	38	29	23	23	23
200	17	22	24	25	23	26	24	32	34	27	22	22	22
300	17	22	22	24	22	24	23	28	30	25	22	22	21
400	17	21	22	23	21	23	22	26	27	24	21	21	21
500	17	21	21	23	21	23	22	25	26	23	21	21	21
Target	17	20	20	21	20	21	20	21	21	21	20	20	20

Table Continued on Next Page

Draft

Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (feet)	Case III, Two-Lane Operation, Either One- or Two-Way (Same Type Vehicle in Both Lanes)												
	P	SU-30	SU-40	City Bus	S-Bus-36	A-Bus	WB-40	WB-62	WB-67	WB-67D	MH	P/T	P/B
50	26	36	42	44	37	46	45	87	115	56	36	36	34
75	25	33	36	38	33	40	38	59	65	45	33	33	32
100	24	31	33	35	31	36	35	50	54	40	31	31	30
150	24	29	31	33	29	33	32	42	44	35	29	29	29
200	23	28	30	31	29	32	30	38	40	33	28	28	28
300	23	28	28	30	28	30	29	34	36	31	28	28	27
400	23	27	28	29	27	29	28	32	33	30	27	27	27
500	23	27	27	29	27	29	28	31	32	29	27	27	27
Target	23	26	26	27	26	27	28	27	27	27	26	26	26

Source – 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3-28b Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicle

Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement R (FEET)	Case I One-Lane, One-Way Operation - No Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle			Case II One-Lane, One-Way Operation - With Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle			Case III Two-Lane Operation - Either One-Way or Two-Way		
	Design Traffic and Conditions								
	A	B	C	A	B	C	A	B	C
50	18	18	23	20	26	30	31	36	45
75	16	17	20	19	23	27	29	33	38
100	15	16	18	18	22	25	28	31	35
150	14	15	17	18	21	23	26	29	32
200	13	15	16	17	20	22	26	28	30
300	13	15	15	17	20	22	25	28	29
400	13	15	15	17	19	21	25	27	28
500	12	15	15	17	19	21	25	27	28
Tangent	12	14	14	17	18	20	24	26	26

Draft

	Width Modification Regarding Edge of Pavement Treatment:		
No stabilized shoulder	None	None	None
Sloping curb	None	None	None
Vertical curb: one side two sides	 Add 1 ft Add 2 ft	 None Add 1 ft	 Add 1 ft Add 2 ft
Stabilized shoulder, one or both sides	Lane width for Conditions B & C on tangent may be reduced to 12 ft where shoulder is 4 ft or wider	Deduct shoulder width; minimum pavement width as under Case I	Deduct 2 ft where shoulder is 4 ft or wider

Note:
Traffic Condition A = predominately P vehicles, but some consideration for SU trucks.
Traffic Condition B = sufficient SU vehicles to govern design, but some consideration for semitrailer combination trucks.
Traffic Condition C = sufficient bus and combination-trucks to govern design.

Draft

C.9.e At Grade Intersections

C.9.e.1 Turning Radii

Where right turns from through or turn lanes will be negotiated at low speeds (less than 10 mph), the minimum turning capabilities of the vehicle may govern the design. It is desirable that the turning radius and the required lane width be provided in accordance with the criteria for turning roadways. The radius of the inside pavement edge of traveled way should, however, be sufficient to allow the expected vehicles to negotiate the turn without encroaching the shoulder or adjacent traffictravel lanes.

Where turning roadway criteria are not used, the radius of the inside insidepavement edge of traveled way should be no less than 25 feet. The use of three-centered compound curves is also a reasonable practice to allow for transition into and out of the curve. The recommended radii and arrangement of compound curves instead of a single simple curve is given in ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - (AASHTO, 2011)01.***

C.9.e.2 Cross Section Correlation

The correlation of the cross section of two intersecting roadways is frequently difficult. A careful analysis should be conducted to ensure changes in slope are not excessive and adequate drainage is provided. At stop-controlled intersections, the through roadway cross section should be carried through the intersection without interruption. Minor roadways should approach the intersection at a slightly reduced elevation so the through roadwaymain highway cross section is not disturbed. At signalized intersections, it is sometimes necessary to remove part of the crown in order to avoid an undesirable hump in one roadway.

Intersections of grade or cross slope should be gently rounded to improve vehicle operation. Pavement generally should be sloped toward the intersection corners to provide superelevation for turning maneuvers and to promote proper drainage.

Draft

Where islands are used for channelization, the width of traffictravel lanes for turning movements shall be no less than the widths recommended by AASHTO.

C.9.e.3 Median Openings

Median openings should be restricted in accordance with the requirements presented in C.8 Access ControlC.8 Access Control, this chapter. Where a median opening is required, the length of the opening shall be no less than 40 feet. Median curbs should be terminated gradually without the exposure of abrupt curb ends. The termination requirements are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

C.9.e.4 Channelization

Channelization of at grade intersections is the regulation or separation of conflicting movements into definite travel paths by islands, markings, or other means, to promote safe, orderly traffic flow. The major objective of channelization is to clearly define the appropriate paths of travel and thus assist in the prevention of vehicles deviating excessively or making wrong maneuvers. Channelization may be used effectively to define the proper path for exits, entrances, and intersection turning movements. The methods used for channelization should be as simple as possible and consistent in nature. The channelized intersection should appear open and natural to the approaching driver. Channelization should be informative rather than restrictive in nature.

The use of low slopingeasily mounted curbs and flush medians and islands can provide adequate delineation in most cases. Islands should be clearly visible and, in general, should not be smaller than 100 square feet in area. The use of small and/or numerous islands should be avoided.

Pavement markings are a useful and effective tool for providing delineation and channelization in an informative rather than restrictive fashion. The layout of all traffic control devices should be closely coordinated with the design of all channelization.

Draft

C.9.f Driveways

Direct driveway access within the area of influence of the intersection should be discouraged.

Driveways from major traffic generators (greater than 400 vpd), or those with significant truck/bus traffic, should be designed as normal intersections.

C.9.g Interchanges

The design of interchanges for the intersection of a freeway with a major street or highway, collector/distributor road, or other freeway is a complex problem. The location and spacing of intersections should follow the requirements presented in C.8 Access ControlC.8 Access Control, this chapter. The design of interchanges shall follow the general intersection requirements for deceleration, acceleration, merging maneuvers, turning roadways, and sight distance.

Interchanges, particularly along a given freeway, should be reasonably consistent in their design. A basic principle in the design should be to develop simple open interchanges that are easily traversed and understandable to the driver. Complex interchanges with a profusion of possible travel paths are confusing and hazardous to the motorist and are generally inefficient.

Intersections with minor streets or highways or collector/distributor roads may be accomplished by simple diamond interchanges. The intersection of exit and entrance ramps with the crossroad shall meet all intersection requirements.

The design of freeway exits should conform to the general configurations given in Table 3 - 20Table 3 - 220. Exits should be on the right and should be placed on horizontal curves. Where deceleration on an exit loop is required, the deceleration alignment should be designed so the driver receives adequate warning of the approaching increase in curvature. This is best accomplished by gradually increasing the curvature and the resulting centrifugal force. This increasing centrifugal force provides warning to the driver that he must slow down. A clear view of the exit loop should also be provided. The length of deceleration shall be no less than the values shown

Draft

in Table 3 - 20Table 3 - 220.

Entrances to freeways should be designed in accordance with the general configurations shown below Table 3 - 19Table 3 - 2119. Special care should be taken to ensure vehicles entering from loops are not directed across through travel lanes. The entering roadway should be brought parallel (or nearly so) to the through lanes before entry is permitted. Where acceleration is required, the distances shown in Table 3 - 19Table 3 - 2119 shall, as a minimum, be provided. Exits and entrances to all high-speed facilities (design speed greater than 50 mph), should, where feasible, be designed in accordance with Tables 3 - 203 - 220 and 3 - 193 - 2119. The lengths obtained from Tables 3 - 203 - 220 and 3 - 193 - 2119 should be adjusted for grade by using the ratios in Table 3 - 18Table 3 - 2018.

The selection of the type and exact design details of a particular interchange requires considerable study and thought. The guidelines and design details given in ***AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - (AASHTO, 2011)***01, should generally be considered as minimum criteria.

C.9.h Clear Zone

The provisions of ample clear zone or proper redirection of energy absorbing devices is particularly important at intersections. Every effort should be made to open up the area around the intersection to provide adequate clear zone for vehicles that have left the traveled way. Drivers frequently leave the proper travel path due to unsuccessful turning maneuvers or due to the necessity for emergency avoidance maneuvers. Vehicles also leave the roadway after intersection collisions and roadside objects should be removed to reduce the probability of second impacts. The roadside areas at all intersections and interchanges should be contoured to provide shallow slopes and gentle changes in grade.

The roadside clear zone of intersecting roadways should be carried throughout intersections with no discontinuities or interruptions. Poles and support structures for lights, signs, and signals should not be placed in medians or within the roadside clear zone.

The design of guardrails or other barriers should receive particular attention at intersections. Impact attenuators should be used in all gore and other

Draft

areas where structures cannot be removed.

Particular attention should be given to the protection of pedestrians in intersection areas - ***Chapter 8 - Pedestrian Facilities***. Further criteria and requirements for clear zone and protection devices at intersections are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

C.10 Other Design Factors

C.10.a Pedestrian Facilities

The layout and design of the street and highway network should include provisions for pedestrian traffic in urban areas. All pedestrian crossings and pathways within the roadhighway right of way should be considered and designed as in integral part of any street or urban highway.

C.10.a.1 Policy and Objectives - New Facilities

The planning and design of new streets and highways shall include provisions for the safe, orderly movement of pedestrian traffic. Provisions for pedestrian traffic outside of the roadhighway right of way should be considered.

The overall objective is to provide a safe, secure, continuous, convenient, and comfortable trip continuity and access environment for pedestrian traffic.

C.10.a.2 Accessibility Requirements

Pedestrian facilities, such as walkways and sidewalks, shall be designed to accommodate physically disabled persons whose mobility is dependent on wheelchairs and other devices. In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by 49 C.F.R 37.41 or 37.43 and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by 61G20-4.002 impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities.

Draft

C.10.a.3 Sidewalks

Sidewalks should provide a safe, comfortable space for pedestrians. The width of sidewalks is dependent upon the roadside environment, volume of pedestrians, and the presence of businesses, schools, parks, and other pedestrian attractors. The minimum width for sidewalks is covered in ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilties Facilities*** and Section C.7.d of this chapter. To ensure compliance with federal and state accessibility requirements:, sidewalk design shall meet the following criteria:

Minimum clear width - 36 inches[1, 2]
Maximum cross slope - 2.0%
Maximum slope 1:20[3]

- [1] Sidewalks less than 60 inches wide must have passing spaces of at least 60 inches by 60 inches, at intervals not to exceed 200 feet.
- [2] The minimum clear width may be reduced to 32 inches for a short distance. This distance must be less than 24 inches long, and separated by 5-foot long sections with 4836 inches of clear width.
- [3] Sidewalks not constrained within the roadway right of way with slopes greater than 1:20 are considered ramps and must be designed as such.

Sidewalks 5 feet wide or wider will provide for two adults to walk comfortably side by side.

C.10.a.4 Curb Ramps

In areas with sidewalks, curb ramps must be incorporated at locations where crosswalks adjoin the sidewalks. The basic curb ramp type and design application depends on the geometric characteristics of the intersection or other crossing location.

Typical curb ramp width shall be a minimum of 43 feet with 1:102 curb transitions on each side when pedestrians must walk across the ramp[KM43][KM44][KM45]. Ramp slopes shall not exceed 1:102 and shall have a firm, stable, slip resistant surface texture. Ramp widths equal

Draft

to crosswalk widths are encouraged.

Curb ramps at marked crossings shall be wholly contained within the crosswalk markings excluding any flared sides.

If diagonal ramps must be used, any returned curbs or other well-defined edges shall be parallel to the pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have 48-inch minimum clear space within the crosswalk. Curb ramps whose sides have returned curbs provide useful directional cues where they are aligned with the pedestrian street crossing and are protected from cross travel by landscaping or street, street furniture, or railings.If diagonal curb ramps have flared sides, they shall also have at least a 24-inch long segment of straight curb located on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing.

It is important for to visually impaired persons using the sidewalk that the location of the ramps be as uniform as possible. Detectable warnings are required at all curb ramps and flush transitions where sidewalks or shared use paths meet a roadway. A contrasting surface texture should be used. On sections without curb and gutter, a contrasting surface texture should be used on the approach to crosswalks.

The Department's ***Design Standards, Index 304***, provides additional information on the design of accessible sidewalks and shared use paths.which addresses the design of curb ramps, may be considered. Designers should keep in mind there are many variables involved, possibly requiringmaking each street intersection to have a unique designspecial problem. For this reason, standard guidelines will not fit all situations and cannot replace the need for the use of sound engineering judgment in the design of curb ramps.

Two ramps per corner are preferred to minimize the problems with entry angle and to decrease the delay to people in wheel chairs or visually impaired pedestrians entering and exiting the roadway.

Draft

C.10.a.5 Additional Considerations

For additional information on pedestrian facilities design, including physical separation from the roadway, over- and underpasses, pedestrian crossings, traffic control, sight distance and lighting, refer to ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities***.

C.10.b Bicycle Facilities

Provisions for bicycle traffic should be incorporated into the street ororiginal highway design. All new roadways and major corridor improvements, except limited access highways, should be designed and constructed under the assumption they will be used by bicyclists. Roadway conditions should be favorable for bicycling. This includes appropriate safe drainage grates, pavement markings, and railroad crossings, smooth pavements, and signals responsive to bicycles. In addition, facilities such as bicycle lanes, bicycle routes, shared use paths, and paved shoulder improvements, should be included to the fullest extent feasible. All flush shoulderrural arterial and collector roadway ssections should be given consideration for the construction of 4-foot or 5-foot paved shoulders. In addition, all curb and gutterurban arterial and collector sections should be given consideration for designated 4-foot bicycleke lanes.

For additional information on bicycle facilities design and the design of shared use paths, refer to ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***.

C.10.c Bridge Design Loadings

The minimum design loading for all new and reconstructed bridges shall be in accordance with ***Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures***.

C.10.d Dead End Streets and Cul-de-Ssacs

The end of a dead end street should permit travel return with a turn around area, considering backing movements, which will accommodate single truck or transit vehicles without encroachment upon private property. Recommended treatment for dead end streets and cul-de-sacs is given in ***Figure 5-1 Types of Cul-de-Sacs and Dead-End Streets****Exhibit 5-8* of ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (-"***

Draft

- AASHTO, 2011)01.

C.10.e Bus Benches and Transit Shelters

Due to the length of exposure and discomfort from traffic, Bbus benches should be set back at least 10 feet from the travel lane in curbed sections with a design speed of 45 mph or less, and outside the clear zone (Table 3 - 13Table 3 - 153) in flush shoulder non curbed sectionsshoulder sections.

Any bus bench or transit shelter located adjacent to a sidewalk within the right of way of any street or highwayroad on the State Highway or County Road System shall be located so as to leave at least 4836[KM46] inches of clearance for pedestrians and persons in wheelchairs. An additional one foot of clearance is required when any side of of the sidewalk is adjacent to a curb or barrier. Such clearance shall be measured in a direction perpendicular to the centerline of the road. A separate bench pad or sidewalk flareout that provides a 30 inch wide by 48 inch deep wheelchair space adjacent to the bench shall be provided. Transit shelters should be set back, rather than eliminated during roadway widening.

AdditonalAdditional information on the design of transit facilities is found in ***Chapter 13 – Public Transit*** and ***Rule Chapter 14-20.003, Florida Administrative Code*** and ***Rule Chapter 14-20.0032, .F.A.C.***

C.10.f Traffic Calming

Often there are community concerns with controlling travel speeds impacting the safety of a street or highwaycorridor such as in areas of concentrated pedestrian activities, those with narrow right of way, areas with numerous access points, on street parking, and other similar concerns. Local authorities may elect to use traffic calming design features that could include, but not be limited to, the installation of speed humps, speed tables, chicanes, or other pavement undulations. Roundabouts are also another method of dealing with this issue at intersections. For additional details and traffic calming treatments, refer to ***Chapter 15 – Traffic Calming***.

Draft

C.11 Reconstruction

C.11.a Introduction

The reconstruction (improvement or upgrading) of existing facilities may generate equal or greater safety benefits than similar expenditures for the construction of new streets and highways. Modifications to increase capacity should be evaluated for the potential effect on the highway safety characteristics. The long-range objectives should be to bring the existing network into compliance with current standards.

C.11.b Evaluation of Streets and Highways

The evaluation of the safety characteristics of streets and highways should be directed towards the identification of undesirable features on the existing system. Particular effort should be exerted to identify the location and nature of features with a high crash potential. Methods for identifying and evaluating hazards include the following:

- Identification of any geometric design feature not in compliance with minimum or desirable standards. This could be accomplished through a systematic survey and evaluation of existing facilities.
- Review of conflict points along a corridor.
- Information from maintenance or other personnel.
- Review of crash reports and traffic counts to identify locations with a large number of crashes or a high crash rate.
- Review for expected pedestrian and bicycle needs.

C.11.c Priorities

A large percentage of street and highway reconstruction and improvements is directed toward increasing efficiency and capacity. The program of reconstruction should be based, to a large extent, upon priorities for the improvement of safety characteristics.

The priorities for safety improvements should be based on the objective of obtaining the maximum reduction in crash potential for a given expenditure of funds. Elimination of conditions that may result in serious or fatal crashes should receive the highest priority in the schedule for reconstruction.

Draft

Specific high priority problem areas that should be corrected by reconstruction include the following:

- Obstructions to sight distance which can be economically corrected. The removal of buildings, parked vehicles, vegetation, large poles or groups of poles that significantly reduce the field of vision, and signs to improve sight distance on curves and particularly at intersections, can be of immense benefit in reducing crashes. The purchase of required line of sight easements is often a wise expenditure of highway funds. The establishment of sight distance setback lines is encouraged.
- Roadside and median hazards which can often be removed or relocated farther from the traveled way. Where removal is not feasible, objects should be shielded by redirection or energy absorbing devices. The reduction of the roadside hazard problem generally provides a good return on the safety dollar. Details and priorities for roadside hazard reduction, which are presented in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***, should be incorporated into the overall priorities of the reconstruction program.
- Poor pavement surfaces which have become hazardous should be maintained or reconstructed in accordance with the design criteria set forth in ***Chapter 5 - Pavement Design And Construction***, and ***Chapter 10 – Maintenance And Resurfacing***.
- Specific design features which could be applied during reconstruction to enhance the operations and safety characteristics of a roadway include the following:
    - Addition of ~~roadway~~ lighting.
    - ~~The provision of f~~Frontage roads~~. of other alternate paths. This~~ may be utilized to improve the efficiency and safety of streets and highways with poor control of access.
    - Widening of pavements and shoulders. This is often an economically feasible method of increasing capacity and reducing traffic hazards. Provision of median barriers (***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***) can also produce significant safety benefits.
    - The removal, streamlining, or modification of drainage structures.

Draft

- Alignment modifications are usually extensive and require extensive reconstruction of the roadway. Removal of isolated sharp curves is a reasonable and logical step in alignment modification. If major realignment is to be undertaken, every effort should be made to bring the entire facility into compliance with the requirements for new construction.
- The use of traffic control devices. This is generally an inexpensive method of alleviating certain highway defects.
- Median opening modifications.
- Addition of median, channelized islands, and mid-block pedestrian crossings.
- Auxiliary lanes.
- Existing bridges that fail to meet current design standards which are available to bicycle traffic, should be retrofitted on an interim basis as follows: As a general practice, bridges 125 feet in length or longer, bridges with unusual sight problem, steep gradients (which require the cyclist longer time to clear the span) or other unusual conditions should display the standard W11-1 caution sign with an added sign "On Bridge" at either end of the structure. Special care should be given to the right most portion of the roadway, where bicyclists are expected to travel, assuring smoothness, pavement uniformity, and freedom from longitudinal joints, and to ensure cleanliness. Failure to do so forces bicyclists farther into the center portion of the bridge, reducing traffic flow and safety.
- Addition of bicycle facilities.~~ke accommodations designated or undesignated.~~
- Addition of transit facilities, sidewalks, crosswalks, and other pedestrian features.

C.12 Design Exceptions

See ***Chapter 14 - Design Exceptions*** for the process to use when the standard criteria found in this Manual cannot be met.

Draft

C.13 Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400)

Where criteria is not specifically provided in this section, the design guidelines presented in Chapter 4 of the ***AASHTO Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400), 1st Edition (2001)*** may be used in lieu of the policies in Chapter 5 of the ***A PASHTO Policolicyy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)***. See Table 3-10 for lane widths for very low volume roads.

C.13.a Bridge Width

Bridges are considered functionally obsolete when the combination of ADT and bridge width is used in the National Bridge Inventory Item 68 for Deck Geometry to give a rating of 3 or less. To accommodate future traffic and prevent new bridges from being classified as functionally obsolete, the minimum roadway width for new two lane bridges on very low-volume roads with 20 year ADT between 100 and 400 vehicles/day shall be a minimum of 22 feet. If the entire roadway width (traveled way plus shoulders) is paved to a width greater than 22 feet, the bridge width should be equal to the total roadway width. If significant ADT increases are projected beyond twenty years, a bridge width of 28 feet should be considered. One-lane bridges may be provided on single-lane roads and on two-lane roads with ADT less than 100 vehicles/day where a one-lane bridge can operate effectively. The roadway width of a one-lane bridge shall be 15 ft. One-lane bridges should have pull-offs visible from opposite ends of the bridge where drivers can wait for traffic on the bridge to clear.

C.13.b Roadside Design

Bridge traffic barriers on very low-volume roads must have been successfully crash tested to a Test Level 2 (minimum) in accordance with ***NCHRP Report 350*** or ***Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH)***.

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 4

ROADSIDE DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION 4-1

B POLICY 4-1

C OBJECTIVES 4-2

D ROADSIDE DESIGN 4-3
- D.1 Geometric Changes 4-3
  - D.1.a Horizontal Curves 4-3
  - D.1.b Vertical Curves 4-4
  - D.1.c Changes in Cross Section 4-4
  - D.1.d Decision or Conflict Points 4-4
- D.2 Fills 4-4
- D.3 Cuts 4-5
- D.4 Roadside Canals 4-5
- D.5 Vegetation 4-6
  - D.5.a Stability 4-6
  - D.5.b Drainage 4-6
  - D.5.c Environmental and Aesthetic Considerations 4-6
  - D.5.d Landscaping - Design Considerations 4-7
- D.6 Drainage 4-7
  - D.6.a Inlets 4-7
  - D.6.b Ditches 4-7
  - D.6.c Culverts 4-8
- D.7 Curbs 4-8
- D.8 Poles and Support Structures 4-9
- D.9 Intersections 4-10
- D.10 Underpasses 4-10
- D.11 Bridges and Overpasses 4-10
- D.12 Mailboxes 4-11
- D.13 Bus Shelters 4-11

Draft

E PROTECTIVE DEVICES 4-12
E.1 Redirection Devices 4-12
E.1.a Function 4-12
E.1.b Warranting Conditions 4-12
E.1.c Location 4-13
E.1.d Length 4-13
E.1.e Vehicle Containment 4-13
E.1.f Barrier Types 4-13
E.1.g Transitions 4-14
E.1.h Terminations 4-14
E.2 Energy Absorbing Devices 4-15
E.2.a Function 4-15
E.2.b Warranting Conditions 4-15
E.2.c Design Criteria 4-15
E.2.d Design Details 4-16

F REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 4-17

~~A INTRODUCTION ..... 4-1~~

~~B POLICY. ..... 4-1~~

~~C OBJECTIVES ..... 4-2~~

~~D ROADSIDE DESIGN ..... 4-3~~
~~D.1 Geometric Changes ..... 4-3~~
~~D.1.a Horizontal Curves ..... 4-3~~
~~D.1.b Vertical Curves ..... 4-4~~
~~D.1.c Changes in Cross Section ..... 4-4~~
~~D.1.d Decision or Conflict Points ..... 4-4~~
~~D.2 Fills ..... 4-4~~
~~D.3 Cuts ..... 4-4~~
~~D.4 Roadside Canals ..... 4-5~~
~~D.5 Vegetation ..... 4-5~~
~~D.5.a Stability ..... 4-5~~
~~D.5.b Drainage ..... 4-5~~

Draft

~~D.5.c Environmental and Aesthetic Considerations 4-6~~
~~D.5.d Landscaping - Design Considerations 4-6~~
~~D.6 Drainage 4-6~~
~~D.6.a Inlets 4-7~~
~~D.6.b Ditches 4-7~~
~~D.6.c Culverts 4-8~~
~~D.7 Curbs 4-8~~
~~D.8 Poles and Support Structures 4-9~~
~~D.9 Intersections 4-10~~
~~D.10 Underpasses 4-10~~
~~D.11 Bridges and Overpasses 4-10~~
~~D.12 Mailboxes 4-11~~
~~D.13 Bus Shelters 4-11~~

~~E PROTECTIVE DEVICES 4-12~~
~~E.1 Redirection Devices 4-12~~
~~E.1.a Function 4-12~~
~~E.1.b Warranting Conditions 4-12~~
~~E.1.c Location 4-13~~
~~E.1.d Length 4-13~~
~~E.1.e Vehicle Containment 4-13~~
~~E.1.f Barrier Types 4-13~~
~~E.1.g Transitions 4-14~~
~~E.1.h Terminations 4-14~~
~~E.2 Energy Absorbing Devices 4-14~~
~~E.2.a Function 4-14~~
~~E.2.b Warranting Conditions 4-15~~
~~E.2.c Design Criteria 4-15~~
~~E.2.d Design Details 4-15~~

~~E REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 4-17~~

Draft

CHAPTER 4

ROADSIDE DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION

This chapter presents guidelines and standards for roadside designs intended to reduce the likelihood and/or consequences of roadside crashes. Construction and maintenance of safe medians and roadsides are of vital importance in the development of safe streets and highways.

Many of the standards presented in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design*** are predicated to a large extent upon reducing the probability of vehicles leaving the proper travel path. Other standards in that chapter are directed toward a reduction in the likelihood and/or consequences of crashes by vehicles leaving the roadway. These standards contain requirements for the design of shoulders, medians, and roadsides including requirements for the use of guardrail and longitudinal barriers. Design of the roadside should be considered and conducted as an integral part of the total highway design.

Due to the variety of causative factors, the designer should consider a vehicle leaving the traveled way at any location. Design of the roadside should be based upon reducing the consequences to errant vehicles and their occupants.

B POLICY

The roadside, which includes the median, shall be considered as the total environment adjacent to the roadway. The design of the roadside shall be considered as an integral part of the total highway design.

Draft

C OBJECTIVES

General objectives to be followed in roadside design are to provide an environment that will reduce the likelihood and/or consequences of crashes by vehicles that have left the traveled way. The achievement of this general objective will be aided by the following:

- Roadside areas adequate to allow reasonable space and time for a driver to regain or retain control of the vehicle and stop or return to the traveled way safely.
- Shoulders, medians, and roadsides that may be traversed safely without vehicle vaulting or overturning.
- Location of roadside fixed objects and hazards as far from the travel lane as is economically feasible.
- Roadsides that~~, in addition to being safe, appears safe to the driver to encourage use of the roadside for~~ accommodate necessary maintenance vehicles, emergency maneuvers and ~~for~~ emergency parking.
- Protection of pedestrians, workers, or other persons subjected to the hazard of ~~out-of-control~~ errant vehicles.
- Adequate protective devices (where hazards are unavoidable) compatible with vehicle speeds and other design variables.

Draft

D ROADSIDE DESIGN

The basic requirements and standards for the design of shoulders, medians, and roadsides are given in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***. This includes specific requirements regarding widths, slopes, and changes in grade. General requirements for drainage facilities, utilities, transit, and pedestrian facilities are also included.

This chapter contains general guidelines for particular situations encountered in roadside design due to the variety and complexity of possible situations encountered. The designer should utilize the following as basic guidelines to develop a safe roadside design.

Prior to any other consideration, the designer should attempt to:

1. Eliminate the hazard;
    a. Remove the hazard,
    b. Relocate the hazard outside of the clear zone,
    c. Make the hazard traversable or crashworthy.
2. Shield the hazard with a longitudinal barrier or crash cushion.
3. Leave the hazard unshielded. This treatment is taken only when the barrier or crash cushion is more hazardous than the hazard.

The AASHTO Roadside Safety Analysisssessment Program (RSAP) is the recommended tool for evaluating the cost effectiveness of shielding roadside hazards.

D.1 Geometric Changes

D.1.a Horizontal Curves

On horizontal curves, consideration should be given to increasing the clear zone above the minimum requirements due to the increased likelihood of vehicles leaving the traveled way. Increasing clear zone widths and decreasing roadside slopes on curves is also important since a vehicle will probably leave the traveled way at a steeper exit angle. Increasing clear zone widths on curves is also beneficial in improving the available sight distance. Proper signage should be part of every roadside design. For proper signage to inform drivers of approaching curves, refer to the

Draft

MUTCDChapter 18, "Signing and Marking", MUTCD.

D.1.b Vertical Curves

As a vehicle comes over athe crest of a vertical curve, the driver may suddenly be presented with a situation requiring an emergency maneuver. The provision of adequate clear zones is particularly important where available stopping sight distance may not be adequate or where driver expectancy may be violated. High traffic volumes are high (i.e., urban areas) may result in rapidly forming since traffic queuesmay form rapidly, thus tending to cause rear-end collisions. Vertical curves with inadequate stopping sight distance may be mitigated with appropriate advanced signage and other warning devices, or can be reconstructed.

D.1.c Changes in Cross Section

The provision of adequate clear zone is very important at exits, entrances, lane drops, or other changes in the roadway cross section. The exterior boundaries of the clear zone should extend well beyond any reductions in roadway width and then gradually reduce to provide design width for the new roadway cross section.

D.1.d Decision or Conflict Points

Adequate clear zones should be provided at any point of traffic merging or conflicts, and at locations where the driver is confronted with making a decision regarding vehicle maneuvers.

D.2 Fills

Many roadways, for drainage purposes, are elevated somewhat above the surrounding terrain. Where feasible, the side slopes should not exceed a ratio of 1:4. On flatter slopes (1:6 or greater), care should be exercised to eliminate sharp changes in grade or other discontinuities.

If the side slope is steeper than 1:3, guardrail or another longitudinal barriers should be considered.

Draft

D.3 Cuts

A primary objective of roadside design in cut sections is to prevent conditions tending to cause rollovers or serious collisions with the cut slopes. When the material (soils) in the cut is smooth and stable, the use of an increasing backslope is a reasonable solution. The technique is also acceptable in stable rock cuts, provided that smooth fill material is utilized to affect the backslope.

The use of a rigid barrier incorporated into the cut slope is also satisfactory for rock slopes. Where the material in the cut is irregular or unstable, a ~~guardrail or other~~ longitudinal barrier offset~~ out~~ from the cut face should be utilized. ~~Placing the barrier away from the slope is necessary to prevent rocks or other materials from falling onto the roadsides.~~

D.4 Roadside Canals

Roadside canals or other bodies of water close to the roadway should be eliminated wherever feasible. A canal is defined as an open ditch parallel to the roadway for a minimum distance of 1000 ft. and with a seasonal water depth in excess of 3 ft. for extended periods of time (24 hours or more).

Where roadside bodies of water (with seasonal water depth in excess of 3 feet for 24 hours or longer) lie within the roadside clear zone, they shall be shielded using guardrail or another longitudinal barrier.

For rural and urban flush shoulder highways, the distance from the outside edge of the through travel lane to the top of the canal side slope nearest the road will be no less than 60 ft. for highways with design speeds of 50 mph or greater. For highways with design speeds less than 50 mph this minimum distance shall not be less than 50 ft. for rural and urban flush shoulder highways or 40 ft. for urban curb or curb and gutter highways. When new canal or roadway alignment is required, distances greater than those above should be provided, if possible, to accommodate possible future improvements to the roadway (widening, etc.). If the minimum standards for canal hazards cannot be met, then shielding should be considered.

~~Due to the nature of the hazard, evenzone,should shieldingThe decision to shield a canal should include an objective assessment of risk of shielding the canal to the unshielded condition. This is due to the fact that barriers are also hazards and, thus, have associated long term crash costs in addition to construction and maintenance costs.~~ The RSAP is the recommended tool for evaluating the cost

Draft

effectiveness of shielding roadside hazards.

D.5 Vegetation

The proper use of natural vegetation can provide valuable and economical assistance in developing aesthetic and ~~safe~~ traversable roadsides.

D.5.a Stability

The use of grass or other easily maintained, low-growing vegetation may be used on medians and roadsides. This vegetation should be carefully maintained so vehicles can safely traverse those areas.

D.5.b Drainage

Drainage swales may be protected from hazardous scouring (alteration of safe ditch contour) by the appropriate vegetation. Grass, vines, or other plants can be beneficial in stabilizing embankments to prevent erosion of material onto adjacent roadways. The appropriate use of grass or shrubbery can also aid in retarding runoff in the vicinity of the roadway, thus benefiting the overall drainage pattern.

~~D.5.c Crash Cushions~~

~~Native shrubbery may also be used as an effective natural barrier or crash cushion at the outer edge of the clear roadsides. Care should be taken to use shrubbery or other vegetation that would slow an out-of-control vehicle without excessive deceleration. Vegetation that would develop large trunks or branches should be avoided.~~

D.5.c~~d~~ Environmental and Aesthetic Considerations

The use of natural grass and shrubbery for borders along roadways provides an important environmental asset. This border serves as a preserved green belt that minimizes the adverse impact (dirt, noise, etc.) of a street or highway. The use of a wide, gently flowing grassed roadside of varying width is generally an aesthetically pleasing ~~solution to safe roadside~~ design.

Draft

D.5.d~~e~~ Landscaping - Design Considerations

The Department's ***Design Standards (Index Numbers 544 - Landscape Installations, and 546 - Sight Distance at Intersections)***, contain information on landscaping~~,~~ that may be considered. ***Index 544*** provides landscape installation details.~~,~~ The Department also produces the "Florida Highway Landscaping Guide" which is an excellent landscaping information source.~~and~~

Standard Index 546 provides information on landscaping in vicinities of conventional intersections. For roundabout landscape guidelines and related sight line requirements, refer to ***NCHRP 672 "Roundabouts: An Informational Guide***."~~The Department also produces the "Florida Highway Landscaping Guide" which is an excellent landscaping information source.~~

D.6 Drainage

Proper drainage of the pavement, shoulders, median, and roadsides is important for maintaining a safe street or highway. Techniques utilized for providing drainage should result in safe vehicle operation on or off the roadway.

D.6.a Inlets

Drainage inlets should not be placed in a bus bay, travel, or bike lane and should not be placed in a shoulder, except at the exterior edge, when drainage restrictions are severe. Drainage inlets within the median or roadside(s) shall be traversable. A small area around the inlet should be paved to improve drainage and to prevent localized erosion. Corner radii inlets should be avoided as they hinder pedestrians, create ponding, create maintenance problems, and complicate intersection design.

D.6.b Ditches

Drainage ditches perpendicular to the roadway should not be used within the median or roadsides. All drainage ditches within the median or roadsides shall meet the requirements for slopes and changes in grade given in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***.

Draft

D.6.c Culverts

Where culverts are unavoidable at intersections, the entrance and exit should be flush with the adjacent ground or located beyond the clear zone. The slope and changes in grade at the structure should conform to minimum requirements for roadsides. Culvert terminations at median crossovers should be constructed in a similar fashion.

Where culverts are required perpendicular to the roadway, they should be extended to the roadsides as a minimum. Headwalls at the culvert terminations (within the clear zone) should not protrude above the ground surface in excess of 4 inches. Sloping entrances and exits generally flush with side slopes should be used wherever possible (even outside the clear zone). Proper ground contouring of the roadside approach can provide a relatively smooth surface that can be traversed with reasonable safety by an out-of-control errant vehicle.

Cross drains and side drains within the clear zone should be equipped with mitered end sections. ***FDOT Standard Index Series 200*** provides requirements for the proper use of flared and mitered end sections.

D.7 Curbs

The basic criteria for prohibiting or permitting the use of curbs are given in Chapter 3 - Geometric Design. Curbs serve any or all of the following purposes: drainage control, roadway edge delineation, right of way reduction, aesthetics, delineation of pedestrian walkways, reduction of maintenance operations, and assistance in orderly roadside development.

Curbs should not be used along freeways or other high-speed arterials, but if a curb is needed, it should not be located closer to the traveled way than the outer edge of the shoulder. In addition, sloping end treatments should be provided.

Draft

D.8 Poles and Support Structures

The location and design of poles or support structures for signs, signals, lighting, or other purposes is an important aspect of safe roadside design. All poles and support structures should be located outside the required clear zone when practical unless their supports are of the frangible or breakaway type. Non-breakaway poles and sign support structures may be located behind a barrier that is present for another reason. For proper offset from rigid obstacles to barriers, see section "E" of this chapter. ~~When practical, poles and sign supports should be located behind existing barriers.~~

The function of a breakaway support is to minimize the vehicle deceleration and the probability of injury to vehicle occupants. The design of the support should also be adequate to prevent portions of the structure from penetrating the vehicle interior.

Small signs should be designed to bend over flush with the ground upon impact. Larger signs should be designed with multiple posts with slip joints at the base and a weakened section and fuse plate intended to act as a hinge at the bottom of the sign.

Utility poles and structures not related to highway operations, should be located outside the clear zone and as close as practical to the edge of right of way, without aerial encroachment, and without violating National Electric Safety Code (NESC) clearances. New utility poles not placed at the edge of the right of way, and falling within the limits of the clear zone dimensions defined in Table 3-12 should be approved through the exception process prescribed in ***Chapter 14 - Design Exceptions***. Placement within sidewalk shall be such that a minimum unobstructed sidewalk width of 32" is provided.

In accordance with ***Section 337.403, Florida Statutes***, existing utility poles must be relocated when ***unreasonably*** interfering with the "convenient, safe, or continuous use, or the maintenance, improvement, extension, or expansion" of public roads. Utility poles adjacent to road improvement projects, but not directly interfering with construction, ~~within the limits of the Control Zones depicted in The Department's January 1999 Utility Accommodation Manual (Rule 14-46.001), Exhibit H~~ should be considered for relocation, to the extent they can be relocated, to achieve the clear zone requirements of Table 3-12. Utility poles that cannot be relocated and will remain within the ~~limits of a Control Zone~~ clear zone, should be approved through the exception process prescribed in ***Chapter 14 - Design***

Draft

Exceptions.

D.9 Intersections

All poles or other structures not absolutely essential should not be located in the vicinity of the intersection. When joint use agreements can be arranged, the various governmental agencies, transit authorities, and utilities should consider the use of joint purpose single poles as a replacement for all poles or structures serving a single purpose. Light poles, traffic signal supports and boxes, transit stop signs, and all other street furniture should be moved back as far as is practical from the boundary of the roadsides.

Energy absorbing devices should be considered for protection of lighting and traffic signal supports located within the roadsides.

D.10 Underpasses

The full median and roadside should be carried through underpasses without interruption. Where it is not feasible to eliminate the supports, guardrail or another longitudinal barrier should be used. The barrier may be a rigid barrier incorporated into the support columns or a guardrail set out from the supports. The barrier should be extended well beyond the supports.

D.11 Bridges and Overpasses

The required horizontal clearance lateral offset (***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***) should be maintained on all bridges, overpasses, or other elevated roadways. The full roadway cross section, including shoulders, should be carried across without interruption. Bridge railings should be designed and constructed in compliance with the requirements for redirection barriers. Particular emphasis should be placed on the prevention of structural failure and vaulting of the railing by errant vehicles.

On all high speed roadways (design speed 50 mph or greater), the bridge railing or other barriers should be extended sufficiently (and properly terminated) to prevent vehicles from passing behind the barrier and entering the hazardous location. The transition between the bridge railing and the approach barrier should be smooth and continuous. Barrier curbs should not be placed in front of bridge railings or other barriers. Pedestrian facilities should be placed outside of the

Draft

bridge railing or longitudinal barrier on all high speed roadways.

It is desirable that twin bridges for nominal width median divided highways be filled in the dividing area, carrying the median across the bridge without interruption. The gore area between diverging elevated roadways should be bridged over for a sufficient distance to allow for the placement of any energy absorbing devices. If twin bridges are used, the median layout should conform to ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***.

See ***Chapter 17 – Bridges a And Other Structures*** for additional requirements for bridges and bridge railings.

D.12 Mailboxes

Guidelines for the location of mailboxes, type of support and turnout construction, given in the Department's ***Design Standards, Index 532 - Mailboxes*** or ***AASHTO - "A Guide for Erecting Mailboxes on Highways"***, should be considered.

D.13 Bus Shelters

Bus shelters should be moved back as far as practical from the roadside with pedestrian access to the bus stop boarding and alighting area pad at the roadside. Proper marking by color and surface texture is essential for convenience and safety of pedestrians.

Draft

E PROTECTIVE DEVICES

Protective devices for roadside design may be considered as highway appurtenances safety features intended to reduce the severity of run-off-the-road crashes. In those situations where the minimum safety standards for median and roadside are not feasible, protective devices should be considered. Longitudnal barriers Guardrail and crash cushions should not be used indiscriminately, for at least two reasons: they are expensive to install and maintain, and they are closer to the road than the objects obstacles they are shielding. They are involved in more crashes than unshielded objects. They should be used only when they are warranted by the reduction in crash severity.

Refer to the ***Florida DOT Plans Preparation Manual, Chapter 4 "Roadside Safety"*** for additional information on roadside and median barriers and crash cushions.

E.1 Redirection Devices

Redirection devices are longitudinal barriers, (rigid or flexible) such as guardrails, median barriers, and bridge railings placed parallel to the roadway to contain and redirect out-of-control errant vehicles.

E.1.a Function

The primary function of a longitudinal barrier is to redirect an errant vehicle away from hazardous roadside situationsobstacles. The barrier should be designed to produce a minimum of deceleration adverse impacts (lateral and longitudinal) to a vehicle.

E.1.b Warranting Conditions

Warranting conditions for the use of longitudinal barriers are essentially those conditions in which the overall probability of injuries and fatalities would be reduced by the use of these redirection devices. ***AASHTO's Roadside Design Guide*** contains warrants related to roadside barrier selection and placement.

Draft

E.1.c Location

Ideally, the barrier should be located to minimize the likelihood of being struck by an errant vehicle. The barrier should be located outside the normal shoulder width. The location and orientation of the barrier should also be selected to minimize the angle of impact and the resulting vehicle deceleration.

Flexible barriers should be set out Barriers shallmust be offset from rigid objects obstacles or other hazards a sufficient distance so the barrier may deflect without interference. Reasonable deflections for guardrails with strong posts are approximately 2 to 45 feet. Weak post/strong post rail barriers and cable systems may deflect considerably more. The location of the barrier should be selected in close coordination with the design of its deflection characteristics.

E.1.d Length

The length of a longitudinal barrier should be sufficient to prevent a vehicle, traveling in either direction, from passing behind the barrier and striking the hazard being guarded shielded.

E.1.e Vehicle Containment

Longitudinal barriers should have sufficient strength to prevent a vehicle from breaking through penetrating the barrier. Structural continuity and smoothness is also required to prevent rapid deceleration or penetration of the vehicle by any of the barrier components. The shape and height of the barrier should be adequate to deter overturning or vaulting of the vehicle. The surface in front of the barrier should be approximately perpendicular to the barrier and should be free from barrier curbs or other discontinuities.

E.1.f Barrier Types

Longitudinal Bbarriers may be generally classified as rigid or flexible. The recommended barriers in the following sections are intended as general guidelines only. As new types of barriers are developed and tested successfully, they may be incorporated into roadside design. They should, however, conform with the requirements previously established.

Draft

- Rigid Barrier - Rigid barriers are generally less effective in controlling lateral vehicle deceleration at locations subject to high-angle impacts. The use of this barrier is recommended for bridge railings and for use at retaining walls, rock cuts, or other rigid hazards where space limitations are severe constrained.
- Flexible Barrier - Barriers which yield somewhat on impact are often more useful in limiting the rate of vehicle deceleration. Special care should be exercised to ensure they are structurally adequate and they maintain a smooth continuous surface.

  This type of barrier can be expected to deflect 2 to 45 feet under impact. The post spacing may be increased when a stiffer rail is utilized. The weak post barrier and the cable barrier can be expected to deflect 8 to 12 feet or more and should be limited to locations with adequate clear space.

E.1.g Transitions

Changes in barrier types should be kept to a minimum. Transitions between two types of barriers should be smooth and continuous with no protruding components that could snag or penetrate a vehicle striking the barrier from either direction of travel. The transition from a flexible to a rigid barrier should be stiffened gradually to prevent "pocketing" of an errant vehicle.

E.1.h Terminations

Barrier terminations or interruptions should be kept to a minimum. The barrier termination should be designed to allow for a reasonably safe traversal by a vehicle traveling in either direction.

Roadside guardrails should be flared away from the roadway. The use of energy absorbing devices as the termination of the longitudinal barrier is an effective and acceptable procedure for both roadsides and medians.

Draft

E.2 Energy Absorbing Devices

E.2.a Function

The primary function of an energy absorbing device or crash cushion is to limit the deceleration rate of a vehicle is to reduce the severity of impacts with fixed objects. These are utilized at locations where impact with the roadside object obstacle would produce a greater deceleration rate. The deceleration rate is controlled by providing a cushion which deforms over a large distance and absorbs energy while bringing the vehicle gradually to a stop.

E.2.b Warranting Conditions

Crash cushions (or other protective devices) are used for the protection of occupants of an out-of-control errant vehicle which might strike objects obstacles within the median or roadside that would produce serious excessive vehicle deceleration.

Other locations or situations that should be considered for crash cushions include:

- Gore areas on elevated roadways
- Intersections
- Barrier terminations
- Bridge abutments and supports
- Retaining walls
- Any other roadside object subject to impact by an errant vehicle

E.2.c Design Criteria

The primary design criteria are the limitation of vehicle deceleration which is a function of the vehicle speed and the total crash cushion deformation.

Draft

The crash cushion should be located as far from the roadway as is practicable to reduce the likelihood of impact. Special care should be exercised in the design to reduce the probability of a vehicle overturning or vaulting the crash cushion.

E.2.d Design Details

The development and testing of crash cushions are both recent and rapid. The rapidly expanding technology in this field requires the most recent research and experience be utilized in selecting a particular type of crash cushion. ***AASHTOs Roadside Design Guide*** provides guidance for the selection of sacrificial, re-useable and low maintenance crash cushion types.

Draft

FE REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that may be referenced for further guidance:

- ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/

- ***NCHRP Report 672 – Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, Second Edition***
  http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_672.pdf

- ***Section 401, Florida Statutes***
  http://www.leg.state.fl.us/Statutes/index.cfm?App_mode=Display_Statute&Search_String=&URL=0300-0399/0337/Sections/0337.401.html

- ***FDOT Drainage Manual, January 2014***
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/Hydraulics/ManualsandHandbooks.shtm

Draft

CHAPTER 5

PAVEMENT DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

A INTRODUCTION 5-1

B PAVEMENT DESIGN 5-2
- B.1 Pavement Type Selection 5-2
  - B.1.a Unpaved Roadway Material Selection 5-2
- B.2 Structural Design 5-2
- B.3 Skid Resistance 5-3
- B.4 Drainage 5-4
  - B.4.a Unpaved Roadway Drainage 5-4
- B.5 Shoulder Treatment 5-4

C PAVEMENT CONSTRUCTION 5-7

FIGURES

FIGURE 5 – 1 Two Lane Road with Safety Edge 5-5

FIGURE 5 – 2 Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders) 5-6

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 5

PAVEMENT DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

A INTRODUCTION

The function of the pavement or roadway surface is to provide a safe and efficient travel path for vehicles using the street or highway. The pavement should provide a good riding surface with a minimum amount of distraction to the driver. The pavement friction characteristics should be such that adequate longitudinal and lateral forces between the vehicle tires and the pavement can be developed to allow a margin of safety for required vehicle maneuvers. These characteristics should be provided at the highest reasonable level for the expected pavement surface, weather conditions, and the anticipated operational characteristics of the facility. Resurfacing of the existing pavement is discussed and included under ***Chapter 10 - Maintenance And Resurfacing*** of the manual.

In order for the pavement to perform its function properly, the following objectives shall be considered in the design and construction of the pavement:

- Provide sufficient pavement structure and the proper pavement material strength to prevent pavement distress prior to the end of the design period.
- Develop and maintain adequate skid resistance qualities to allow for safe execution of braking, cornering, accelerating, and other vehicle maneuvers.
- Provide drainage to promote quick drying and to reduce the likelihood of hydroplaning and splashing.
- Provide a Safety Edge treatment adjacent to the travel lane on roadways without curb or paved shoulders and with posted speed 45 mph or greater.

Draft

B PAVEMENT DESIGN

B.1 Pavement Type Selection

For new construction and major reconstruction projects, the designer should determine the type of pavement to be constructed utilizing formal analysis of existing and anticipated conditions. High volume roadways where a significant amount of truck traffic (>10%) exists may warrant consideration for special asphalt pavement designs and for rigid pavement designs. The Department has a documented procedure patterned after the 1993 AASHTO Guide for Design of Pavement Structures, Appendix B. This procedure may be found in Department's Pavement Type Selection Manual.

B.1.a Unpaved Roadway Material Selection

The material chosen should be locally available when possible. Frequency of grading and replacement of material from loss due to erosion should be evaluated. A life cycle economic analysis should be performed to determine suitable material type. For example: Un-recycled asphalt pavements (Un-RAP) provide for a suitable all weather material and can be considered for unpaved roads.

The material chosen should exhibit low potential for losses due to wind, traffic and water erosion. EPA's publication AP-42 contains methodology for estimating the dust generation potential for unpaved road surfaces. Proper gradation of the chosen material is critical for its success. Designers should consider flexible or rigid pavements where runoff from unpaved roads may impact surface waters.

Designers may consult with FHWA's publications "Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT < 400), 2001" and "Gravel Roads Maintenance and Design Manual, 2000" for further guidance regarding material selection.

B.2 Structural Design

The pavement shall be designed and constructed so the required surface texture is maintained and its structure retains an adequate level of serviceability for the design period. The strength of the pavement materials shall be sufficient to

Draft

maintain the desired roadway cross section without the formation of ruts or other depressions which would impede drainage. Subgrade strength and subgrade drainage are major factors to be considered in pavement design.

The Department's pavement design manuals are recommended as a guide for both flexible and rigid pavement design. Other design procedures are available including the ***AASHTO Guide for Design of Pavement Structures, 1993***; and procedures which have been developed by the Portland Cement Association, the American Concrete Pavement Association, and the Asphalt Institute. The selection of the design procedure and the development of the design data must be managed by professional personnel competent to make these evaluations.

B.3 Skid Resistance

Pavements shall be designed and constructed so as to maintain adequate skid resistance for as long a period as the available materials, technology, and economic restraints will permit, thus eliminating cost and hazardous maintenance operations.

The results of relevant experience and testing (i.e., tests conducted by the Department's Materials Office) should be used in the selection of aggregate and other materials, the pavement mix design, the method of placement, and the techniques used for finishing the pavement surface. The design mixes should be monitored by continuous field testing during construction. Changes to the design mix or construction procedures must be made by qualified pavement designers and laboratory personnel ONLY.

The use of transverse grooving in concrete pavements frequently improves the wet weather skid resistance and decreases the likelihood of hydroplaning. This technique should be considered for locations requiring frequent vehicle maneuvers (curves, intersections, etc.) or where heavy traffic volumes or high speeds will be encountered. The depth, width, and spacing of the grooves should be such that control of the vehicle is not hindered.

Draft

B.4 Drainage

Adequate drainage of the roadway and shoulder surfaces should be provided. Factors involved in the general pavement drainage pattern include: pavement longitudinal and cross slopes, shoulder slopes and surface texture, curb placement, and the location and design of collection structures. The selection of pavement cross slopes should receive particular attention to achieve the proper balance between drainage requirements and vehicle operating requirements. The use of curbs or other drainage controls adjacent to the roadway surface should be avoided, particularly on high speed facilities. Specific requirements for cross slopes and curb placement are given in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***.

B.4.a Unpaved Roadway Drainage

Properly graded unpaved roadways require less maintenance and suffer less material loss. Designers should strive to provide adequate cross slope, shoulder and swale profiles wherever possible. Typical cross slopes should be 2% with 1.5% minimum. During maintenance grading, the operator should ensure that the shoulder does not become higher than the travel lane edge to prevent ponding of water on the roadway.

Designers may consult with FHWA's publications: ***Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Roads (ADT < 400), 2001*** and "Gravel Roads Maintenance and Design Manual, 2000" for further guidance regarding proper profiles for unpaved roads.

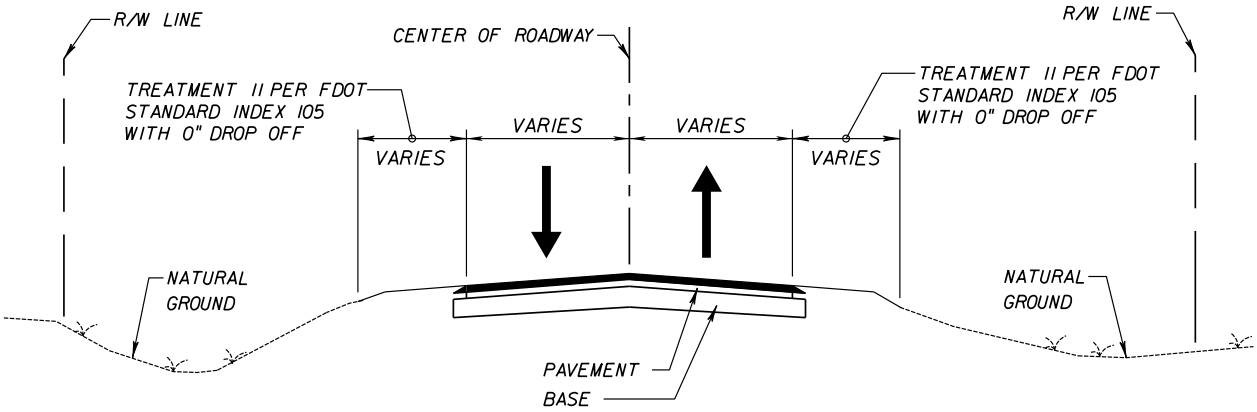
B.5 Shoulder Treatment

The primary function of the shoulder is to provide an alternate travel path for vehicles in an emergency situation. Shoulders should be capable of providing a safe path for vehicles traveling at roadway speed, and should be designed and constructed to provide a firm and uniform surface capable of supporting vehicles in distress. Particular attention shall be given to provide a smooth transition from pavement to shoulder.

Safety Edge is a technology that mitigates vertical drop offs. The Safety Edge provides a higher probability of a vehicle returning safely to the travel lane when it drifts off the pavement. The wedge shape eliminates tire scrubbing and improves vehicle stability as it crosses a drop-off. Details for the Safety Edge are included in Figures 5 - 1 and 5 - 2.

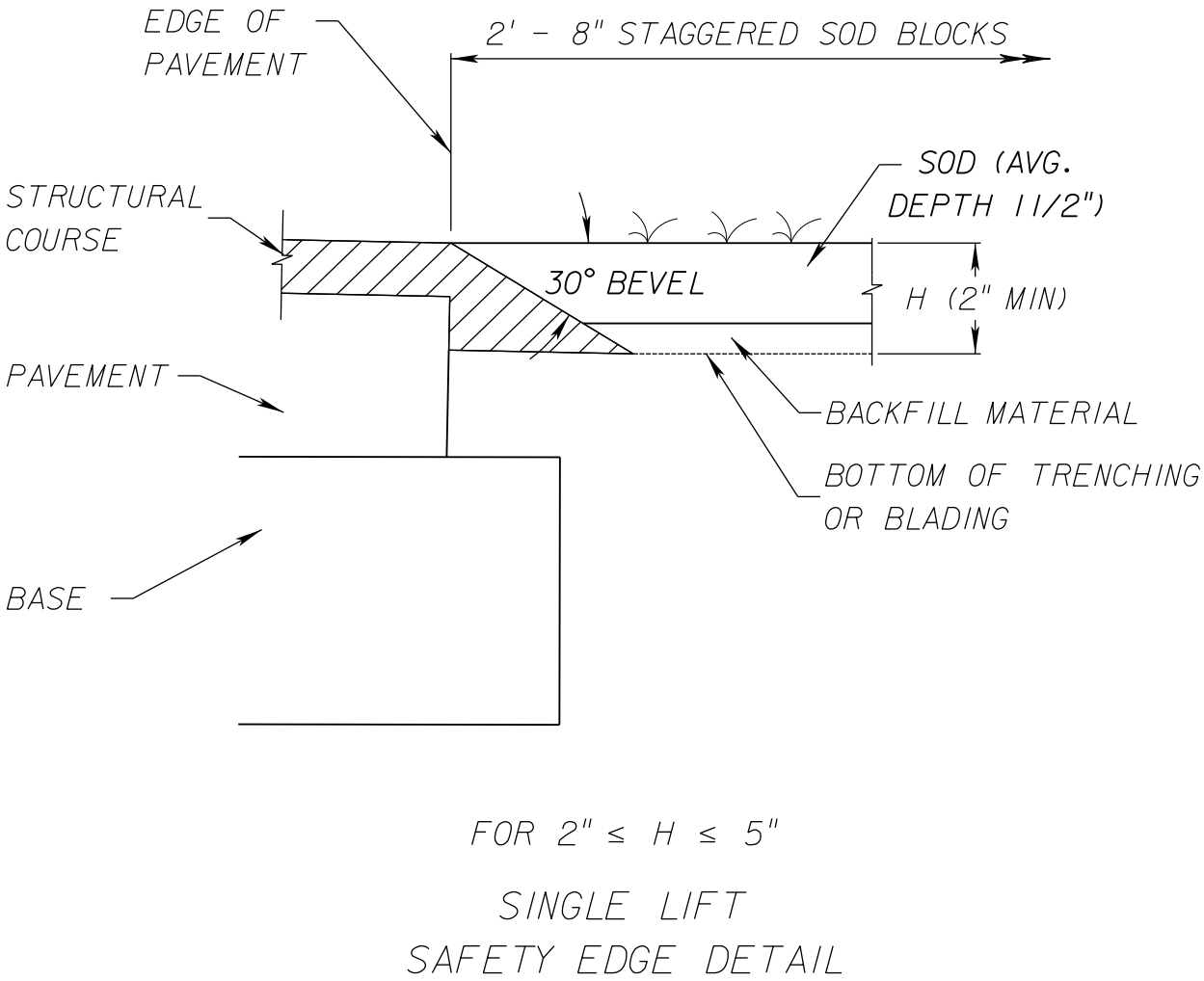
Draft

FIGURE 5 – 1 Two Lane Road with Safety Edge



Draft

FIGURE 5 – 2 Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders)



Shoulder pavement may be provided to improve drainage of the roadway, to serve bicycles, pedestrians and transit users, and to minimize shoulder maintenance.

Draft

C PAVEMENT CONSTRUCTION

A regular program of inspection and evaluation should be conducted to ensure the pavement criteria are satisfied during the construction process. Any regular inspection program should include the following:

- The use of standard test procedures, such as AASHTO and the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
- The use of qualified personnel to perform testing and inspection.
- The use of an independent assurance procedure to validate the program.

After construction, the pavement surface shall be inspected to determine the required surface texture was achieved and the surface has the specified slopes. Spot checking skid resistance by approved methods should be considered. Periodic reinspection should be undertaken in conformance with the guidelines described in ***Chapter 10 – Maintenance And Resurfacing***.

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 6

ROADWAY LIGHTING

A INTRODUCTION 6-1

B OBJECTIVES 6-2

C WARRANTING CONDITIONS 6-3
- C.1 Criteria Based Upon Crash History 6-3
- C.2 Criteria Based Upon Analysis and Investigation 6-3
- C.3 General Criteria 6-4

D TYPES OF ILLUMINATION 6-5

E LEVEL OF ILLUMINATION 6-6

F UNIFORMITY OF ILLUMINATION 6-10

G UNDERPASSES and OVERPASSES 6-11
- G.1 Daytime Lighting 6-11
- G.2 Night Lighting 6-11

H ADAPTIVE LIGHTING 6-11

I OVERHEAD SIGN LIGHTING 6-12

J MAINTENANCE 6-12

K LIGHT POLES 6-13

L REFERENCES 6-14

6-16-26-36-36-36-46-56-66-06-16-16-16-16-16-36-46-16-26-36-36-36-46-56-66-96-106-106-106-106-106-126-

13A INTRODUCTION 6-1

B OBJECTIVES 6-4

C WARRANTING CONDITIONS 6-5
- C.1 Criteria Based Upon Crash History 6-5

Draft

C.2 Criteria Based Upon Analysis and Investigation 6-5
C.3 General Criteria 6-6

D LEVEL OF ILLUMINATION 6-7

E UNIFORMITY OF ILLUMINATION 6-9

F UNDERPASSES 6-12
F.1 Daytime Lighting 6-12
F.2 Night Lighting 6-12

G MAINTENANCE 6-12

H LIGHT POLES 6-13

Draft

TABLES

TABLE 6 - 1 LEVEL OF ILLUMINATION FOR STREETS AND HIGHWAYS.....6-7

TABLE 6 - 2 ROAD SURFACE CLASSIFICATIONS.....6-9

TABLE 6 - 3 ILLUMINANCE AND LUMINANCE LEVELS FOR SIGN LIGHTING* 6-12

TABLE 7 – 1 LEVEL OF ILLUMINATION FOR STREETS AND HIGHWAYS **6-8**6-8

Draft

CHAPTER 6

~~ROADWAY~~ LIGHTING

A INTRODUCTION

The major reason for lighting streets and highways is to improve safety for vehicular and pedestrian traffic. Improvements in sight distance and reduction of confusion and distraction for night time driving can reduce the hazard potential on streets and highways. There is evidence indicating that highway lighting will produce an increase in highway capacity as well as improve the economic, safety, and aesthetic characteristics of highways.

Experience and technical improvements have resulted in improved design of lighting for streets and highways. Photometric data provide a basis for calculation of the illumination at any point for various combinations of selected luminaire types, heights, and locations. Lighting engineers can develop ~~a~~ lighting systems that will comply with the requirements for level and uniformity of illumination; however, some uncertainties preclude the adoption of rigid design standards. Among these uncertainties is the lack of understanding in the area of driver response and behavior under various lighting conditions. The design of lighting for new streets and highways, as well as improvements on existing facilities, should be accompanied by careful consideration of the variables involved in driver behavior and problems peculiar to particular locations.

Rights of way with pedestrian sidewalks and/or bikeways adjacent to the roadway should first address lighting requirements for the roadway to assure it is continuously illuminated. Additional lighting for a sidewalk or shared use path may be necessary if it is substantially set back from the roadway, at the discretion of the responsible/maintaining agency. Pedestrian sidewalks and/or bikeways should not be illuminated in lieu of lighting the adjacent roadway in order to avoid glare or potential lighting distractions to drivers.

Draft

B OBJECTIVES

The objective for providing roadway lighting is to improve the safety of roadways, sidewalks, and shared use paths and visibility of signs for road users (drivers, pedestrians, and bicyclists)the reduction of particular hazards confronting motorists and pedestrians on the roadway. The achievement of this objective will be aided by meeting these specific goalsobjectives:

- Provide the (driver) with an improved view of the general highway roadway geometry and the adjacent environment.
- Increase the sight distance of road users drivers to improve response to hazards and decision points.
- Improve the mutual view of motorists, bicyclists and pedestrians.
- Eliminate "blind" spots uniquepeculiar to travel at night or in low light conditionsdriving.
- Provide a clearer view of the general situation during police, emergency, maintenance, and construction operations.
- Provide assistance in roadway, sidewalk or path delineation, particularly in the presence of confusing background lighting (i.e., surrounding street and other area lighting confuses the driver on an unlighted street or highway).
- Minimize Eliminate glare that is discomforting or disabling to the driver.
- ReduceAvoid abrupt changes in light intensity.
- Provide maintenance capabilities and procedures that will minimize hazards to motorists.
- Avoid the introduction of roadside hazards resulting from improper placement of light poles, pull boxes, etc. (as covered under ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design*** and ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***).

Draft

C WARRANTING CONDITIONS

Although precise warrants for the provision of roadway lighting are difficult to determine, criteria for lighting is established and should be followed for construction and for improvement of existing facilities. The following locations should be considered as a basis for warranting roadway lighting:

C.1 Criteria Based Upon Crash History

- Locations where pedestrians assemble to board or depart from transit services.
- Locations that, by ana crashaccident investigation program, have been shown to be hazardous due to inadequate lighting.
- Locations where the night/day ratio of serious crashes is higher than the average of similar locations.
- Specific locations that have a significant number of night time crashes and where a large percentage of these night time crashes result in injuries or fatalities.

C.2 Criteria Based Upon Analysis and Investigation

- Locations requiring a rapid sequence of decisions by the road userdriver.
- Locations where night sight distance problems exist, with particular consideration to vehicle headlight limitations (i.e., where vertical and horizontal curvature adversely affect illumination by headlamps).
- Locations having discomforting or disabling glare.
- Locations where background lighting exists, particularly if this could be distracting or confusing to the road userdriver.
- Locations where improved delineation of the highwayroadway alignment is needed.

Draft

C.3 General Criteria

- Freeways, expressways, and major streets and highways in urban areas.
- Freeways with frequent (½ mile from "on" ramp to "off" ramp) interchanges.
- Freeways with high volume and speed.
- Freeway interchanges including ramps and approach roadways.
- Acceleration and deceleration lanes.
- Rest areas.
- Junctions of freeways and major highways in rural areasRoundabouts.
- Urban collector streets, particularly with high speed, high volumes, or frequent turning movements.
- Urban streets of any category experiencing high night time volumes or speeds or that have frequent signalization or turning movements.
- Areas frequently congested with vehicular and/or pedestrian traffic.
- Pedestrian and bicyclist crossings (intersections or mid-block locations), and areas such as entertainment districts, sporting arenas, shopping centers, beach access, parks, and other locations that generate attract higher volumes of pedestrian activity.
- Schools, places of assemblychurches, transitbus stops, or other pedestrian or bicycliste generators.
- High density land use areas.
- Central business districts.
- Junctions of major highways in rural areas.
- Rest areas/picnic shelters/trail heads/recreational facilities.

Draft

D TYPES OF ILLUMINATION

Examples of common types of lighting are identified and discussed below. Other types of lighting may be desired and currently in use for specific applications.

- High Pressure Sodium (HPS) Lamps – is the most commonly used light source for street lighting. Light produced by HPS lamps has a correlated color temperature (CCT) around 2100°K which is a warm yellow color. The average rated life for an HPS lamp is from 24,000 to 30,000 hours. HPS lamps have a very high initial luminous efficacy of over 100 lumens per watt.

- Metal Halide (MH) Lamps – is commonly used for overhead lighting of commercial parking lots, sports facilities, retail stores and street lighting. Light produced by MH lamps has a CCT of 3800°K to 4000°K which is a white color. The average rated life of a MH lamp can vary from 9,000 to 20,000 hours. MH lamps have a high initial luminous efficacy of around 75 - 100 lumens per watt.

- Light Emitting Diode (LED) – although LED was developed in the early 1960s, it has only recently entered the roadway lighting market. Light produced by LED lamps have a CCT of 4000°K to 6000°K which is a white to bluish color. The average rated life for LED can vary from 50,000 to 100,000 hours. The wide variation in rated life for LED's is due to the limited lumen output of a single LED. To provide sufficient lumens for roadway lighting requires that fixtures have a large number of LED's. To maximize the lumen output of each LED, fixture manufactures may use a variety of techniques to increase the lumen output such as increasing the CCT and increasing the drive current. Increasing the CCT from 3500°K to 4500°K results in an 8% increase in lumen level, however above 4500°K the rate of increase doubles. Increasing the CCT also improves the efficacy of LED's. LED's are most efficient at drive currents of 350mA or 525mA, however they can be driven as high as 2100-mA. A 25% increase in lumen level can be achieved by increasing the drive current from 525mA to 700mA. The increase in lumen level drops slightly to 21% for each 175mA increase from 700mA to 1400mA. Above 1400mA, the increase in lumen level drops to 6% for each 175mA. Increasing the drive current to LED's has two serious consequences, it substantially reduces the average rated life and the efficiency of the LED. To provide sufficient lumen levels for roadway applications, most LED fixtures have an initial luminous efficacy of around 75 lumens per watt.

Draft

E~~D~~ LEVEL OF ILLUMINATION

It is recommended that the level of illumination for streets and highways not be less than:

- Levels consistent with need and resources.
- Guidelines ~~established by AASHTO - Roadway Lighting Design Guide~~ found in Table 6 - ~~7.~~1 Level of Illumination for Streets and Highways on the following page.
- Lighting of mid-block pedestrian crossings at 2.~~3~~0 foot candles of average maintained *vertical* illumination should be provided when night time pedestrian activity is expected.

When adding supplemental lighting for pedestrian activity, ensure lighting is compatible with any existing lighting in the corridor and minimizes glare. Illuminance in roadway lighting is a measure of the light at the pavement surface. Luminance in roadway lighting is a measure of the reflected light from the pavement surface that is visible to the motorist's eye. See Table 6 - 1 for ranges of illumination.

These levels are for the purpose of highway safety and do not apply to lighting levels required for crime reduction. Further information may be found in the AASHTO - Roadway Lighting Design Guide (2005).

Draft

TABLE 6 – 1 Level of Illumination for Streets and Highways

Roadway and Walkway Classification	Off-Roadway Light Sources	Illuminance Method					Luminance Method			Additional Values (both Methods)
		Average Maintained Illuminance (Horizontal)				Illuminance Uniformity Ratio	Average Maintained Luminance			Veiling Luminance Ratio
		R1	R2	R3	R4		Lavg	Uniformity		
	General Land Use	(foot-candles) (min)	(foot-candles) (min)	(foot-candles) (min)	(foot-candles) (min)	avg/min (max) (6)	cd/m2 (min)	Lavg/Lmin (max)	Lmax/Lmin (max)~~0~~	Lv(max)/Lavg (max)(3)
~~Other~~ Principal Arterials (partial or no control of access)	Commercial	1.1	1.6	1.6	1.4	3:1	1.2	3:1	5:1	0.3:1
	Intermediate	0.8	1.2	1.2	1.0	3:1	0.9	3:1	5:1	0.3:1
	Residential	0.6	0.8	0.8	0.8	3:1	0.6	3.5:1	6:1	0.3:1
Minor Arterials	Commercial	0.9	1.4	1.4	1.0	4:1	1.2	3:1	5:1	0.3:1
	Intermediate	0.8	1.0	1.0	0.9	4:1	0.9	3:1	5:1	0.3:1
	Residential	0.5	0.7	0.7	0.7	4:1	0.6	3.5:1	6:1	0.3:1
Collectors	Commercial	0.8	1.1	1.1	0.9	4:1	0.8	3:1	5:1	0.4:1
	Intermediate	0.6	0.8	0.8	0.8	4:1	0.6	3.5:1	6:1	0.4:1
	Residential	0.4	0.6	0.6	0.5	4:1	0.4	4:1	8:1	0.4:1
Local	Commercial	0.6	0.8	0.8	0.8	6:1	0.6	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
	Intermediate	0.5	0.7	0.7	0.6	6:1	0.5	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
	Residential	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.4	6;1	0.3	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
Alleys	Commercial	0.4	0.6	0.6	0.5	6:1	0.4	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
	Intermediate	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.4	6:1	0.3	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
	Residential	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.3	6:1	0.2	6:1	10:1	0.4:1

Continued on next page

TABLE 6 – 1
Level of Illumination for Streets and Highways
(Continued)

Sidewalks	Commercial	0.9	1.3	1.3	1.2	3:1	Use illuminance requirements
	Intermediate	0.6	0.8	0.8	0.8	4:1	
	Residential	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.4	6:1	
Pedestrian Ways and Bicycle Ways(2)	All	1.4	2.0	2.0	1.8	3.1	

Notes

1. Meet either the Illuminance design method requirements or the Luminance design method requirements and meet veiling luminance requirements for both illuminance and Luminance design methods.
2. Assumes a separate facility. For Pedestrian Ways and Bicycle Ways adjacent to roadway, use roadway design values. Use R3 requirements for walkway/bikeway surface materials other than the pavement types shown.
3. Lv (max) refers to the maximum point along the pavement, not the maximum in lamp life. The Maintenance factor applies to both the Lv term and the Lavg term.
4. There may be situations when a higher level of illuminance is justified. The higher values for freeways may be justified when deemed advantageous by the agency to mitigate off-roadway sources.
5. Physical roadway conditions may require adjustment of spacing determined from the base levels of illuminance indicated above.
6. Higher uniformity ratios are acceptable for elevated ramps near high-mast poles.
7. See AASHTO publication entitled, “A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets” for roadway and walkway classifications.
8. R1, R2, R3 and R4 are Road Surface Classifications, defined in the AASHTO Roadway Lighting Design Guide and further described in Table 6.2.

Draft

Luminance in roadway lighting is a measure of the reflected light from the pavement surface that is visible to the motorist's eye. A system of pavement reflectance values divides the pavement characteristics into four categories: R1, R2, R3 and R4. These categories are based upon the ***American National Standard Practice for Roadway Lighting*** and have been adopted by ***AASHTO*** in their ***Roadway Lighting Design Guide***. They are described in Table 6- 2 Road Surface Classifications.

Table 6 - 2
Road Surface Classifications

Class	Q_0*	Description	Mode of Reflectance
R1	0.10	Portland cement concrete road surface. Asphalt road surface with a minimum of 12% of the aggregates composed of artificial brightener or aggregates.	Mostly diffuse
R2	0.07	Asphalt road surface with an aggregate composed of minimum 60% gravel (size greater than 0.4 in.). Asphalt road surface with 10 to 15% artificial brightener in aggregate mix. (Not normally used in North America).	Mixed (diffuse and specular)
R3	0.07	Asphalt road surface (regular and carpet seal) with dark aggregates (e.g., trap rock, blast furnace slag); rough texture after some months of use typical highways).	Slightly specular.
R4	0.08	Asphalt road surface with very smooth texture.	Mostly specular.

* Q_0 = representative mean luminance coefficient.

Draft

FE UNIFORMITY OF ILLUMINATION

In order to avoid vision problems due to varying illumination, it is important to maintain illumination uniformity over the roadway. It is recommended the ratio of the average to the minimum initial illumination on the roadway be between 3:1 to 4:1.

A maximum to minimum uniformity ratio of 10:1 should not be exceeded. It is important to allow time for the driver's eye to adjust to lower light levels. The first light poles should be located on the side of the incoming traffic approaching the illuminated area. The eye can adjust to increased or increasing light level more quickly. In transition from a lighted to an unlighted portion of the highways, the level should be gradually reduced from the level maintained on the lighted section. This may be accomplished by having the last light pole occur on the opposite roadway. The roadway section following lighting termination should be free of hazards or decision points. Lighting should not be terminated before changes in background lighting or roadway geometry, or at the location of traffic control devices.

It is also important to ensure color consistency when lighting a highway/pedestrian corridor, as white and yellow conflict with each other. For roadway lighting mixing of HPS and LED Mixing of different types of lighting willmay reduce the lighting uniformity. As we transition from HPS to LED, it is acceptable to have mixed lighting segments along the same corridorlighted with HPS and LED.

The use of spot lighting at unlit intersections with a history of nighttime crashes is an option.

Close coordination between the Engineer of Record and the responsible local governmental agency is essential when utilizing this approach.

Draft

GF UNDERPASSES and OVERPASSES

One of the criteria to be followed to determine requirements for underpass lighting is the relative level between illumination on the roadway inside and outside of the underpass. The height, width, and length of the underpass determines the amount of light penetration from the exterior.

Lighting of independent sidewalks or shared use paths should be evaluated on a project specific basis. Considerations include the likelihood of night time use, the role of the facility in the community's bicycle and pedestrian network, and whether alternatives are available for night time travel.

GF.1 Daytime Lighting

A gradual decrease in the illumination level from day time level on the roadway, sidewalk or path to the underpass should be provided. Supplemental day time lighting is normally not needed in underpasses less than 100 feet in length.

GF.2 Night Lighting

The night time illumination level in the underpass should be maintained near the night time level of the approach roadway, sidewalk or path. Due to relatively low luminaire mounting heights, care should be exercised to avoid glare.

HG ADAPTIVE LIGHTING

Some locations such as coastal roadways where sea turtles may be affected, may require lower lighting levels and colors than what might normally be provided. FHWA's publication ***The Guidelines for the Implementation of Reduced Lighting on Roadways*** describes a process by which an agency or a lighting designer can select the required lighting level for a road or street and implement adaptive lighting for a lighting installation or lighting retrofit. This document supplements existing lighting guidelines.

Draft

I OVERHEAD SIGN LIGHTING

It is recommended that the level of illumination for overhead signs not be less than guidelines found in Table 6 - 3 Illuminance and Luminance for Sign Lighting.

Table 6 - 3
Illuminance and Luminance Levels for Sign Lighting*

Ambient Luminance	Sign Illuminance		Sign Luminance**	
	Footcandles	Lux	Candelas per Square Meter	Candelas per Square Foot
Low	10 - 20	100 - 200	22 - 44	2.2 – 4.4
Medium	20 - 400.07	200 - 400	44 - 89	4.4 – 8.9
High	40 - 800.07	400 - 800	89 - 78	89 – 178

*Adapted from The IESNA Lighting Handbook, Reference & Application, 9th Edition, Illuminating Engineering Society of North America.

**Based upon a maintained reflectance of 70 percent for white sign letters.

IJ MAINTENANCE

A program of regular preventive maintenance should be established to ensure levels of illumination do not go below required values. The program should be coordinated with lighting design to determine the maintenance period. Factors for consideration include a decrease in lamp output, luminaire components becoming dirty, and the physical deterioration of the reflector or refractor. The maintenance of roadway lighting should be incorporated in the overall maintenance program specified in ***Chapter 10 – Maintenance And Resurfacing***.

Draft

JKH LIGHT POLES

Light poles should not be placed in the sidewalk when adequate right of way is available beyond the sidewalk. Placement of lighting structures and achieved illumination may be limited by existing conditions, such as driveways, overhead and underground utilities, drainage structures, and availability of right of way.

Light poles should not be placed so as to provide a hazard to out of control vehicles. Light poles are generally not of a breakaway design Non-frangible light poles and should be placed outside of the clear zoneroadway recovery area. They should be as far removed from the travel lane as possible or behind adequate guardrail or other barriers. Light poles should be placed on the inside of the curves when feasible. Foundations or light poles and rigid auxiliary lighting components that are not behind suitable barriers should be constructed flush with or below the ground level. Breakaway light poles should not be used where there is a high probability that a falling light pole may strike a pedestrian or fall on a building or the roadway and create a greater hazard.

The use of high mast lighting should be considered, particularly for lighting interchanges and other large plaza areas. This use tends to produce a more uniform illumination level, reduces glare, and allows placement of the light poles farther from the roadway. Additional emphasis lighting should be considered to illuminate specific and desired pedestrian crossings.

The placement of light poles should not interfere with the road users ??driver's sight distance nor visibility the view of signs, signals, or other traffic control devices. Further criteria regarding the placement of roadside structures, including light poles, is specified in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

Draft

KL REFERENCES

The publications referenced in this chapter can be obtained at the following web sites.

- Roadway Lighting, ANSI/RP-8-14
  http://www.ies.org/store/product/roadway-lighting-ansiies-rp814-1350.cfm

- AASHTO - Roadway Lighting Design Guide (October 2005)
  https://bookstore.transportation.org

- Guidelines for the Implementation of Reduced Lighting on Roadways
  PUBLICATION NO. FHWA-HRT-14-050 JUNE 2014
  http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/publications/research/safety/14050/14050.pdf

Draft

CHAPTER 7

RAIL-HIGHWAY GRADE CROSSINGS

A INTRODUCTION 7-1

B OBJECTIVE AND PRIORITIES 7-1
- B.1 Conflict Elimination 7-1
- B.2 Hazard Reduction 7-1

C RAIL-HIGHWAY GRADE CROSSING NEAR OR WITHIN PROJECT LIMITS . 7-2

D DESIGN OF RAIL-HIGHWAY CROSSINGS 7-3
- D.1 Sight Distance 7-3
  - D.1.a Stopping Sight Distance 7-3
  - D.1.b Sight Triangle 7-3
  - D.1.c Crossing Maneuvers 7-4
- D.2 Approach Alignment 7-8
  - D.2.a Horizontal Alignment 7-8
  - D.2.b Vertical Alignment 7-8
- D.3 Highway Cross Section 7-9
  - D.3.a Pavement 7-9
  - D.3.b Shoulders 7-9
  - D.3.c Medians 7-10
  - D.3.d Sidewalks and Shared Use Paths 7-11
  - D.3.e Roadside Clear Zone 7-15
  - D.3.f Auxiliary Lanes 7-15
- D.4 Roadside Design 7-15
- D.5 Vertical Clearance 7-16
- D.6 Horizontal Clearance 7-17
  - D.6.a Adjustments for Track Geometry 7-19
  - D.6.b Adjustments for Physical Obstructions 7-19
- D.7 Access Control 7-20
- D.8 Parking 7-20
- D.9 Traffic Control Devices 7-20

Draft

D.10 Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Surface 7-23
D.11 Roadway Lighting 7-23
D.12 Crossing Configuration 7-23

E QUIET ZONES 7-27

F HIGH SPEED RAIL 7-29

G MAINTENANCE AND RECONSTRUCTION 7-30

H REFERENCES 7-31

A INTRODUCTION 7-1

B OBJECTIVE AND PRIORITIES 7-1
B.1 Conflict Elimination 7-1
B.2 Hazard Reduction 7-1

C RAIL-HIGHWAY GRADE CROSSING NEAR OR WITHIN PROJECT LIMITS 7-2

D DESIGN OF RAIL-HIGHWAY CROSSINGS 7-3
C.1 Sight Distance 7-3
C.1.a Stopping Sight Distance 7-3
C.1.b Sight Triangle 7-3
C.1.c Crossing Maneuvers 7-4
C.2 Approach Alignment 7-7
C.2.a Horizontal Alignment 7-7
C.2.b Vertical Alignment 7-8
C.3 Highway Cross Section 7-8
C.3.a Pavement 7-8
C.3.b Shoulders 7-9
C.3.c Medians 7-9
C.3.d Sidewalks and Shared Use Paths 7-9
C.3.e Roadside Clear Zone 7-13
C.3.f Auxiliary Lanes 7-13
C.4 Roadside Design 7-13
C.5 Vertical Clearance 7-14
C.6 Horizontal Clearance 7-15

Draft

C.6.a Adjustments for Track Geometry 7-17
C.6.b Adjustments for Physical Obstructions 7-17
C.7 Access Control 7-18
C.8 Parking 7-18
C.9 Traffic Control Devices 7-18
C.10 Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Surface 7-20
C.11 Roadway Lighting 7-20
C.12 Crossing Configuration 7-20

E QUIET ZONES 7-24

D HIGH SPEED RAIL 7-26

E MAINTENANCE AND RECONSTRUCTION 7-27

F REFERENCES 7-28

Draft

TABLES

Table 7 – 1 Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings 7-6

Table 7 – 2 Minimum Vertical Clearances for New Bridges 7-16

Table 7 – 3 Horizontal Clearances for Railroads 7-19

Table 7 – 1 Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings 7-6

FIGURES

Figure 7 – 1 Visibility Triangle at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings 7-5

Figure 7 – 2 Flush Median Channelization Devices 7-11

Figure 7 – 3 Pedestrian Crossings 7-13

Figure 7 – 4 Flangeways and Flangeway Gaps 7-14

Figure 7 – 5 Track Section 7-18

Figure 7 – 6 Median Signal Gates for Multilane Curbed Sections 7-22

Figure 7 – 7 Passive Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration 7-24

Figure 7 – 8 Active Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration 7-26

Figure 7 – 9 Gate Configuration for Quiet Zones 7-28

CHAPTER 7

RAIL-HIGHWAY GRADE CROSSINGS

A INTRODUCTION

The basic design for grade crossings should be similar to that given for highway intersections in ***Chapter 3*** – ***Geometric Design***. Rail-highway grade crossings should be limited in number and should, where feasible, be accomplished by grade separations. Where at-grade crossings are necessary, adequate traffic control devices and proper crossing design are required to limit the probability of crashes.

B OBJECTIVE AND PRIORITIES

The primary objective in the design, construction, maintenance, and reconstruction of rail-highway crossings is to provide for continuous flow of traffic in a safety for both rail and roadway vehicles in a feasible and efficient manner. The achievement of this objective may be realized by utilizing the following techniques in the listed sequence of priority.

B.1 Conflict Elimination

The elimination of at grade rail-highway conflicts is the most desirable procedure for promoting safe and efficient traffic operations. This may be accomplished by the closing of a crossing or by utilizing a grade separation structure.

B.2 Hazard Reduction

The design of new at-grade crossings should consider the objective of hazard reduction. In addition, an effective program of reconstruction should be directed towards reducing crash potential at existing crossings.

The regulation of intersections between railroads and all public streets and highways in Florida is vested in the ***Florida Administrative Code, (Rule 14-5746): Railroad Safety and Clearance Standards, and Public Railroad-Highway Grade Crossings***. This rule contains minimum requirements for all new grade crossings.

The Department's rail office has other documents available that contain additional guidance for the design, reconstruction, and upgrading of existing rail-highway railroad grade crossings, and may be contacted for further information.

Draft

C B.3 RAIL-HIGHWAY GRADE CROSSING NEAR OR WITHIN PROJECT LIMITS

Federal-aid projects must be reviewed to determine if a rail-highway grade crossing is within the limits of or near the terminus of the project. If such rail-highway grade crossing exists, the project must be upgraded to meet the latest **MUTCD** requirements in accordance with ***Title 23, United States Code (U.S.C.), Chapter 1, Section 109(e)*** *and* ***23 C.F.R. 646.214(b).***

These requirements are located in ***Chapter 8*** of the ***MUTCD***. "Near the terminus" is defined as being either of the following:

- If the project begins or ends between the crossing and the MUTCD-mandated advanced placement distance for the advanced (railroad) warning sign. See ***MUTCD, Table 2C-4 (Condition B, column "0" mph)*** for this distance.
- An intersection traffic signal within the project is linked to the crossing's flashing light signal and gate.

Draft

DC DESIGN OF RAIL-HIGHWAY GRADE CROSSINGS

The primary requirement for the geometric design of a grade crossing is that it provides adequate sight distance for the motorist vehicle operator to make an appropriate decision as to stop or proceed at the crossing.

CD.1 Sight Distance

The minimum sight distance requirements for streets and highways at rail-highway grade crossings are similar to those required for highway intersections (***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***).

CD.1.a Stopping Sight Distance

The approach roadways at all rail-highway grade crossings should consider stopping sight distance no less than the values given in ***Chapter 3, Table 3 – 314, Stopping Sight Distances*** or ***Figure 3 - 7*** for the approach to stop signs. This distance shall be measured to a stopping point prior to gates or stop bars at the crossing, but not less than 15 feet from the nearest track. All traffic control devices shall be visible from the driver eye height of 3.50 feet.

CD.1.b Sight Triangle

At grade crossings without train activated signal devices, a sight triangle should be provided.

The provision of the capability for defensive driving is an important aspect of the design of rail-highway grade crossings. An early view of an approaching train is necessary to allow the driver time to decide to stop or to proceed through the crossing.

The size of this sight triangle, which is shown in Figure 7 – 1 Visibility Triangle at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings, is dependent upon the train speed limit, the highway design speed, and the highway approach grade. The minimum distance along the highway (d_H), includes the requirements for stopping sight distance, the offset distance (D) from the edge of track to the stopped position (15 feet), and the eye offset (d_e) from the front of

Draft

vehicles (8 feet); (Figure 7 - 1, Case A). The required distance (d_T) along the track, given in Table 7 - 1, Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings, is necessary to allow a vehicle to stop or proceed across the track safely. Where the roadway is on a grade, the lateral sight distance (d_T) along the track should be increased as noted (Table 7 - 1). This lateral sight distance is desirable at all crossings. In other than flat terrain it may be necessary to rely on speed control signs and devices and to predicate sight distance on a reduced speed of operation. This reduced speed should never be less than 15 mph and preferably 20 mph.

CD.1.c Crossing Maneuvers

The sight distance required for a vehicle to cross a railroad from a stop is essentially the same as that required to cross a highway intersection as given in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

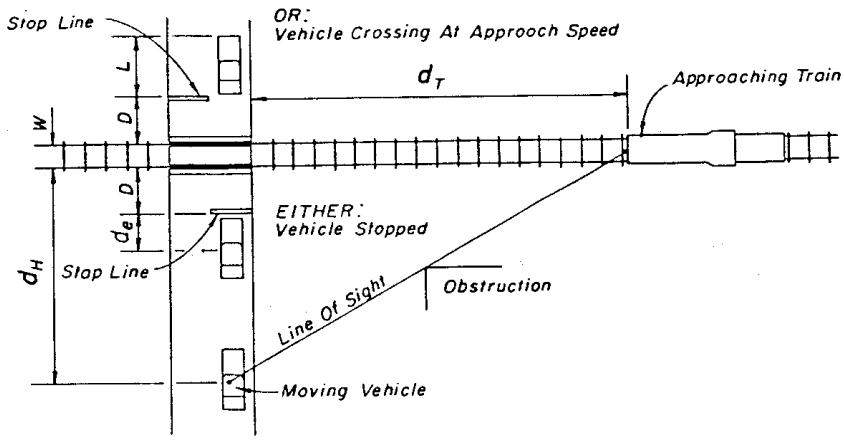
An adequate clear distance along the track in both directions should be provided at all crossings. This distance, when used, shall be no less than the values obtained from Figure 7 - 1 Visibility Triangle at Rail-Highway Grade CrossingsFigure 7 - 1 Visibility Triangle at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings and Table 7 - 1 (Case B), Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade CrossingsTable 7 - 1 (Case B), Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings. Due to the greater stopping distance required for trains, this distance should be increased wherever possible.

The crossing distance to be used shall include the total width of the tracks, the length of the vehicle, and an initial vehicle offset. This offset shall be at least 10 feet back from any gates or flashing lights, but not less than 15 feet from the nearest track. The train speed used shall be equal to or greater than the established train speed limit.

The setback for determining the required clear area for sight distance (similar to that shown in ***Figure 3 - 11***) should be at least 10 feet more than the vehicle offset. Care should be exercised to ensure signal supports and other structures at the crossing do not block the view of drivers preparing to cross the tracks.

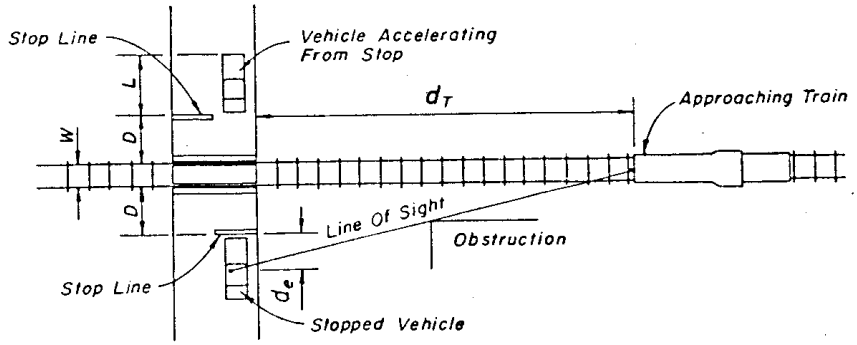
Draft

Figure 7 – 1
Visibility Triangle at Rail~~road~~-Highway Grade Crossings



CASE **A**

APPROACHING VEHICLE TO SAFELY CROSS OR STOP AT RAILROAD CROSSING



CASE **B**

VEHICLE DEPARTING FROM STOPPED POSITION TO SAFELY CROSS RAILROAD TRACK

For d_H and d_T values and crossing conditions see Table **7-1.**

Draft

Table 7 – 1
Sight Distance at Rail~~road~~-Highway Grade Crossings

Design Sight Distances For Combinations Of Train And Highway Vehicle Speeds

Conditions:~~Conditions: Single Track 90° Crossing~~
~~Design Vehicle WB-67 (L=73.5' d_e=8')~~
~~Flat Highway Grades~~
~~No Train Activated Warning Devices~~
~~Track Width (W) = 5'~~
~~Vehicle Stop Position (D) = 15'~~

Single Track 90° Crossing
Design Vehicle WB-67 (L=73.5' d_e=8')
Flat Highway Grades

Track Width (W) = 5'
Vehicle Stop Position (D) = 15'
No Train Activated Warning Devices

TRAIN SPEED (mph)	CASE B VEHICLE DEPARTURE FROM STOP	CASE A MOVING VEHICLE						
	VEHICLE SPEED (mph)							
	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70
	d_t (feet) SIGHT DISTANCE ALONG RAILROAD TRACK							
10	~~254~~ 255	~~155~~ 155	~~110~~ 110	~~102~~ 102	~~102~~ 102	~~106~~ 106	~~112~~ 112	~~119~~ 119
20	~~509~~ 509	~~309~~ 310	~~220~~ 220	~~203~~ 203	~~204~~ 205	~~213~~ 213	~~225~~ 225	~~239~~ 239
30	~~763~~ 764	~~464~~ 465	~~330~~ 331	~~305~~ 305	~~307~~ 307	~~319~~ 319	~~337~~ 337	~~358~~ 358
40	~~1018~~ 1019	~~619~~ 619	~~440~~ 441	~~407~~ 407	~~409~~ 409	~~426~~ 426	~~450~~ 450	~~478~~ 478
50	~~1272~~ 1274	~~773~~ 774	~~550~~ 551	~~508~~ 509	~~511~~ 511	~~532~~ 532	~~562~~ 562	~~597~~ 597
60	~~1526~~ 1528	~~928~~ 929	~~661~~ 661	~~610~~ 610	~~613~~ 614	~~638~~ 639	~~674~~ 675	~~716~~ 717
70	~~1781~~ 1783	~~1083~~ 1084	~~771~~ 771	~~712~~ 712	~~716~~ 716	~~745~~ 745	~~787~~ 787	~~836~~ 836
80	~~2035~~ 2038	~~1237~~ 1239	~~881~~ 882	~~813~~ 814	~~818~~ 818	~~851~~ 852	~~899~~ 899	~~955~~ 956
90	~~2289~~ 2292	~~1392~~ 1394	~~991~~ 992	~~915~~ 915	~~920~~ 920	~~958~~ 958	~~1012~~ 1012	~~1075~~ 1075
100	2547	1548	1102	1017	1023	1064	1124	1194
110	2802	1703	1212	1119	1125	1171	1237	1314

Draft

120	3057	1858	1322	1221	1227	1277	1349	1433
130	3311	2013	1433	1322	1329	1384	1461	1553
d_H (feet) SIGHT DISTANCE ALONG HIGHWAY								
		69	135	220	324	447	589	751

(Continued on Next Page)

Table 7 – 1
Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings
(continued)

Conditions: Single Track 90° Crossing
Design Vehicle WB-67 (L=73.5' d_e=8')
Flat Highway Grades
No Train Activated Warning Devices
Track Width (W) = 5'
Vehicle Stop Position (D) = 15'

Source: Developed from ***TableExhibit 9-32104, A Policy on Geometric Design of Highway and Streets, AASHTO (2004) AASHTO (2011).***

Notes: 1Sight) Sight distances are required in all quadrants of the crossing.

2) Corrections must be made for conditions other than shown in the table, such as, multiple rails, skewed angle crossings, ascending and descending grades, and curvature of highways and rails. For condition adjustments and additional information refer to Railroad-Highway Grade Crossings under Chapter 9 of "***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets", AASHTO (2011101)***. Additional information is available on FHWA's website for ***Highway-Rail Grade Crossing Surfaces*** and ***NCHRP Synthesis 250 Highway – Rail Grade Crossing Surfaces, TRB, (1998).***"."

Draft

CD.2 Approach Alignment

The alignment of the approach roadways is a critical factor in developing a safe grade crossing. The horizontal and vertical alignment, and particularly any combination thereof, should be as gentle as possible.

CD.2.a Horizontal Alignment

The intersection of a highway and railroad should be made as near to the right angle (90 degrees) as possible. Intersection angles less than 70 degrees should be avoided. The highway approach should, if feasible, be on a tangent, because the use of a horizontal curve tends to distract the driver from a careful observation of the crossing. The use of superelevation at a crossing is normally not possible, since this would prevent the proper grade intersection with the railroad.

CD.2.b Vertical Alignment

The vertical alignment of the roadway on a crossing is an important factor in safe vehicle operation. The intersection of the tracks and the roadway should constitute an even plane. All tracks should, preferably, be at the same elevation, thus allowing a smooth roadway through the crossing. Where the railroad is on a curve with superelevation, the vertical alignment of the roadway shall coincide with the grade established by the tracks.

Draft

Vertical curvature on the crossing should be avoided. This is necessary to limit vertical motion of the vehicle.

The vertical alignment of the approach roadway should be adjusted when rail elevations are raised to prevent abrupt changes in grade and entrapment of low clearance vehicles.

The roadway approach to crossing should also coincide with the grade established by the tracks. This profile grade, preferably zero, should be extended a reasonable distance (at least two times the design speed in feet) on each side of the crossing. Where vertical curves are required to approach this section, they should be as gentle as possible. The length of these vertical curves shall be of sufficient length to provide the required sight distance.

CDE.3 Highway Cross Section

Preserving the continuity of the highway cross section through a grade crossing is important to prevent distractions and to avoid hazards at an already dangerous location.

CDE.3.a Pavement

The full width of all travel lanes shall be continued through grade crossings. The crown of the pavement shall be removed transitioned gradually to meet the cross sectional grade of the tracks. This pavement cross slope transition shall be removed in conformance with the requirements for superelevation runoff. The lateral and longitudinal pavement slopes should normally be designed to direct drainage away from the tracks.

CDE.3.b Shoulders

All shoulders shall be carried through rail-highway grade crossings without interruption.

The use of full-width paved shoulders is required at all new crossings to maintain a stable surface for emergency maneuvers. The shoulders should be paved a minimum distance of 50 feet on each side of the crossing, measured from the outside rail. It is desirable to pave 100 feet on either side to permit bicycles to exit the travelvehicle lane, slow for their crossing,

Draft

and then make an adequate search before selecting a gap for a return to the travel lane. See ***Chapter 3, Table 3 – 11x Minimum Widths of Pavement and Shoulders Widths for Two Lane Rural Highways*** and ***Table 3 – x Shoulder Width for Multilane Rural Divided Highways*** for further information on shoulder width.

CDE.3.c Medians

It is recommended that tThe full median width on divided highways should be continued through the crossing. The median should be contoured to provide a smooth transition on the tracks.

A raised median is the ideal deterrent to discourage motorists from driving around the gates to cross the tracks or making a U-turn prior to the tracks. , is the ideal deterrent to discourage motorists from driving around gates, or in the case of a fFlush medians should have tThe use of signs and channelizingation devicesroadside delineation as a deterrentis recommended to discourage driving around lowered automatic gatesuse of a flushthe median or pavement to cross the tracks. (Photo?) Railroad Signals signals and automatic gate assemblies should be installed in the median only when gate arms of 3638 feet will not adequately span the approach roadway.

Draft

Figure 7 – 2 Flush Median Channelization Devices

Alexander Street, SR 39A, Plant City, FL 1

CDE.3.d Sidewalks and Shared Use Paths

To provide an accessible route for pedestrians at grade railroad-highway crossings, new or existing sidewalks and shared use paths shall be continued across the rail crossings. The surface of the crossing shall be:

- firm, stable and slip resistant,
- level and flush with the top of rail at the outer edges of the rails, and
- area between the rails align with the top of rail.

Detectable warnings shall be placed on each side of the rail-highway crossing, extend 2.0 feet in the direction of pedestrian travel and the full width across the sidewalk or shared use path, as shown in Figure 7 – 32 Pedestrian Crossings.

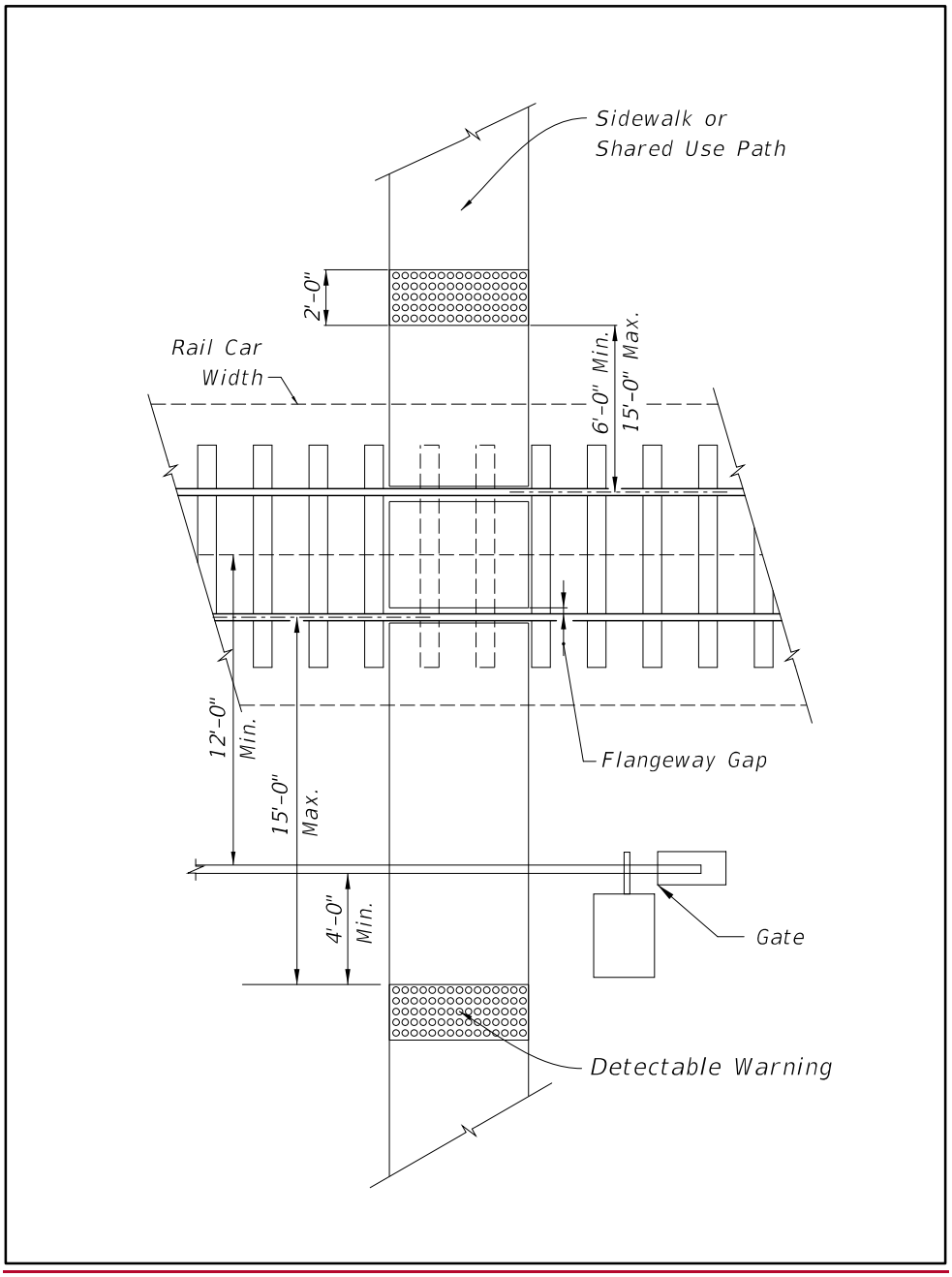
The edge of the detectable warning nearest the rail crossing shall be 6.0 to 15.0 feet from the centerline of the nearest rail. Where pedestrian gates are provided, detectable warnings shall be placed a minimum. of 4.0 feet from the side of the gates opposite the rail, and within 15.0 feet of the centerline of the nearest rail.

Draft

If traffic control signals are in operation at a crossing that is used by pedestrians or bicyclists, an audible device such as a bell shall also be provided and operated in conjunction with the traffic control signals. See *MUTCD, Chapters 8B and 8C* for further information and to determine if additional signals, signs, or pedestrian gates should be included. See ***MUTCD, Chapter 8D*** for additional information on designing crossings for shared use paths.

Draft

Figure 7 – 32 Pedestrian Crossings



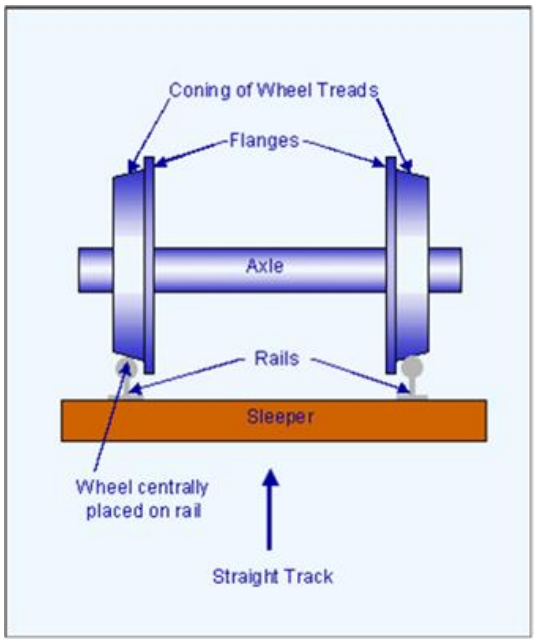
Notes: Pedestrian gates may be installed on the outside of the sidewalk/shared use path or in the utility strip.

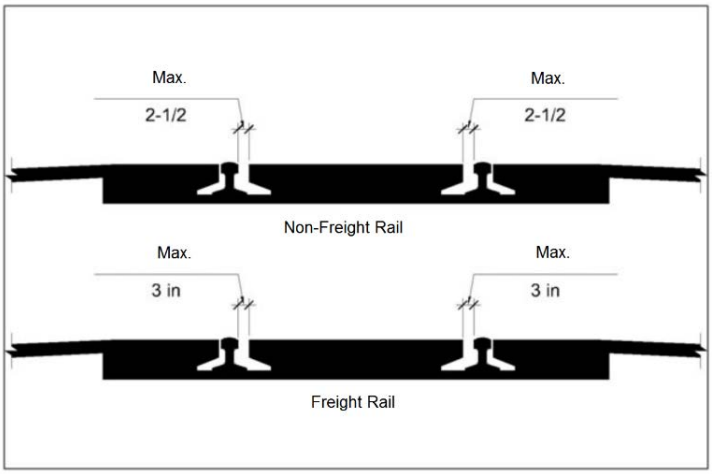
Draft

Flangeway gaps are necessary to allow the passage of train wheel flanges; however, they pose a potential hazard to pedestrians who use wheelchairs because the gaps can entrap the wheelchair casters. Flangeway gaps at pedestrian at-grade rail crossings shall be 2 ½" maximum on non-freight rail track and 3" maximum on freight rail track.

Figure 7 – 43 Flangeways and Flangeway Gaps illustrates where the flanges are located on the wheel, how they interact with the rails, and the maximum gap allowed.

Figure 7 – 43 Flangeways and Flangeway Gaps





See ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities*** and ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities*** for further information on designing sidewalks and shared use paths. The ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act – Standards for Transportation Facilities*** and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities.

Draft

DC.3.ed Roadside Clear Zone

Although it is often not practical to maintain the full width of the roadside clear zone, the maximum clear area feasible should be provided. This clear zone shall conform to the requirements for slope and change in grade for roadside clear zones.

DC.3.fe Auxiliary Lanes

Auxiliary lanes are permitted but not encouraged at signalized rail-highway grade crossings that have a large volume of bus or truck traffic required to stop at all times. These additional lanes should be restricted for the use of these stopping vehicles. The approaches to these auxiliary lanes shall be designed as storage for deceleration lanes. The exits shall be designed as acceleration lanes.

DC.4 Roadside Design

The general requirements for roadside design given in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** and ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design***, should be followed at rail-highway grade crossings. Supports for traffic control devices may be required within the roadside recovery area. Due to the structural requirements and the necessity for continuous operation, the use of a breakaway design is not recommended. The use of a guardrail or other longitudinal barrier is also not recommended, because an out of control vehicle would tend to be directed into the crossing.

In order to reduce the hazard to errant vehicles, all support structures should be placed as far from the traveled way as practicable.

Draft

DC.5 Vertical Clearance

Minimum vertical clearances for grade separated rail-highway crossings are shown in Table 7 – 2 Minimum Vertical Clearances for New Bridges. Minimum vertical clearance is the least distance between the bottom of the superstructure and the top of the highest rail utilized anywhere within the horizontal clearance zone.

Table 7 – 2 Minimum Vertical Clearances for New Bridges

Facility Type	Clearance
Railroad over Roadway	16'-6"
Roadway over Railroad[1]	23'-6"
Pedestrian over Railroad[1]	23'-6"

1. Over High Speed Rail Systems, see the latest version of ***American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA***) guidelines, or the design office of the high-speed rail line of interest for specific guidelines and specifications. Over Electrified Railroad, the minimum vertical clearance shall be 24 feet 3 inches. (See ***Department Topic No. 000-725-003: South Florida Rail Corridor Clearance***.)

For any construction affecting existing bridge clearances (e.g., bridge widenings or resurfacing) vertical clearances less than 16'-0" shall be maintained or increased. If reducing the design vertical bridge clearance to a value between 16'-0" and 16'-2", the design vertical clearance dimension in the plans shall be stated as a minimum.

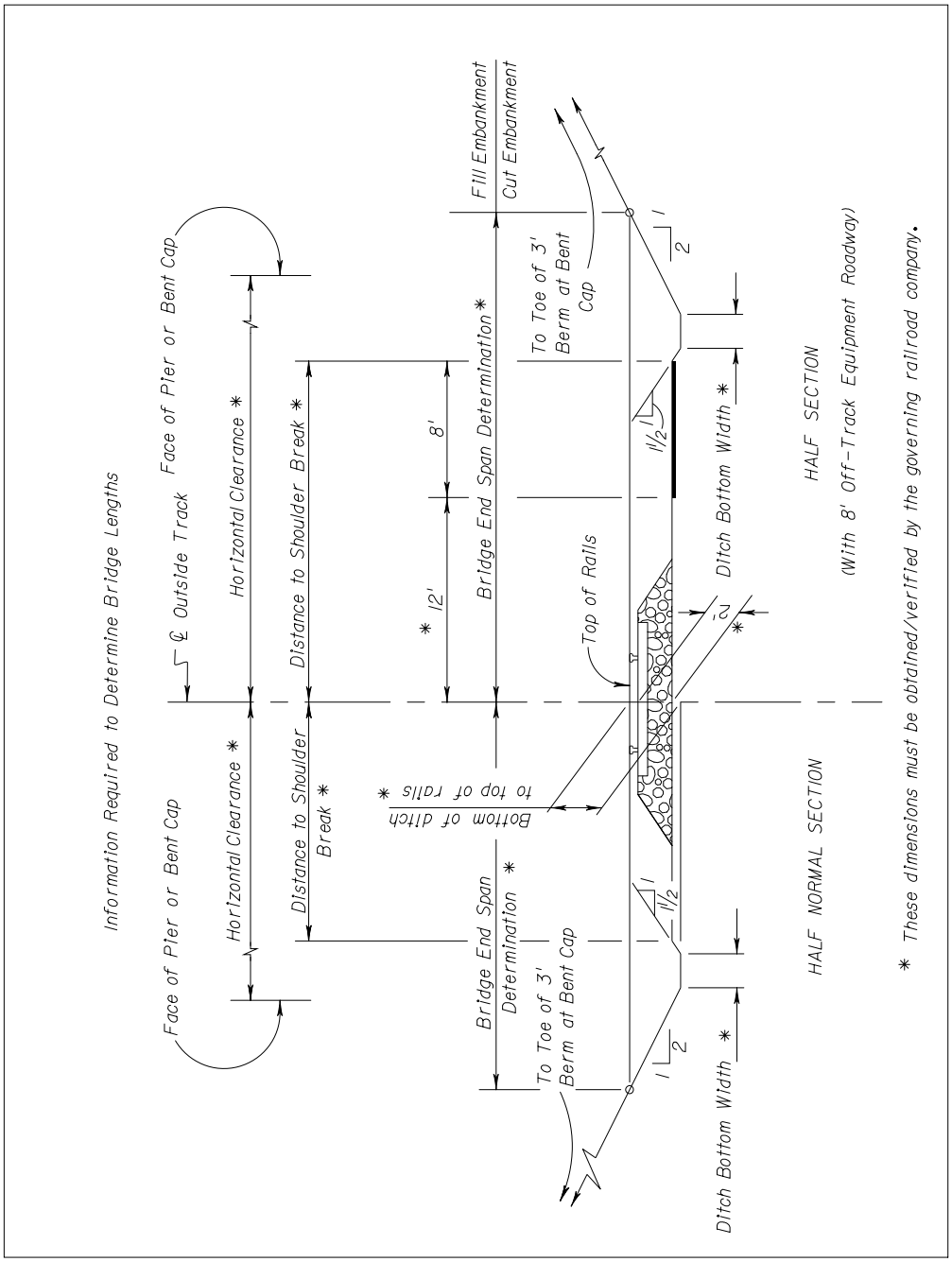
Draft

DC.6 Horizontal Clearance

Horizontal clearances shall be measured in accordance with Figure 7 – 54 Track Section. The governing railroad company occasionally may accept a waiver from normal clearance requirements if justified; i.e., for designs involving widening or replacement of existing overpasses. The Department's District Rail Coordinator should be consulted if such action is being considered for FDOT owned rail corridors. For other rail crossings, coordinate with the owner of the rail corridor.

Draft

Figure 7 – 54 Track Section



Draft

The minimum horizontal clearances measured from the centerline of outermost existing or proposed tracks to the face of pier cap, bent cap, or any other adjacent structure are shown in Table 7 – 3 Horizontal Clearances for Railroads but must be adjusted for certain physical features and obstructions such as track geometry and physical obstructions.

Table 7 – 3 Horizontal Clearances for Railroads

Minimum Clearance Requirements	Normal Section[1]	With 8' Required Clearance for Off-Track[2]	Temporary Falsework Opening
With Crash Walls	18 ft.	22 ft.	10 ft.
Without Crash Walls	25 ft.	25 ft.	N/A

[1] Any proposed structure over the South Florida Rail Corridor shall be designed and constructed to provide a horizontal clear span of a minimum of 100 feet but not less than 25 feet from the center line of the outermost existing or proposed tracks. (See ***Department Topic No. 000-725-003-j: South Florida Rail Corridor Clearance.***)

[2] The additional 8 ft. horizontal clearance for off-track equipment shall be provided only when specifically requested in writing by the railroad.

D~~C~~.6.a Adjustments for Track Geometry

When the track is on a curve, the minimum horizontal clearance shall be increased at a rate of 1.5 inches for each degree of curvature. When the track is superelevated, clearances on the inside of the curve will be increased by 3.5 inches horizontally per inch of superelevation. For extremely short radius curves, the AREMA requirements shall be consulted to assure proper clearance.

D~~C~~.6.b Adjustments for Physical Obstructions

Columns or piles should be kept out of the ditch to prevent obstruction of drainage. Horizontal clearance should be provided to avoid the need for crash walls unless extenuating circumstances dictate otherwise.

Draft

Figure 7 – 54 Track Sections shows horizontal dimensions from the centerline of track to the points of intersection of a horizontal plane at the rail elevation with the embankment slope. These criteria may be used to establish the preliminary bridge length, which normally is also the length of bridge eligible for FHWA participation; however, surrounding topography, hydraulic conditions, and economic or structural considerations may warrant a decrease or an increase of these dimensions. These dimensions must be coordinated with the governing railroad company.

The ***Department's Structures Design Guidelines, Section 2.6.7*** provide additional information on the design of structures over or adjacent to railroad and light rail tracks.

DC.75 Access Control

The general criteria for access control in (***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***) for streets and highways should be maintained in the vicinity of rail-highway grade crossings. Private driveways should not be permitted within 150 feet, nor intersections within 300 feet, of any grade crossing. Index no. 17882, Design Standards should also be considered.

DC.86 Parking

When feasible, Nno parking shall be permitted within the required clear area for the sight distance visibility triangle.

DC.97 Traffic Control Devices

The proper use of adequate advance warning and traffic control devices is essential for all grade crossings. Advance warning should include pavement markings and two or more signs on each approach. Each new crossing should be equipped with train-activated flashing signals.

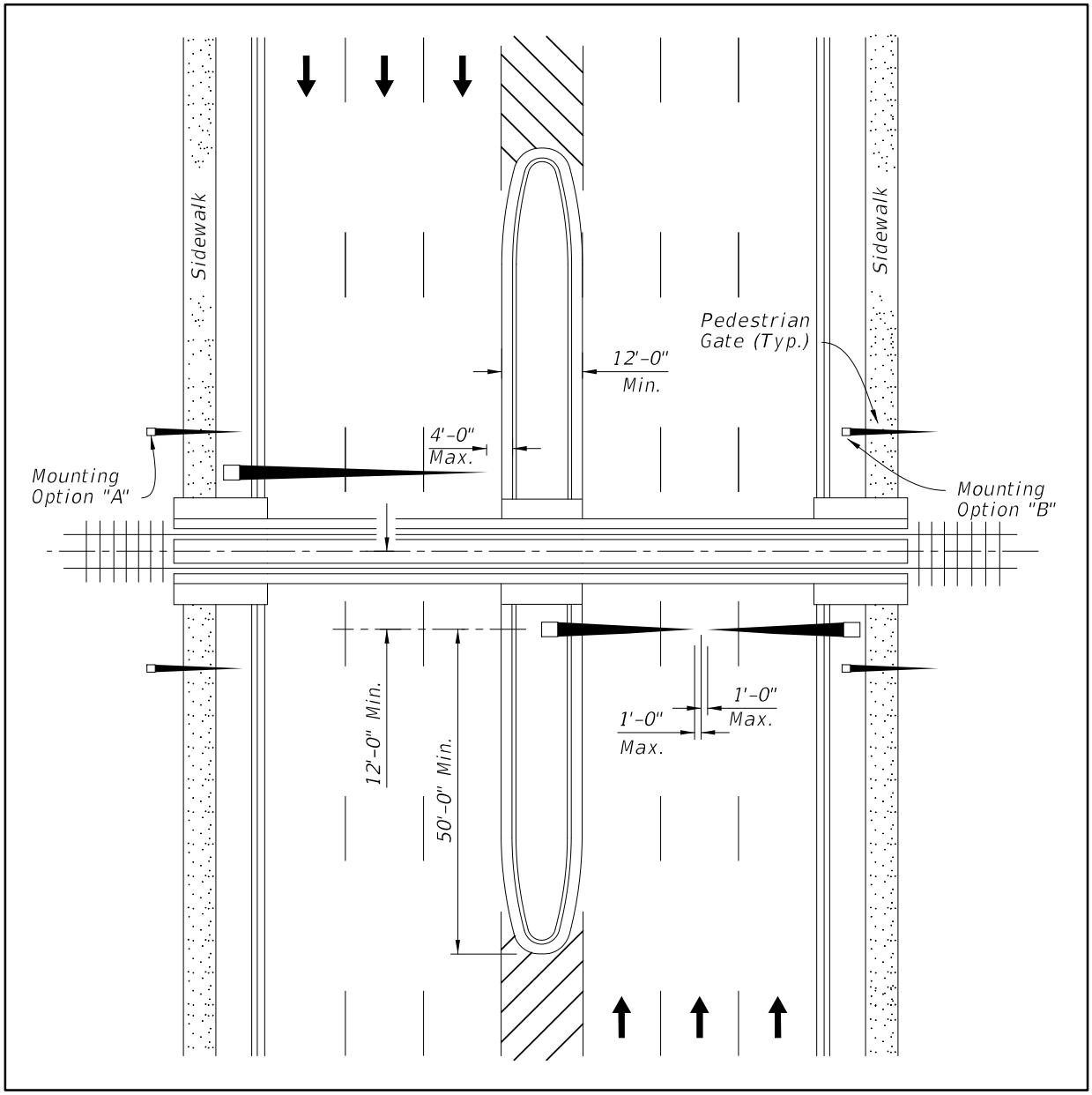
Automatic gGates, when used, should ideally extend across all lanes, but shall at least block one-half of the inside travel lane.. Traffic control devices shall be installed in agreement with the for Streets and Highways. It is desirable to include crossing arms acrossadjacent sidewalks and pedestrian orshared use paths facilities.

Draft

Traffic control devices shall meet the requirements of the ***MUTCD***. See Section E of this chapter for additional requirements for traffic control devices in Quiet Zones. Figure 7 – 65 Median Signal Gates for Multilane Curbed Sections provides an example of gate installation when a median is present.

Draft

Figure 7 – 6~~5~~ Median Signal Gates for Multilane Curbed Sections



Draft

DC.108 Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Surface

Each crossing surface should be compatible with highway user requirements and railroad operations at the site. When installing a new rail-highway crossing or reworking an existing at-grade crossing, welded rail should be placed the entire width from shoulder point to shoulder point. Surfaces should be selected to be as maintenance free as possible.

DC.119 Roadway Lighting

The use of roadway lighting at grade crossings should be considered to provide additional awareness to the driver. Illumination of the tracks can also be a beneficial safety aid.

DC.1210 Crossing Configuration

A Rrecommended layouts for a simple grade crossings areis shown in Figures 7 — 62 Passive Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration (Passive Crossing) and 7 — 7 Active Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration (Active Crossing)2Figures 7 — -762 Passive Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration (Passive Crossing) and 7 — 87 Active Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration (Active Crossing)2. The distance "A" in the Figures is determined by speed and shown in the ***MUTCD, Table 2C – 4. Guidelines for the Advance Placement of Warning Signs***. Although the design of each grade crossing must be "tailored" to fit the existing situation, the principles given in this section should be followed in the design of all crossings. Additional information on the design of rail-highway crossings can be found in tThe Department's ***Design Standards, Index 17881 and 17882***, should also be considered.

Passive rail-highway grade crossings include traffic control devices that provide static messages of warning, guidance, and, in some instances, mandatory action for the driver. *(Source: **FHWA Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook**)*

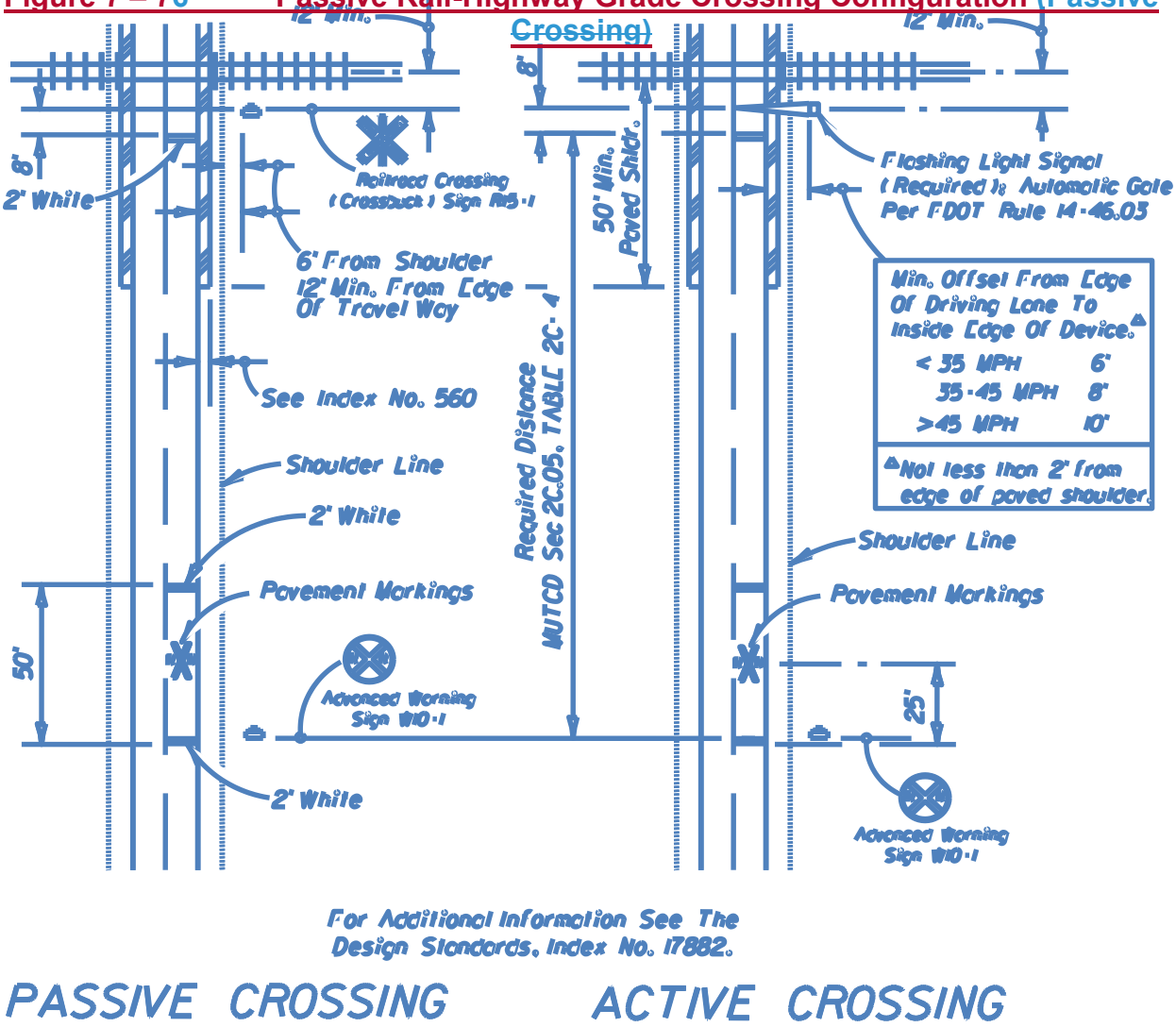
Active rail-highway grade crossings include traffic control devices that give advance notice of the approach of a train. *(Source: **FHWA Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook**).*

Draft

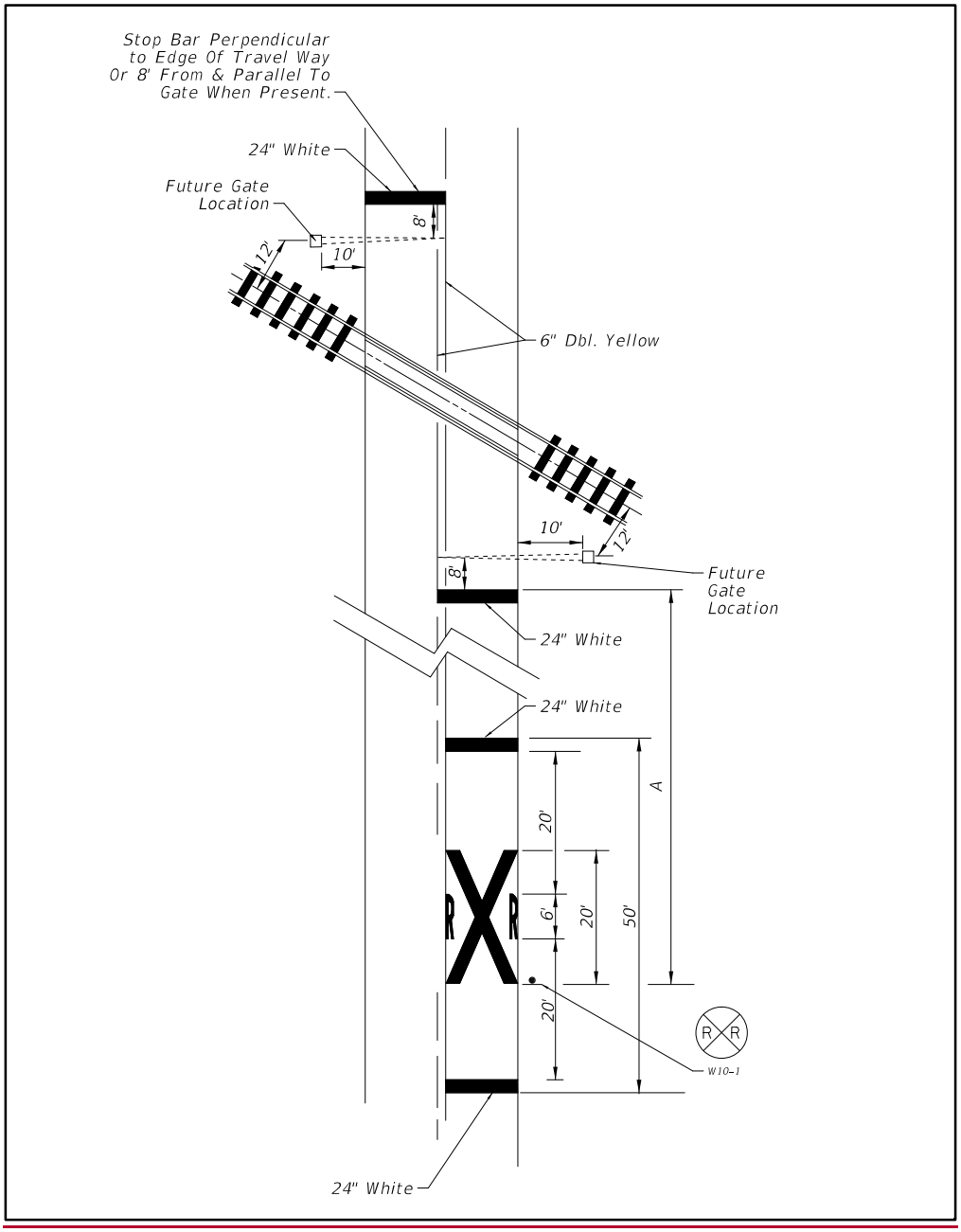
~~FIGURE 7 – 2~~
~~GRADE CROSSING CONFIGURATION~~

~~RURAL~~

Figure 7 – 7~~6~~ Passive Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration ~~(Passive Crossing)~~



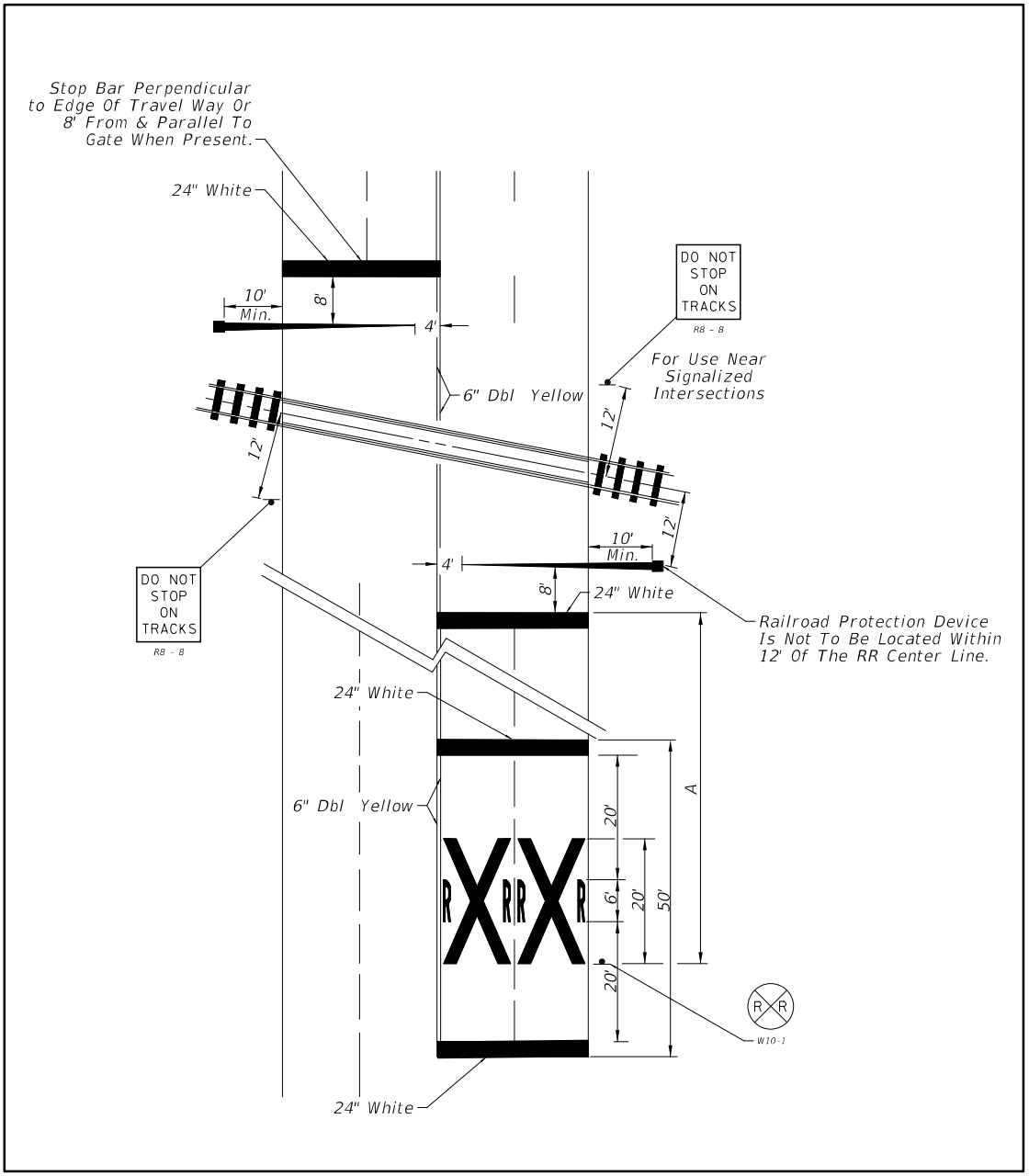
Draft



Note: The distance "A" is determined by speed and shown in the ***MUTCD, Table 2C – 4. Guidelines for the Advance Placement of Warning Signs***.

Draft

Figure 7 – 8~~7~~ Active Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration ~~(Active Crossing)~~



Note: The distance "A" is determined by speed and shown in the ***MUTCD, Table 2C – 4. Guidelines for the Advance Placement of Warning Signs.***

Draft

EC.13 QUIET ZONES

Quiet Zone means a segment of a rail line that includes public rail-highwayl crossings at which locomotive horns are not routinely sounded. The Federal Railroad Administration (FRA) has established guidelines the applying jurisdiction must follow for approval of quiet zones. Applying entities can go to the FRA's website and the ***Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 49, Subtitle B, Chapter II, Part 222*** for further information on the process for approval of Quiet Zones.

Coordinate with the Department's District Rail Coordinator to determine if crossings are located within designated Quiet Zones for State owned rail corridors or crossings of state highways. State owned rail corridors include the ***Central Florida Rail Corridor*** and ***South Florida Rail Corridor***. For other rail crossings, coordinate with the local government who maintains the crossing roadway, sidewalk or shared use path to determine if the location has been approved by the FRA for a Quiet Zone.

For a crossing within a Quiet Zone that requires supplemental safety measures, approved supplemental safety measures include:

- Temporary closure of a public railroad-highway-rail grade crossing;
- Four-quadrant gate systems;
- Gates with medians or channelization devices;
- One way street with gate(s); and
- Permanent closure of a public highway-rail grade crossing.

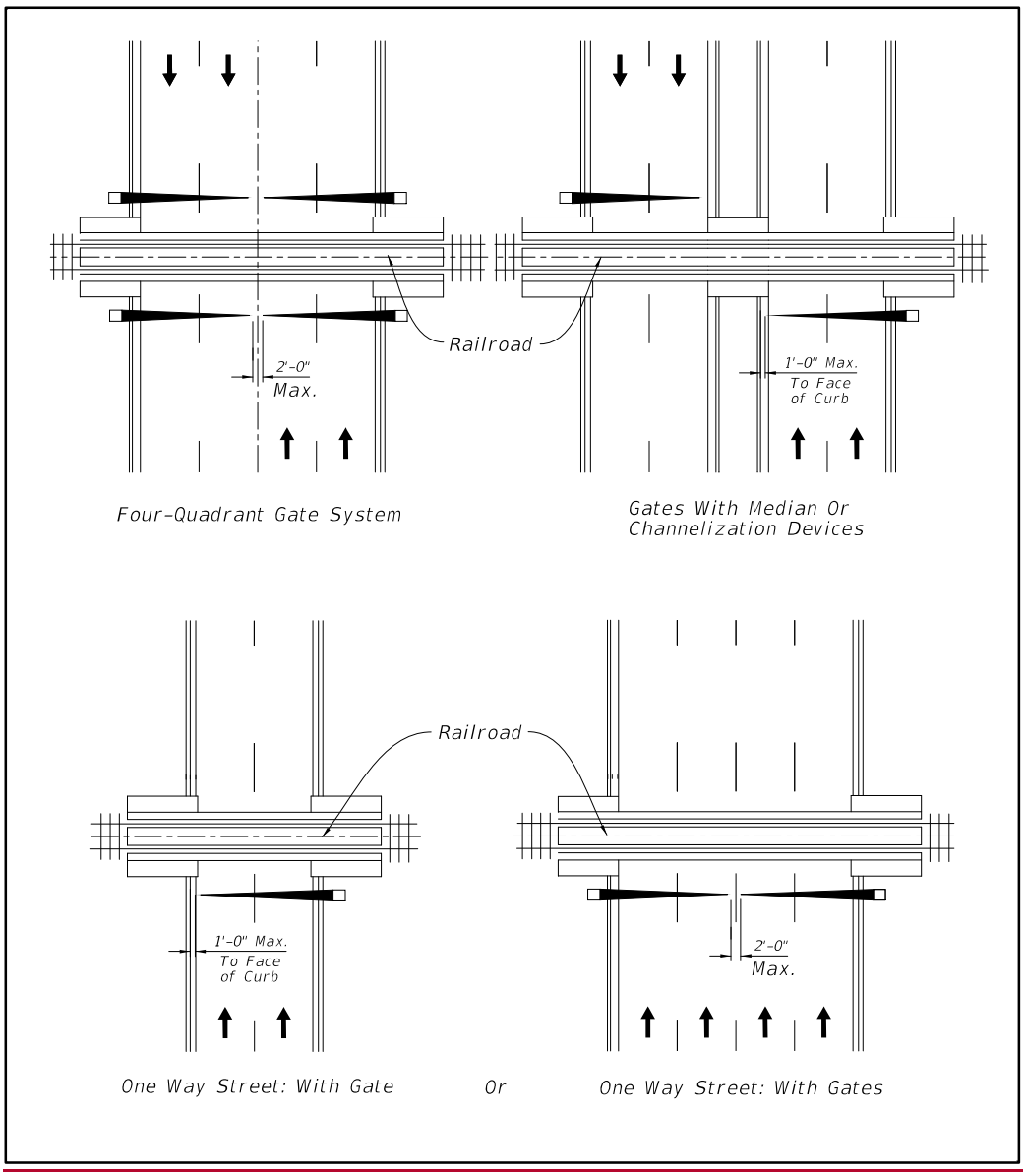
The ***CFR, Title 49, Chapter II, Part 222, Appendix A, Approved Supplemental Safety Measures*** provides additional information on the design of Quiet Zones to meet federal approval. The ***CFR*** also requires that any traffic control device and its application where used as part of a Quiet Zone shall comply with all applicable provisions of the ***MUTCD.*** See ***MUTCD, Part 8, Traffic Control for Railroad and Light Rail Transit Grade Crossings*** for further information. Pedestrian gates, audible device, and detectable warnings are required when a sidewalk or shared use path is present or proposed.

For Quiet Zones that cross state owned rail corridors, the Department's ***Plans Preparation Manual, Volume 1, Chapter 6*** provides additional design criteria.

Draft

Figure 7 – 9~~8~~ Gate Configurations for Quiet Zones illustrates the maximum gap allowed for gates at rail-highway crossings within Quiet Zones, based upon ***CFR, Title 49, Chapter II, Part 222.***

Figure 7 – 9~~8~~ Gate Configuration for Quiet Zones



Draft

FD HIGH SPEED RAIL

The establishment of high-speed rail service is governed by ***49 U.S. Code 26106 – High-Speed Rail Corridor Development***.

The ***High- Speed Rail (HSR) Strategic Plan*** divides potential operations into four categories or generic descriptions:

- HSR – Express. Frequent express service between major population centers 200 - 600 miles apart, with few intermediate stops. Top speeds of at least 150 mph on completely grade-separated, dedicated rights-of-way (with the possible exception of some shared track in terminal areas). Intended to relieve air and highway capacity constraints.

- HSR – Regional. Relatively frequent service between major and moderate population centers 100 - 500 miles apart, with some intermediate stops. Top speeds of 110 - 150 mph, grade-separated, with some dedicated and some shared track (using positive train control (PTC) technology). Intended to relieve highway and, to some extent, air capacity constraints.

- Emerging HSR. Developing corridors of 100 - 500 miles, with strong potential for future HSR Regional and/or Express service. Top speeds of up to 80 - 110 mph on primarily shared track (eventually using PTC technology), with advanced grade crossing protection or separation. Intended to develop the passenger rail market and provide some relief to other modes.

- Conventional Rail. Traditional intercity passenger rail services of more than 100 miles with as little as 1 to as many as 7 - 12 daily frequencies; may or may not have strong potential for future high-speed rail service. Top speeds of up to 79 mph generally on shared track. Intended to provide travel options and to develop the passenger rail market for further development in the future.

Further information on the implementation of high-speed rail service can be found on the Federal Railroad Administration's website ***High Speed Rail Overview***.

Draft

GED MAINTENANCE AND RECONSTRUCTION

The inspection and maintenance of all features of rail-highway grade crossings shall be an integral part of each highway agency's and railroad company's regular maintenance program (***Chapter 10 – Maintenance And Resurfacing***). Items that should be given a high priority in this program include: pavement stability and skid resistance, clear sight distance, and all traffic control and protective devices.

The improvement of all substandard or hazardous conditions at existing grade crossings is extremely important and should be incorporated into the regular highway reconstruction program. The objective of this reconstruction program should be to upgrade each crossing to meet these standards. The priorities for reconstruction should be based upon the guidelines set forth by the Department.

Draft

HF REFERENCES

The following is a list of publications that for further guidance:

- Federal Highway Administration Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook, Revised Second Edition, -August 2007
  http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/xings/com_roaduser/07010/

- Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 49 Transportation, Part 222, Use of Locomotive Horns at Public Highway-Rail Grade Crossings
  http://www.ecfr.gov/cgi-bin/text-idx?tpl=/ecfrbrowse/Title49/49cfr222_main_02.tpl

- The Train Horn Rule and Quiet Zones
  https://www.fra.dot.gov/Page/P0104

- MUTCD, Part 8, Section 8A.07 Quiet Zone Treatments at Highway-Rail Grade CrossingsTraffic Control for Railroad and Light Rail Transit Grade Crossings
  http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/pdfs/2009r1r2/part8.pdf

- The American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA)
  https://www.arema.org/

- Florida Administrative Code, (Rule 14-57: Railroad Safety and Clearance Standards, and Public Railroad-Highway Grade Crossings
  https://www.flrules.org/gateway/RuleNo.asp?title=RAILROAD SAFETY AND CLEARANCE STANDARDS, AND PUBLIC RAILROAD-HIGHWAY GRADE CROSSINGS&ID=14-57.011

- Florida Department of Transportation Rail Contacts
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rail/contacts.shtm

Draft

CHAPTER 8

PEDESTRIAN FACILITIES

A INTRODUCTION 8-1

B TYPES OF PEDESTRIAN FACILITIES 8-1
- B.1 Sidewalks 8-1
- B.2 Shared Use Paths 8-3
- B.3 Shared Streets 8-3
- B.4 Shoulders 8-4

C MINIMIZING CONFLICTS 8-5
- C.1 General Needs 8-5
- C.2 Horizontal Separation 8-6
  - C.2.a General Criteria 8-6
  - C.2.b Buffer Widths 8-7
- C.3 Other Considerations 8-8

D BARRIER SEPARATION 8-9
- D.1 Longitudinal Barriers 8-9
- D.2 Fencing, Pedestrian Channelization Devices or Landscaping 8-11

E GRADE SEPARATION 8-12
- E.1 Overpasses 8-13
- E.2 Underpasses 8-13

F DROP-OFF HAZARDS FOR PEDESTRIANS 8-14

G PEDESTRIAN CROSSINGS 8-16
- G.1 Crosswalks 8-16
  - G.1.a Marked Crosswalks 8-16
  - G.1.b Midblock Crosswalks 8-18
- G.2 Curb Ramps 8-21
- G.3 Controls 8-22
- G.4 Sight Distance 8-22
- G.5 Rail Crossings 8-23

Draft

H LIGHTING 8-23

I REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 8-25

A INTRODUCTION .....

B TYPES OF PEDESTRIAN FACILITIES .....
B.1 Sidewalks 8-1
B.2 Off-Road Paths 8-2
B.3 Shared-Use Paths 8-2
B.4 Shared Streets 8-2
B.5 Shoulders 8-2

C MINIMIZING CONFLICTS 8-2
C.1 General Needs 8-3
C.2 Independent Systems 8-3
C.3 Horizontal Separation 8-4
C.3.a General Criteria 8-4
C.3.b Buffer Widths 8-4
C.4 Other Considerations 8-5

D BARRIER SEPARATION 8-6
D.1 Longitudinal Barriers 8-6
D.2 Fencing or Landscaping 8-6

E VERTICAL SEPARATION 8-7
E.1 Overpasses 8-7
E.2 Underpasses 8-7

F PEDESTRIAN CROSSINGS 8-8
F.1 Crosswalks 8-8
F.1.a Marked Crosswalks 8-8
F.1.b Midblock Crosswalks 8-9
F.1.c Crossing Distance Considerations 8-9
F.2 Curb Ramps 8-9
F.3 Controls 8-10
F.4 Sight Distance 8-10

Draft

~~F.5 Lighting ..... 8-11~~

~~G REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ..... 8-12~~

~~A INTRODUCTION ..... 8-1~~

~~B TYPES OF PEDESTRIAN FACILITIES ..... 8-1~~
~~B.1 Sidewalks ..... 8-1~~
~~B.2 Off-Road Paths ..... 8-2~~
~~B.3 Shared-Use Paths ..... 8-2~~
~~B.4 Shared Streets ..... 8-2~~
~~B.5 Shoulders ..... 8-2~~

~~C MINIMIZING CONFLICTS ..... 8-2~~
~~C.1 General Needs ..... 8-3~~
~~C.2 Independent Systems ..... 8-3~~
~~C.3 Horizontal Separation ..... 8-4~~
~~C.3.a General Criteria ..... 8-4~~
~~C.3.b Buffer Widths ..... 8-4~~
~~C.4 Other Considerations ..... 8-5~~

~~D BARRIER SEPARATION ..... 8-6~~
~~D.1 Longitudinal Barriers ..... 8-6~~
~~D.2 Fencing or Landscaping ..... 8-6~~

~~E VERTICAL SEPARATION ..... 8-7~~
~~E.1 Overpasses ..... 8-7~~
~~E.2 Underpasses ..... 8-7~~

~~F PEDESTRIAN CROSSINGS ..... 8-8~~
~~F.1 Crosswalks ..... 8-8~~
~~F.1.a Marked Crosswalks ..... 8-8~~
~~F.1.b Midblock Crosswalks ..... 8-9~~
~~F.1.c Crossing Distance Considerations ..... 8-9~~
~~F.2 Curb Ramps ..... 8-9~~
~~F.3 Controls ..... 8-10~~
~~F.4 Sight Distance ..... 8-10~~

Draft

F.5 Lighting 8-10

G REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 8-12

FIGURES

Figure 8 – 1 Shoulder Point with Sidewalk 8-7

Figure 8 – 2 Sidewalk with Guardrail 8-10

Figure 8 – 3 Guardrail with Pipe Rail Detail 8-11

Figure 8 – 4 Pedestrian Bridge Typical Section 8-12

Figure 8 – 5 Drop-Off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists 8-15

Figure 8 – 6 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Curb Extension 8-17

Figure 8 – 7 Raised Midblock Crosswalk 8-19

Figure 8 – 8 Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon (PHB) 8-20

Figure 8 – 9 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacons 8-21

Draft

CHAPTER 8

PEDESTRIAN FACILITIES

A INTRODUCTION

Pedestrian facilities shall be given full consideration in the planning and development of transportation facilities, including the incorporation of such facilities into state, regional, and local transportation plans and programs under the assumption that transportation facilities will be used by pedestrians. Pedestrian facilities should be considered in conjunction with the construction, reconstruction, or other significant improvement of any transportation facility. Special emphasis should be given to projects in or within 1 mile of an urban area.

In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41 or 37.43*** and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by ***61G20-4.002*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities. Examples of pedestrian facilities include sidewalks, shared use paths, over and under passes, curb ramps, median refuges, and crosswalks.

Each highway agency responsible for a system of streets and highways should establish and maintain a program for implementing pedestrian facilities, and for maintaining existing pedestrian facilities.

B TYPES OF PEDESTRIAN FACILITIES

There are several ways in which pedestrians can be accommodated in the public right of way.

B.1 Sidewalks

Sidewalks are walkways parallel to the roadway and designed for use by pedestrians. Sidewalks should be provided along both sides of roadways that are in or within one mile of an urban area. If sidewalks are constructed on the approaches to bridges, they should be continued across the structure. If continuous sidewalks are constructed on only one side of the street, pedestrians should be provided access to facilities and services located on the opposite side

of the street. ~~Sidewalks provided on both sides of a street are the preferred pedestrian facility; however, the construction of sidewalks on both sides of the street would not be required in cases where pedestrians would not be expected such as when the roadway parallels a railroad or drainage canal~~. ~~To comply with ADA standards,~~ N~~n~~ewly constructed, reconstructed, or altered sidewalks shall~~must~~ be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.

The minimum width of a sidewalk shall be 5 feet on both curb and gutter and flush shoulder roadways. The minimum separation for a 5-foot sidewalk from the back of curb is 2 feet. If the sidewalk is located adjacent to the curb, the minimum width of sidewalk is 6 feet. For sidewalks not adjacent to the curb, at least a 1-foot wide graded area should be provided on both sides, flush with the sidewalk and having a maximum 1:6 slope. Wider sidewalks should be considered in Central Business Districts and in areas where heavy two-way pedestrian traffic is expected.

A 5-foot wide (minimum) sidewalk that connects a transit stop or facility with an existing sidewalk or shared use path shall be included to comply with ADA accessibility standards. ***Chapter 13 - Transit*** provides illustrations of the connection between the sidewalk and transit facility.

Particular attention shall be given to pedestrian accommodations at the termini of each project. If full accommodations cannot be provided due to the limited scope or phasing of a roadway project or an existing sidewalk is not present at the termini, an extension of the sidewalk to the next appropriate pedestrian crossing or access point should be considered. If pedestrian facilities are provided, they shall be connected with facilities (e.g. sidewalks, shared use path, and crosswalks on the adjoining projects.

For new construction and reconstructed roadways, grades on sidewalks or shared use paths shall not exceed 5%, unless accessible ramps and landings are provided. However, in a roadway right of way, the grade of sidewalks or shared use paths is permitted to equal the general grade established for the adjacent street or highway. There should be enough sidewalk or path cross slope to allow for adequate drainage, however the maximum shall be no more than 2% to comply with ADA requirements.

Where existing physical constraints make it impracticable for altered elements, spaces, or facilities to fully comply with the requirements for new construction, compliance is required to the extent practicable within the scope of the project. Existing physical constraints include, but are not limited to, underlying terrain, right-

of-way availability, underground structures, adjacent developed facilities, drainage, or the presence of a notable natural or historic feature.

Additional information on designing accessible pedestrian facilities is provided by the United States Access Board at the following web site:

http://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/streets-sidewalks/public-rights-of-way/proposed-rights-of-way-guidelines/major-issues

Edge drop-offs should be avoided. When drop-offs cannot be avoided, they should be shielded as discussed in Section F, Drop-Off Hazards for Pedestrians.

For additional information concerning the design of sidewalks, refer to ***Section C.7.d*** of ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

B.2 Off-Road Paths

An off-road path, paved or unpaved, can be an appropriate facility in rural or low-density suburban areas. Paths are usually set back from the road and separated by a green area, ditch, swales or trees.

B.23 Shared- Use Paths

Paths are usually set back from the road and separated by a green area, ditch, swales or trees. Shared use paths are intendeddesigned for the use by both pedestrians and bicyclists and shall be accessiblemeet ADA Standards. For additional information concerning the design of shared-use paths, refer to ***Chapter 9 - Bicycle Facilities***.

B.34 Shared Streets

Shared uses of a street for people walking, bicycling and driving are referred to as shared streets. These are usually specially designed spaces such as pedestrian streets which are used on local urban streets with extremely low vehicle speed.

Draft

B.45 Shoulders

Most Hhighway shoulders are not pedestrian facilities, because they are not intended for frequent use by pedestrians, but doalthough they can accommodate occasional pedestrian trafficusage. Highway shoulders often have cross slopes which exceed 2%; consequently they are not considered or expected to fully meet ADA criteria.

Draft

C MINIMIZING CONFLICTS

The planning and design of new streets and highways shall include provisions that support pedestrian travel and minimize vehicle-pedestrian conflicts. These may include:

- Sidewalks and/or shared use paths parallel to the roadway
- Marked pedestrian crossings
- Detectable warnings at roadway and major driveway connections
- Raised median or refuge islands
- Pedestrian signal features such as pedestrian signal heads and detectorswalk lights and push buttons
- Transit stops and shelters
- Commuter and light rail,
- Bus rapid transit (BRT)

In some situations it may be possible to eliminate a vehicle-pedestrian conflict through. The elimination of vehicle-pedestrian conflict points requires close coordination with the planning of pedestrian facilities pathways and activity outside of the highway right of way. Care should be exercised to ensure the elimination of a given conflict point does not transfer the problem to a different location. A reduction in the number of conflict points allows for economical and effective control and protection at the remaining conflict points, thus providing an efficient method of pedestrian hazard reduction. Procedures for the elimination of vehicle-pedestrian conflicts are given in the subsequent material.

Any effort to minimize or eliminate conflict points must consider the mobility needs of the pedestrian. The desired travel path should not be severed and the number of required crossing points and/or walking distances should not be significantly increased. Some crossingsonflict points shouldwill have to be redesigned rather than eliminated or relocated.

C.1 General Needs

Minimizing vehicle-pedestrian conflicts can be accomplished by providing adequate horizontal, physical, or vertical (primarily for crossings) separation between the roadway and the pedestrian facilitypathways.

Draft

~~C.2 Independent Systems~~

~~One ideal method for eliminating vehicle-pedestrian conflicts is to provide essentially independent systems for vehicular and pedestrian traffic. This requires adequate land use allocation and restriction (CHAPTER 2 - LAND DEVELOPMENT) and the proper layout and design of pedestrian pathways and the surface transportation network.~~

~~Where independent systems are provided, intersections between the two modes (i.e., parking areas) are still required. Due to the small number of these intersections or conflict points, they can be economically developed for safe and efficient operation.~~

C.2~~3~~ Horizontal Separation

The development of independent systems for pedestrian and motor vehicular traffic is the preferred method for providing adequate horizontal separation.

C.2~~3~~.a General Criteria

New sidewalks should be placed as far from the roadway as practical in the following sequence of desirability:

1. As near the right of way line as possible. (ideally, 3 feet of width should be provided behind the sidewalk for above ground utilities)
2. Outside of the clear zone.
3. Sufficiently off-set from the curb to allow for the placement of street trees, signs, utilities, parking meters, benches or other street furniture outside of the sidewalk in urban locations (e.g. town center, business or entertainment district).
4. Five feet from the shoulder point on flush shoulder roadways.
5. At the grass shoulder point of flush shoulder roadways.

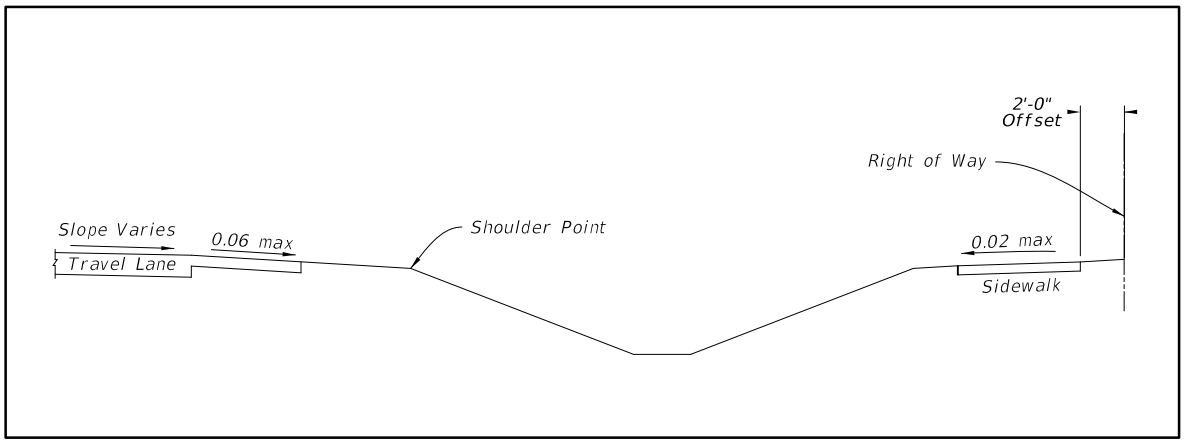
Figure 8 – 1 Shoulder Point with Sidewalk provides an illustration of the location of the shoulder point.

On arterial or collector roadways, sidewalks shall not be constructed contiguous to the roadway pavement, unless a curb or other barrier is

Draft

provided. Nearing intersections, the sidewalk should be transitioned as necessary to provide a more functional crossing location that also meets driver expectation. Further guidance on the placement of stop or yield lines and crosswalks is provided in the ***MUTCD, Part 3.***

Figure 8 – 1 Shoulder Point with Sidewalk



~~Pedestrian pathways should be placed as far from the roadway as practical, as shown by the following criteria, which are given in a sequence of desirability:~~

- ~~Outside of the right of way in a separately dedicated corridor adjacent to the right of way~~
- ~~At or near the right of way line (ideally, 3 feet of width should be provided behind the sidewalk for above ground utilities)~~
- ~~Outside of the minimum required clear zone (CHAPTER 3 GEOMETRIC DESIGN Table 3-12~~
- ~~As far from the edge of the driving lane as practical~~

~~Sidewalk alignments, which are set back from the roadway, should taper for alignment closer to the roadway at intersections. This will allow for coordinated placement of crosswalks and stop bars.~~

C.23.b Buffer Widths

Providing a buffer can improve pedestrian safety and enhance the overall

walking experience. Buffer width is defined as the space between the sidewalk and the edge of traveled way. On-street parking or bike lanes can also act as an additional buffer. ~~When separated from the curb, the minimum separation for a sidewalk from the back of curb is 2 feet.~~ The planting strip or buffer strip should be 6 feet where practical to eliminate the need to narrow or reroute sidewalks around driveways. With this wider buffer strip, the sidewalk is placed far enough back so that the driveway slope does not have to encroach into the sidewalk. ~~Wider sidewalks should be considered in Central Business Districts and in areas where heavy two-way pedestrian traffic is expected.~~

C.34 Other Considerations

When designing urban highways, ~~with substantial pedestrian-vehicle conflict points,~~ the following ~~are~~ measures ~~that~~ may be considered to help ~~reduce these conflicts and~~ increase the safe and efficient operation of the highway~~roadway~~ for pedestrians:

- Use narrower lanes and introduce raised medians to provide pedestrian refuge areas
- Provide pedestrian signal features and detectors
- Prohibit right turn on red
- Control, reduce, or eliminate left and/or right turns
- Prohibit free flow right turn movements
- ~~Prohibit right turn on red~~
- Reduce the number of lanes
- ~~Use narrower lanes and introduce raised medians to provide pedestrian refuge areas~~
- ~~Provide pedestrian signal features~~
- ~~Provide pedestrian grade separations~~

Draft

D BARRIER SEPARATION

Barriers may be used to assist in the separation of motor vehicular and pedestrian traffic.

D.1 Longitudinal Barriers

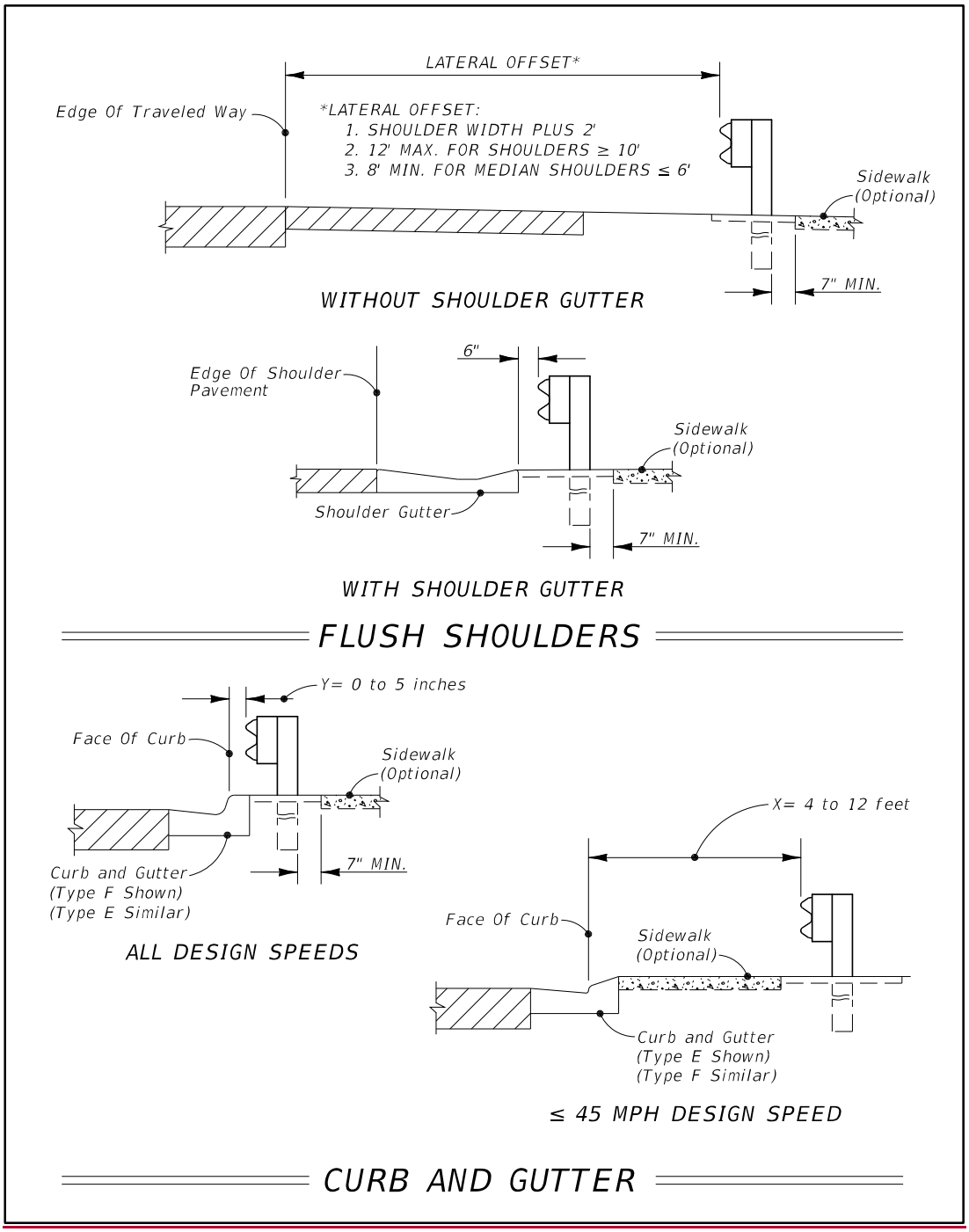
Longitudinal barriers such as guardrails, rigid barriers, and bridge railings are designed primarily to redirect errant vehicles away from roadside hazards. These barriers can also be used to provide valuable protection of pedestrian facilitiespathways from out of control vehicles.

Where adequate horizontal separation is not feasible, or where there is a significant hazard from out of control vehicles, longitudinal barriers may be utilized. If electing to use barriers, special consideration should be made to ensure proper sight distance near driveways and intersections is maintained. Figure 8 – 2 Sidewalk with Guardrail illustrates the correct placement of a sidewalk in conjunction with a guardrail.

When a sidewalk or shared use path is within 4 feet of the back of a guardrail with steel posts, a pipe rail should be installed on the back of the post. For a guardrail with timber posts, the bolt ends should be trimmed flush with the post or recessed. See Figure 8 – 3 Guardrail with Pipe Rail Detail for an illustration of when a pipe rail is needed. Additional information on the design of guardrails adjacent to a sidewalk or shared use path can be found in the ***FDOT Design Standards, Index 400.***

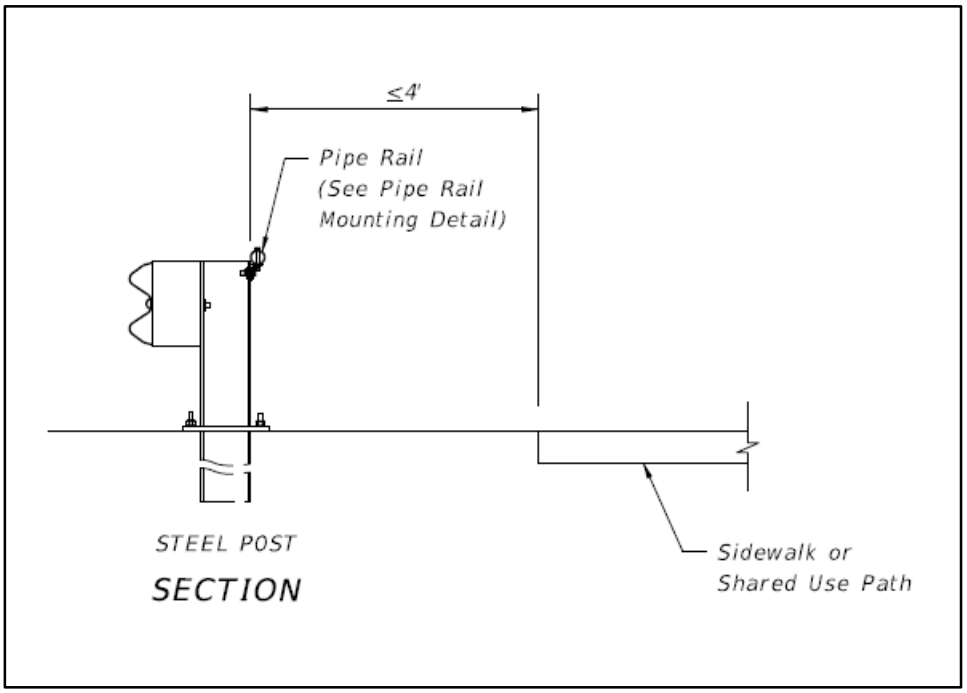
Draft

Figure 8 – 2 Sidewalk with Guardrail



Draft

Figure 8 – 3 Guardrail with Pipe Rail Detail



D.2 Fencing, Pedestrian Channelization Devices or Landscaping

Fencing, pedestrian channelization devices or landscaping may be used to discourage pedestrian access to the roadway and aid in channeling pedestrian traffic to the proper crossing points. These should Fencing or landscaping shall not be considered a substitute for longitudinal barriers, but may be used in conjunction with redirection devices.

Fencing at the right of way line and placement of pedestrian (and bicycle) pathways in separate corridors outside of this line is necessary on limited access facilities.

Draft

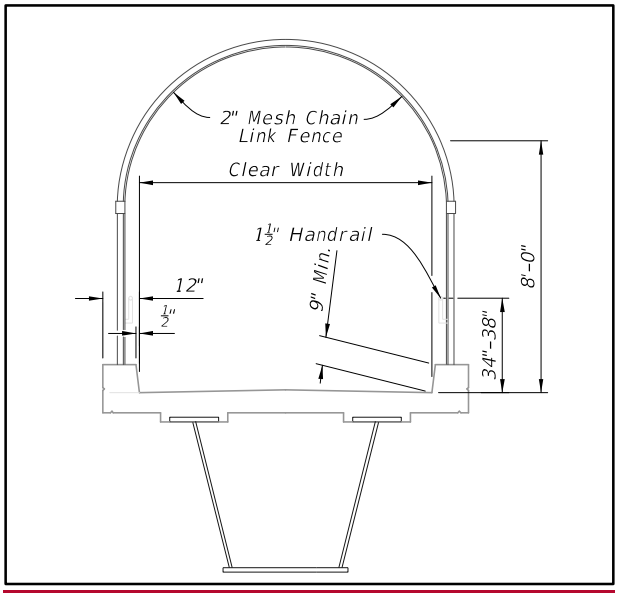
E GRADEVERTICAL SEPARATION

GradeVertical separation may be selectively utilized to support the crossing of large pedestrian volumes across highways where the traffic volume on the roadway is at or near capacity or where speeds are high. Overpasses or underpasses may be justified at major pedestrian generators such as schools, shopping centers, sports and amusement facilities, transit centers, commercial buildings, parks and playgrounds, hospitals, and parking facilities.

The minimum clear width of any stand-alone pedestrian overpass or underpass on a pedestrian accessible route is 8 feet. However, if the contiguous sidewalk or path is greater than 8 feet wide, the clear width of the overpass or underpass should match that width. The minimum clear height of a pedestrian overpass or underpass is 8 feet. See Figure 8 – 4 for an example of a pedestrian bridge typical section.

The ***FDOT Structures Manual - Volume 1 - Structures Design Guidelines (SDG), Section 10*** provide additional guidance on engineered steel and concrete pedestrian bridges.

Figure 8 – 4 Pedestrian Bridge Typical Section



Notes: 1. Pedestrian handrails may be required. See the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities.***

2. Other superstructure configurations may be used provided an 8 ft. minimum headroom is maintained.

Draft

E.1 Overpasses

Pedestrian overpasses are typically bridge structures over major roadways or railroads. Overpasses should either provide elevator access if they are not designed to provide accessible or meet ADA ramps with compliant criteria for maximum slopes, level landings, and handrails on both sides. Bridges over roadways should be covered or screened to reduce the likelihood of objects being dropped or thrown below. The area adjacent to overpasses may be fenced to prevent unsafe crossings and to channel pedestrians to the overpass structure.

E.2 Underpasses

Pedestrian underpasses or tunnels perform the same function as overpasses. Their use is convenient when the roadway is elevated above the surrounding terrain.

Underpasses should be adequately maintained to reduce potential problems in lighting, cleaning, policing, and flooding and to maximize safety. The area adjacent to underpasses may be fenced to prevent unsafe crossings and to channel pedestrians to the underpass structure.

Draft

F DROP-OFF HAZARDS FOR PEDESTRIANS

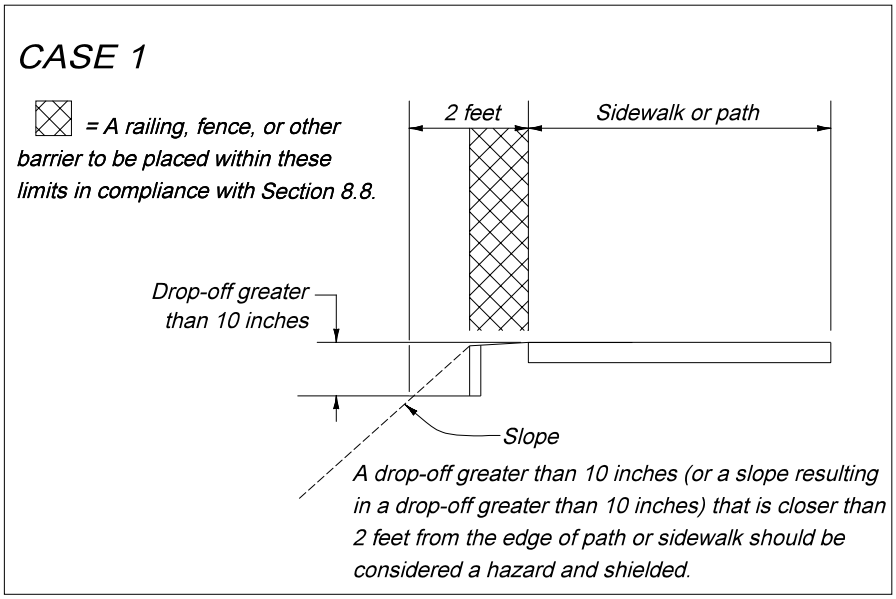
Drop-off hazards are defined as steep or abrupt downward slopes that can be perilous to pedestrians and bicyclists. Consider shielding any drop-off determined to be a hazard. Care should be taken when using Pedestrian/Bicycle Railings or fencing near intersections or driveways as they could obstruct the driver's line of sight. To reduce the need for railings as a sidewalk or shared use path approaches an intersection, consider extending cross drains and side drains to minimize drop-offs.

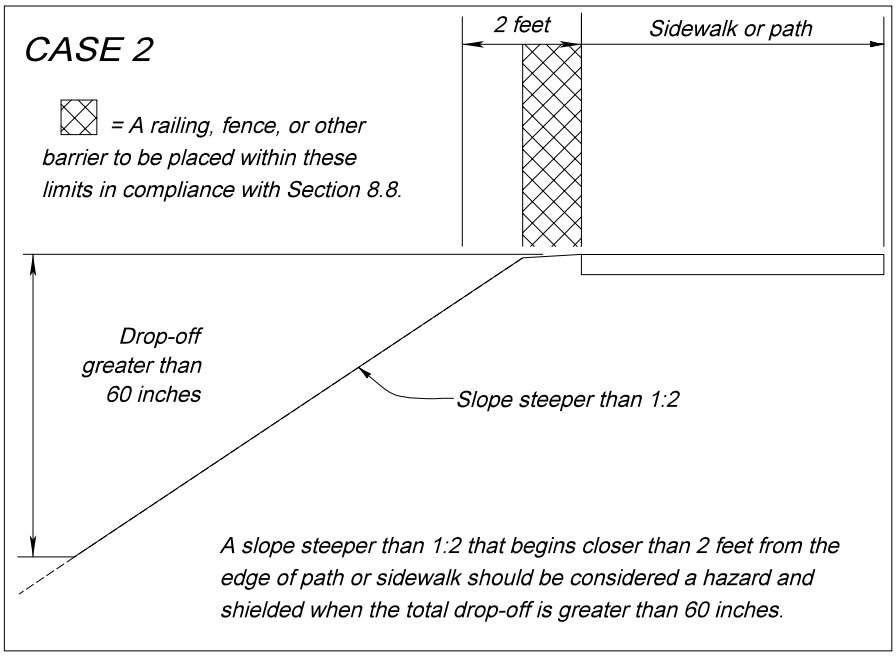
There are two cases that require shielding as shown in Figure 8 – 5 Drop-Off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists. Depending on the depth of the drop-off and severity of the conditions below, shielding may be necessary for cases other than described above.

Railings or fences should be provided for vertical drop-off hazards or where shielding is required. The standard height for a pedestrian/bicycle railing is 42 inches. A 48 inch tall pedestrian/bicycle railing should be used when sidewalk grades are steeper than 5% and bicycle travel is expected. A standard railing is generally intended for urbanized areas, locations attaching to bridge rail or along concrete walkways. Fencing is generally intended for use in rural areas along paths and trails.

Draft

Figure 8 – 5 Drop-Off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists





GF PEDESTRIAN CROSSINGS

The design of pedestrian crossings and parallel pathways within the right of way shall be considered an integral part of the overall design of a street or highway.

The development of protection at any remaining crossings or conflict points must be adequate to achieve a total pedestrian transportation mode that is reasonably safe.

GF.1 Crosswalks

~~Crosswalks serve as the pedestrian right-of-way across streets. A crosswalk is: (a) that part of a roadway at an intersection included within the connections of the lateral lines of the sidewalks on opposite sides of the highway, measured from the curbs or, in the absence of curbs, from the edges of the traversable roadway; (b) any portion of a roadway at an intersection or elsewhere distinctly indicated for pedestrian crossing by lines or other markings on the surface.~~

The design of pedestrian crosswalks should be based on the following requirements:

- Crosswalks should be placed at locations with sufficient~~ample~~ sight distances
- At crossings, the roadway should be free from changes in alignment or cross section
- The entire length of crosswalk shall be visible to drivers at a sufficient distance to allow a stopping maneuver
- Stop bars or yield markings, in conjunction with the appropriate signing, shall be provided at all marked crosswalks
- ~~All~~ C~~c~~rosswalks shall be easily identified and clearly delineated, in accordance with the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)*** ***and*** ~~(~~***Rule 14-15.010, F. A. C.***

GF.1.a Marked Crosswalks

Marked crosswalks are one tool to allow pedestrians to cross the roadway safely. They are often used in combination with other treatments (signs, flashing beacons, curb extensions, pedestrian signals, raised median or refuge islands, and enhanced overhead lighting). Marked crosswalks serve

Draft

two purposes: 1) to inform motorists of the location of a pedestrian crossing so that they have time to lawfully yield to or stop for a crossing pedestrian; and 2) to assure the pedestrian that a legal crosswalk exists at a particular location. See Figure 8 – 6 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Curb Extensions for an example of a pedestrian median refuge with a curb extension.

Figure 8 – 6 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Curb Extension

Urban Street Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials (NACTO)

Marked crosswalks on an uncontrolled leg of an intersection or a mid-block location shall be supplemented with other treatments (such as signing, beacons, curb extensions, raised medians, raised traffic islands, or enhanced overhead lighting) when any of the following conditions exist:

1. Where posted speeds are greater than 40 mph.
2. On a roadway with 4 or more lanes without a raised median or raised traffic island that has an ADT of 12,000 or greater.
3. On a roadway with 4 or more lanes with a raised median or raised traffic island that has or is projected to have (within 5 years) an ADT of 15,000 or greater.

See ***Chapter 6 – Lighting*** for information on illuminating crosswalks and pedestrian facilities.

Additional guidance on marked crosswalks can be found in the ***AASHTO***

Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities and ***FHWA's Safety Effects of Marked vs. Unmarked Crosswalks at Uncontrolled Locations: Executive Summary and Recommended Guidelines.***

Marked crosswalks shall not be installed in an uncontrolled environment (without signals, stop signs, or yield signs) when the posted speeds are greater than 40 mph, or on multilane roads where traffic volumes exceed 12,000 vpd (without raised median) or 15,000 vpd (with raised median).

Marked crosswalks can also be used to create midblock crossings.

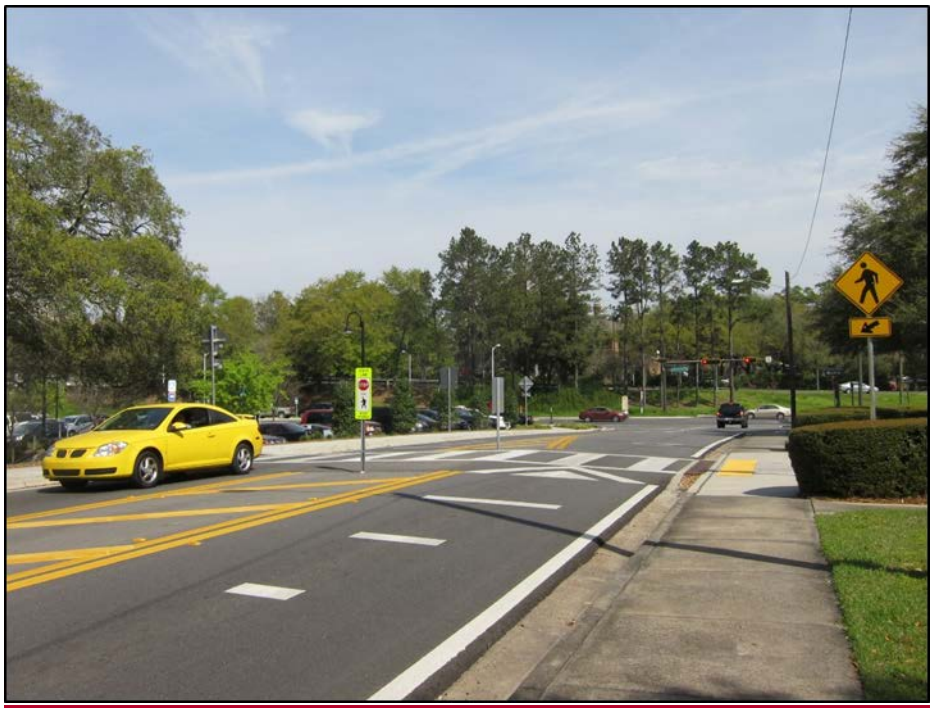
GF.1.b Midblock Crosswalks

Midblock crosswalks facilitate crossings to places that people want to go but that are not well served by the existing sidewalk or path network. These pedestrian crossings commonly occur at schools, parks, museums, waterfronts, and other destinations. Designers should study both existing and projected pedestrian volumes in assessing warrants for midblock crossings to account for latent demand.

Midblock crossings help meet crossing needs within an area. At specific locations where intersections are spaced relatively far apart or substantial pedestrian generators are located between intersections, midblock crossing may be used; however, since midblock crossings are not generally expected by motorists, they should be well signed and marked. Midblock crossings are located according to a number of factors including pedestrian volume, traffic volume, roadway width, traffic speed and type, desired paths for pedestrians, land use, and to accommodate transit connectivity. Midblock crossings should not be installed where sight distance or sight lines are limited for either the motorist or pedestrian.

Midblock crossings should be illuminated, marked, and signedoutfitted with advanced warning signs or warning flasher in accordance with the ***MUTCD***. See Figure 8 – 7 Raised Midblock Crosswalks for an example of a midblock crosswalk.

Figure 8 – 7 Raised Midblock Crosswalk



Suwannee Street, Tallahassee, Florida

Crosswalks may be supplemented with Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons (PHB) or Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacons (RRFBs). Illumination should be evaluated if night-time pedestrian activity is expected. See ***Chapter 6 – Lighting*** for further information.

A PHB is a special type of beacon used to warn and control traffic at an unsignalized location to assist pedestrians in crossing a street or highway at a marked crosswalk. ***Chapter 4F. Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons, MUTCD*** provides additional information regarding their installation. See Figure 8 – 8 Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon for an example of a pedestrian hybrid beacon.

http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/kno_2009r1r2.htm

Draft

Figure 8 – 8 Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon (PHB)

16th Street South, St. Petersburg, Florida

The RRFB uses rectangular-shaped high-intensity LED-based indications, flashes rapidly in a wig-wag "flickering" flash pattern, and is mounted immediately between the crossing sign and the sign's supplemental arrow plaque. Use of PHBs should be limited to locations with the most critical safety concerns, such as pedestrian and school crosswalks across uncontrolled approaches. The ***MUTCD*** provides further information on obtaining ***interim approval*** for the use of RRFBs. See Figure 8 – 9 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacon for an example of a Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacon (RRFB).

http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/res-interim_approvals.htm

Figure 8 – 9 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacons

4th Street North, St. Petersburg, Florida

F.1.c Crossing Distance Considerations

At midblock locations where roadway crossings exceed sixty feet, or where there are a limited number of gaps in traffic, a median or crossing island should be considered and be accessible. When a midblock crossing is provided along a multilane arterial, a median or crossing island is desirable, and consideration should be given to providing supplementary traffic control devices (signs, beacons, signals, etc.).

GF.2 Curb Ramps

Curb ramps provide access between the sidewalk and the street for people who use mobility aids such as wheelchairs orand scooters, people pushing strollers and pulling suitcases, peoplechildren on bicycles, and delivery services. Curb ramps and at grade connections from the sidewalk to the roadway shall include ,

Draft

~~with~~ detectable warnings.~~, meeting the requirements of~~ Curb ramps ~~2006 ADA Standards for Transportation Facilities~~~~Accessible Design and the 2012 Florida Accessibility~~~~Building Code (Rule 9B-7.0042), Chapter 11,~~ shall be provided at all pedestrian crossings, including ~~mid-block~~mid-block crossings and intersections to give persons with disabilities safe access. A level landing is necessary for turning, maneuvering, or bypassing the sloped surface~~.~~

G~~F~~.3 Controls

Signs, signals, and markings should be utilized to provide the necessary information and direction for pedestrians. All directions and regulations should be clear, consistent and logical, and should, at a minimum, conform to the requirements given in the ***MUTCD***. The use of accessible pedestrian signals that include audible and/or vibro-tactile, and visual signals should be considered for pedestrian traffic control and regulation.

G~~F~~.4 Sight Distance

The general requirements for sight distances for the driver are given in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***.

Stopping sight distances greater than the minimum should be provided at all pedestrian crossings. These sight distances should include a clear view of the pedestrian approach pathway for at least 15 feet from the outside travel lane. Where parallel pedestrian pathways are within the roadside recovery area, or where casual pedestrian crossings are likely, the normal required stopping sight distance should also include a clear view of the entire roadside recovery area.

Sight distances shall be based upon a driver's eye and object height as discussed in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***. Due to the small size of some pedestrians (particularly children), they are generally easy to confuse with other background objects.

Parking shall be prohibited where it would interfere with the required sight distance. Particular care should be exercised to ensure ample mutual sight distances are provided at all intersections and driveways.

Draft

G.5 Rail Crossings

Roadways, sidewalks and shared use paths at grade may cross light rail, surface commuter rail, conventional passenger rail, and freight railroads. Special design considerations are needed for these pedestrian intersections so that pedestrians are warned of the crossing and potential presence of a train. In addition, these crossings have specific accessibility requirements relating to surface continuity which must be met. See ***Chapter 7 – Rail Highway Crossings*** for further information. The ***Federal Railroad Administration*** may impose additional requirements for the design and construction of rail crossings.

HF.5 LIGHTINGighting

Lighting of the roadway itself is not only important for the safety of vehicular traffic, but also valuable for the protection of pedestrians. Vehicle headlamps often do not provide sufficient lighting to achieve the required stopping sight distance. Since this requirement is of vital importance at any potential pedestrian crossing point, lighting of the crossing should be considered. Lighting a street or highway is also valuable in improving the pedestrian's view of oncoming vehicles. At intersections or other locations with vehicle turning maneuvers, vehicle headlights may not be readily visible to the pedestrian.

Lighting shall be provided in pedestrian underpasses and should be considered on pedestrian overpasses. All pedestrian lighting shall be vandal resistant. The installation of daytime lighting is warranted when underpass user visibility requirements are not met with sunlight. Pedestrian underpass and overpass lighting should conform to the general lighting requirements given in the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) Roadway Lighting Design Guide.

The general requirements for lighting on streets and highways are given in ***Chapter 6 - Roadway Lighting***. Pathways adjacent to a street or highway should not be illuminated to a level more than twice that of the roadway itself.

In general, lighting should be considered as warranted when it is necessary, at night, to provide the mutual sight distance capabilities described in the preceding ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***. Locations with significant night time pedestrian traffic that should be considered for lighting of the roadway and adjacent pedestrian facilities include the following:

- Any street or highway that meets the warranting criteria given in ***Chapter 6 - Roadway Lighting***
- Streets and highways with speed limits in excess of 40 mph that do not have adequate pedestrian conflict elimination
- Sections of highway with minimal separation of parallel pedestrian pathways
- Intersections, access and decision points, and areas adjacent to changes in alignment or cross sections
- Areas adjacent to pedestrian generators
- Transit Bus stops and other mass transit transfer locations
- Parking facilities
- Entertainment districts, sports/recreation complexes, schools, and other activity centers generating night travel
- Pedestrian crossings
- Any location where improvement of night time sight distance will reduce the hazard of vehicle-pedestrian conflicts

See ***Chapter 6 – Lighting*** for further information on lighting of pedestrian facilities and shared use paths.

Draft

IG REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

1. • Florida Department of Transportation Transit Facility Design
http://www.dot.state.fl.us/transit/Pages/NewTransitFacilitiesDesign.shtm

2. • USDOT/FHWA ADA Standards for Accessible Design (ADAAG)
http://www.access-board.gov/ada-aba/ada-standards-dot.cfmhttp://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/buildings-and-sites/about-the-ada-standards/ada-standards

- 2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities
https://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/transportation/facilities/ada-standards-for-transportation-facilities

- 2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction
https://www.flrules.org/gateway/ruleno.asp?id=61G20-4.002

3. • AASHTO – Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities
https://bookstore.transportation.org/

- AASHTO – Roadway Lighting Design Guide I
https://bookstore.transportation.org/

- NACTO Urban Streets Design Guide
http://nacto.org/usdg

- Designing Walkable Urban Thoroughfares (CNU and ITE)
http://www.cnu.org/streets

- Project Management Handbook (CSS)
http://www.dot.state.fl.us/projectmanagementoffice/Publications/default.shtm

- FHWA Policy Memo for Flexibility in Pedestrian and Bicycle Facility Design
http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/guidance/design_guidance/design_flexibility.cfm

- AASHTO Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) Bridge Design Specifications, 6h Edition, (2012) with 2013 Interim Revisions
https://bookstore.transportation.org/Home.aspx

Draft

- Federal Railroad Administration General Manual - Policies, Procedures, and General Technical Bulletins (July 2014)
  http://www.fra.dot.gov/Elib/Details/L16208

Draft

CHAPTER 9

BICYCLE FACILITIES

A INTRODUCTION 9-1

B ON-STREET FACILITIES 9-2
- B.1 Bicycle Lanes 9-2
- B.2 Buffered Bicycle Lanes 9-19
- B.3 Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay 9-22
- B.4 Green Colored Bicycle Lanes 9-23
- B.5 Paved Shoulders 9-29
- B.6 Wide Outside Lanes 9-29
- B.7 Shared Lane Markings 9-30
- B.8 Bicycles May Use Full Lane Sign 9-36

C SHARED USE PATHS 9-37
- C.1 Width and Clearance 9-37
- C.2 Separation Between Shared Use Paths and Roadways 9-39
- C.3 Design Speed 9-42
- C.4 Horizontal Alignment 9-42
- C.5 Accessibility 9-43
- C.6 Structures 9-43
- C.7 Pavement Markings and Signage 9-44

D RAILROAD CROSSINGS 9-46

E STRUCTURES 9-46

F REFERENCES 9-47

~~A Introduction ..... 9-1~~

~~B On-Street Facilities ..... 9-1~~
- ~~B.1 Bicycle Lanes ..... 9-2~~
- ~~B.2 Paved Shoulders ..... 9-6~~
- ~~B.3 Wide Outside Lanes ..... 9-6~~

Draft

B.4 Shared Lane Markings 9-6

C Shared Use Paths 9-10
C.1 Separation between Shared Use Paths and Roadways 9-10
C.2 Width 9-12
C.3 Horizontal Clearance 9-12
C.4 Vertical Clearance 9-13
C.5 Design Speed 9-13
C.6 Structures 9-13
C.7 Ramp Widths 9-13

D Railroad Crossings 9-13

E Structures 9-14

TABLES

Table 9-1 Lane Widths Urban Multilane or Two-Lane with Curb and Gutter 9-8

Draft

FIGURES

Figure 9 – 1 Minimum Widths for Bicycle Lanes 9-3

Figure 9 – 2 Detail of Bicycle Lane Markings 9-4

Figure 9 – 3 Bicycle Lanes 9-5

Figure 9 – 4 Left Side Bicycle Lanes 9-6

Figure 9 – 5 Example of Obstruction Pavement Markings 9-7

Figure 9 – 6 Bicycle Lane Markings 9-9

Figure 9 – 7 Bicycle Lanes with Separate Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter) 9-10

Figure 9 – 8 Bicycle Lanes with On Street Parking, No Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter) 9-11

Figure 9 – 9 Bicycle Lane with Right Turn Drop Lane (Curb and Gutter) 9-12

Figure 9 – 10 "Tee" Intersection with Bicycle Lane, Separate Right and Left Turn Lanes (Curb and Gutter) 9-13

Figure 9 –11 "Tee" Intersection with Bicycle Lanes, Left Turn Lane and Right Turn Drop Lane (Curb and Gutter) 9-14

Figure 9 – 12 Bicycle Lanes with No Right Turn Lane (Flush Shoulder) 9-15

Figure 9 – 13 Bicycle Lane with Separate Right Turn Lane (Flush Shoulder) 9-16

Figure 9 – 14 Bicycle Lanes with Bus Bay, No Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter) . 9-17

Figure 9 – 15 Bicycle Lanes on Interchange Ramps (Flush Shoulder) 9-18

Figure 9 – 16 Buffered Bicycle Lane Adjacent to On-Street Parking 9-19

Figure 9 – 17 Buffered Bicycle Lane Markings 9-20

Figure 9 – 18 Buffered Bicycle Lane Markings with On-Street Parking 9-21

Figure 9 – 19 Buffered Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay Marking (Curb and Gutter) 9-22

Draft

Figure 9 – 20 Green Bicycle Lane with Separate Right Turn Lane 9-25

Figure 9 – 21 Green Bicycle Lane with Right Turn Drop Lane 9-26

Figure 9 – 22 Green Bicycle Lane with Channelized Right Turn Lane 9-27

Figure 9 – 23 Green Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay 9-28

Figure 9 – 24 Shared Lane Marking 9-30

Figure 9 – 25 Shared Lane Marking Placement (No Designated Parking, Lane Width ≤ 14 Feet) 9-32

Figure 9 – 26 Shared Lane Marking Placement (With On-Street Parking) 9-33

Figure 9 – 27 Sign Placement on Shared Use Paths 9-45

~~Figure 9–1 Minimum Widths for Bicycle Lanes ..... 9-3~~

~~Figure 9-2 Detail of Bicycle Lane Markings ..... 9-4~~

~~Figure 9-3 Bicycle Lanes ..... 9-5~~

~~Figure 9-4 Left Side Bicycle Lanes ..... 9-6~~

~~Figure 9-5 Example of Obstruction Pavement Markings ..... 9-7~~

~~Figure 9-6 Bicycle Lane Markings ..... 9-9~~

~~Figure 9-7 Bicycle Lanes with Separate Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter) ..... 9-10~~

~~Figure 9-8 Bicycle Lanes with On Street Parking, No Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter) ..... 9-11~~

~~Figure 9-9 Bicycle Lane with Right Turn Drop Lane (Curb and Gutter) ..... 9-12~~

~~Figure 9-10 "Tee" Intersection with Bicycle Lane, Separate Right and Left Turn Lanes (Curb and Gutter) ..... 9-13~~

~~Figure 9-11 ....."Tee" Intersection with Bicycle Lanes, Left Turn Lane and Right Turn Drop Lane (Curb and Gutter) ..... 9-14~~

Draft

~~Figure 9-12 Bicycle Lanes with No Right Turn Lane (Flush Shoulder) ..... 9-15~~

~~Figure 9-13 Bicycle Lane Markings with Right Turn Lane (Flush Shoulder) ..... 9-16~~

~~Figure 9-14 Bicycle Lanes with Separate Right Turn Lane (Flush Shoulder) ..... 9-17~~

~~Figure 9-15 Bicycle Lanes with Bus Bay, No Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter) . 9-18~~

~~Figure 9-16 Bicycle Lanes on Interchange Ramps (Flush Shoulder) ..... 9-19~~

~~Figure 9-17 Buffered Bicycle Lane Adjacent to On-Street Parking ..... 9-20~~

~~Figure 9-18 Buffered Bicycle Lane Markings ..... 9-21~~

~~Figure 9-19 Buffered Bicycle Lane Markings with On-Street Parking ..... 9-22~~

~~Figure 9-20 Buffered Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay Marking (Curb and Gutter) ..... 9-23~~

~~Figure 9-21 Green Bicycle Lane with Separate Right Turn Lane ..... 9-26~~

~~Figure 9-22 Green Bicycle Lane with Right Turn Drop Lane ..... 9-27~~

~~Figure 9-23 Green Bicycle Lane with Channelized Right Turn Lane ..... 9-28~~

~~Figure 9-24 Green Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay ..... 9-29~~

~~Figure 9-25 Shared Lane Marking ..... 9-31~~

~~Figure 9-26 Shared Lane Marking Placement (No Designated Parking) (Lane Width ≤ 14 Feet) ..... 9-33~~

~~Figure 9-27 Shared Lane Marking Placement (With On-Street Parking) ..... 9-34~~

~~Figure 9-28 Sign Placement on Shared Use Paths ..... 9-46~~

Draft

CHAPTER 9

BICYCLE FACILITIES

A INTRODUCTION

Bicycle facilities should be given full consideration in the planning and development of transportation facilities, including the incorporation of such facilities into state, regional, and local transportation plans and programs under the assumption that transportation facilities will be used by cyclists. Bicycle facilities should be established in conjunction with the construction, reconstruction, or other change of any transportation facility and special emphasis should be given to projects in or within 1 mile of an urban area. The provision for bicycle facilities is also desirable for resurfacing, restoration & rehabilitation (RRR) projects.

Bicycle and pedestrian facilities are not required to be established:

1. Where their establishment would be contrary to public safety;
2. When the cost would be excessively disproportionate to the need or probable use; or~~and~~
3. Where other available means or factors indicate an absence of need.

Appropriately designed and located bicycle facilities play an important role in supporting bicycle travel. Bicyclists should be considered in all phases of transportation planning, design, construction and maintenance activities. Particular emphasis should be given to new construction, reconstruction, intersection improvement, and transit projects. Bicycle facilities can include bicycle lanes, paved shoulders, wide curb lanes, shared lanes, shared use paths, and bicycle parking facilities.

In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41*** or ***37.43*** and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by ***61G20-4.002*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of facilities such as shared use paths and structures that include provisions for pedestrians.

Draft

B ON-STREET FACILITIES

Provisions for bicycle traffic should be incorporated in the original roadway design. All roadways, except where bicycle use is prohibited by law, should be designed, constructed and maintained under the assumption they will be used by bicyclists. Roadway conditions should be favorable for bicycling, with smooth pavement and limited changes in elevation along edge lines. Drainage inlets and utility covers that cannot be moved out of the travel way should be designed flush with grade, well seated, and make use of bicycle-compatible grates and covers.

Railroad grade crossings on a diagonal can cause steering difficulties for bicyclists. Crossings for bicycle facilities should be perpendicular to the rail. This can be accomplished with a widened shoulder or bicycle lane, or separate path. Consideration should be given to improving the smoothness of the crossing and reducing the width and depth of the flangeway opening. Flangeway fillers can be used on heavy rail lines to minimize the size of the opening adjacent to the rail.

~~In addition,~~ B~~b~~icycle lanes, paved shoulders, wide curb lanes, or shared lanes~~-~~ should be included to the fullest extent feasible. The appropriate selection of a bicycle facility depends on many factors, including motor vehicle and bicycle traffic characteristics, adjacent land use and expected growth patterns. All new or reconstructed arterial and collector roadways, in and within one mile of an urban area, should include bicycle lanes.

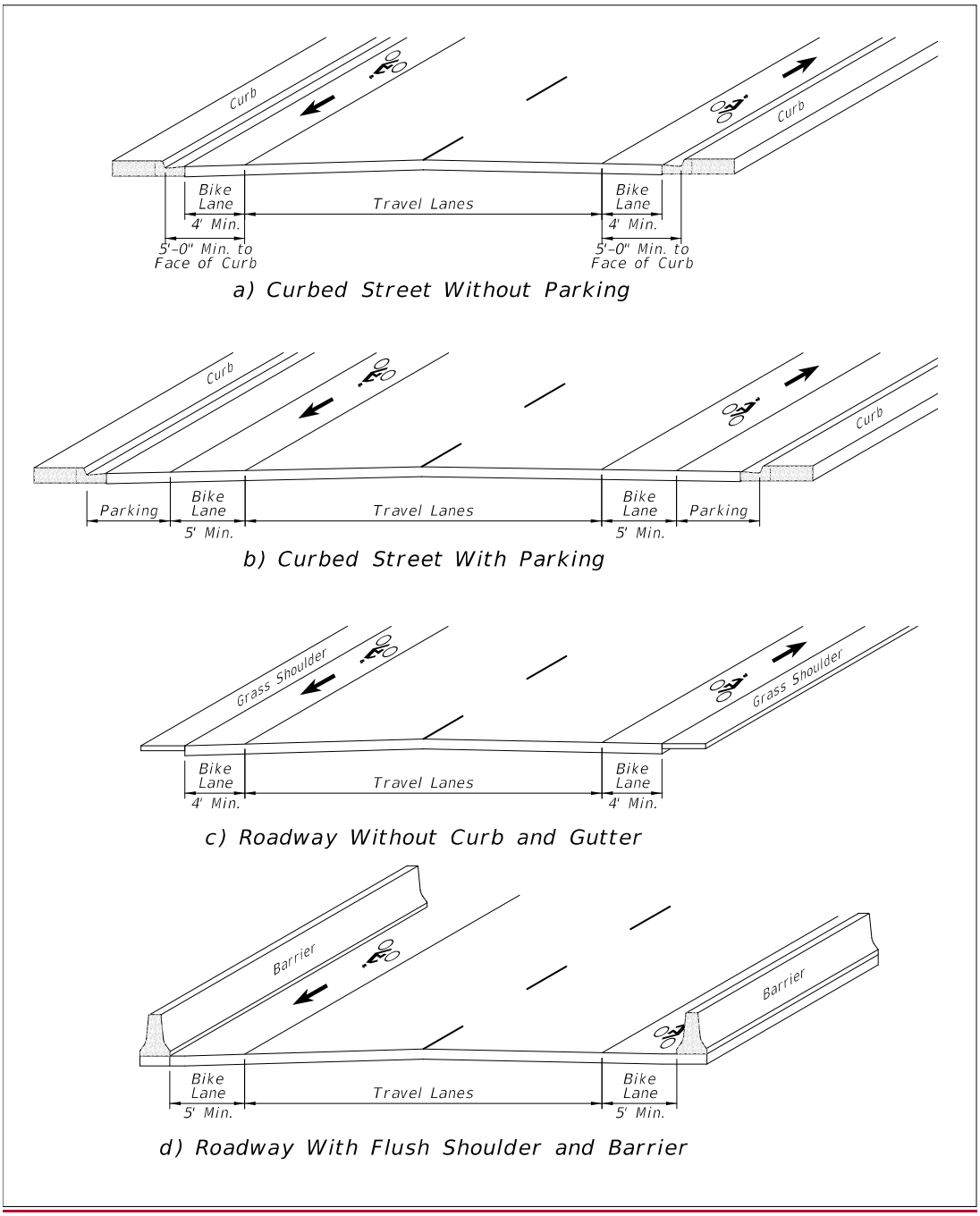
Rumble strips used in a traffic lane to alert operators to conditions ahead (e.g. stop signs, traffic signals or curves) should provide clear space (free of rumble strips) for bicyclists. This clear space may be a paved shoulder or if no paved shoulder is present, a minimum of 1.5 feet of clear space at the outermost portion of the lane.

B.1 Bicycle Lanes

Bicycle lanes delineate available roadway space for preferential use by bicyclists; providing more predictable movements by motorists and bicyclists. Bicycle lanes also help increase the total capacity of highways carrying mixed bicycle and motor vehicle traffic. Bicycle lanes shall have a minimum functional width of 4 feet. At least 1 foot additional width is needed when the bicycle lane is adjacent to a curb or other barrier, on-street parking is present, there is substantial truck traffic (>10%), or posted speeds exceed 50 mph. Minimum b~~B~~icycle lane widths are illustrated in Figure 9 – 1 Minimum Widths for Bicycle Lanes. The 4-foot bicycle lane shown in the flush shoulder typical section assumes the grass portion of the shoulder provides emergency maneuvering room.

Draft

Figure 9 – 1 Minimum Widths for Bicycle Lanes



Draft

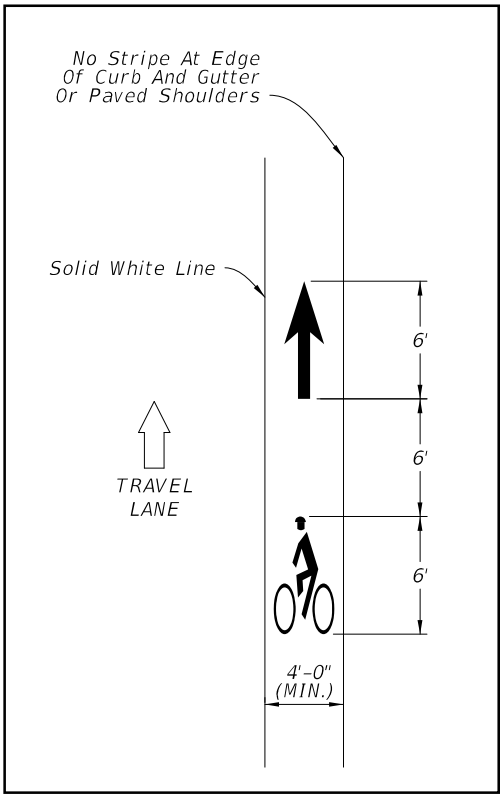
Bicycle lanes are one-way facilities and carry bicycle traffic in the same direction as the adjacent motor vehicle traffic. A bicycle lane should be delineated from the travel lanes with a solid white line and be marked with the bicycle symbol and arrow as shown in Figure 9 – 2 Detail of Bicycle Lane Markings. The dimensions for each pavement marking is 72" long, separated by 72".Bicycle lane markings should be placed immediately after major intersections and driveways, with a maximum spacing of 600 feet in urban areas and 1,320 feet in rural areas.

The recommended placement of bicycle lane markings is:

a) At the beginning of a bicycle lane, on the far side of major intersections, and prior to and within the bicycle lane between a through lane and turn lane.

b) Along the roadway as needed to provide a maximum spacing of 1,320 for posted speeds less than or equal to 45 mph, 2,640 feet for a posted speed of 50 mph or greater.

Figure 9 – 2 Detail of Bicycle Lane Markings



Draft

If used, bike lane signs and plaques should be placed in advance of the upstream end of the bicycle lane, at the downstream end of the bicycle lane, and at periodic intervals based upon prevailing speed of bicycle and other traffic, block length, and distances from adjacent intersections, and other considerations. They should only be used in conjunction with marked bicycle lanes. Bike lane signs are not required.

Figure 9 – 3 Bicycle Lanes

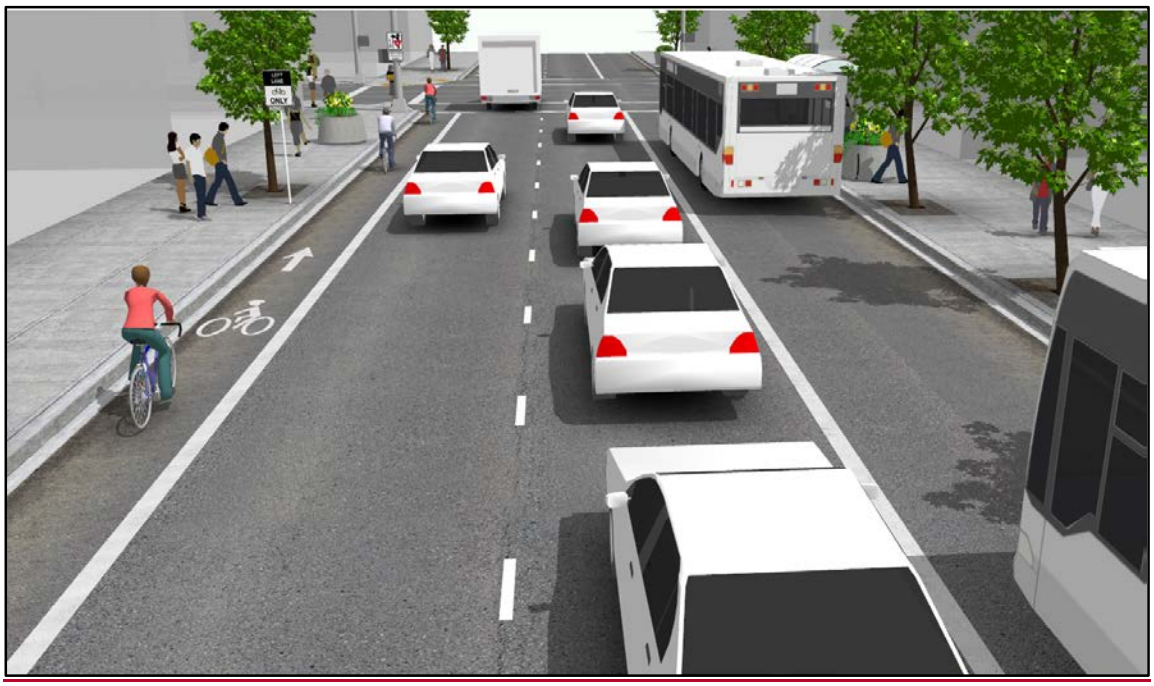
NACTO Urban Bikeway Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials

A through bicycle lane shall not be positioned to the right of a right turn only lane or to the left of a left turn only lane. For new construction, reconstruction, and traffic operations projects, where bicycle lanes are provided between the through lane and right turn lane, bus bay or parking lane they shall be a minimum of 5 feet wide. For bicycle lanes adjacent to parking lanes, if the parking volume is substantial or the turnover is high a width of 6-7 feet is desirable to avoid opening vehicle doors.~~n additional 1-2 feet of width should be provided for the bicycle lane where right of way is adequate.~~

Draft

On one-way streets, bicycle lanes should generally be placed on the right side of the street. A bicycle lane on the left side of the street can be considered when a bicycle lane on the left will substantially decrease the number of conflicts, such as those caused by frequent bus traffic, heavy right turning movements, high-turnover parking lanes, or if there are a significant number of left turning bicyclists. See Figure 9 – 4 Left Side Bicycle Lanes for an illustration.

Figure 9 – 4 Left Side Bicycle Lanes



NACTO Urban Bikeway Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials

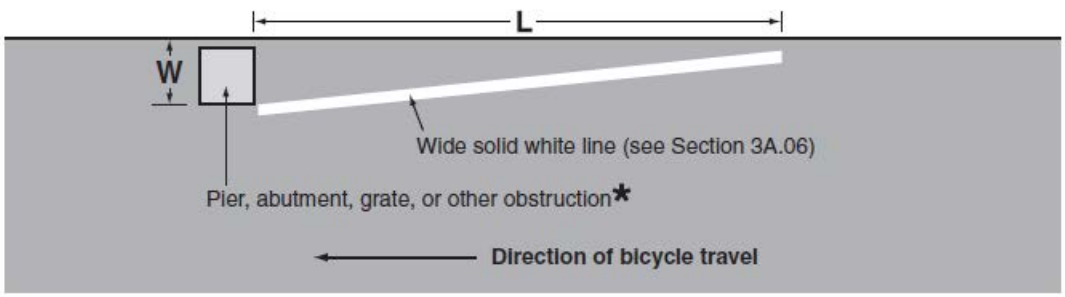
Bicycle lanes shall not be provided on the circular roadway of a roundabout, and shall be transitioned prior to the roundabout in accordance with the MUTCD.

Existing drainage inlets, grates and utility covers shall be evaluated as to whether they present an obstruction to bicyclists, and should be relocated out of the cyclist's path of travel. Drainage inlets, grates and utility covers to remain should be adjusted to be flush with the adjacent pavement surface, utilize a grate recommended for bicycle travel, and may be marked as an obstruction.

Draft

Advance warning of an inlet or other obstruction may be provided as shown in the ***MUTCD, Part 9***. Additional information on appropriate drainage inlets in or near pedestrian and bicycle facilities can be found in the ***Florida Dept. of Transportation's Drainage Manual, Section 3.7.4 Inlet Placement, January 2016 Edition.***

Figure 9 – 5 Example of Obstruction Pavement Markings



B - Obstruction at edge of path or roadway

L = WS, where W is the offset in feet and S is bicycle approach speed in mph

* Provide an additional foot of offset for a raised obstruction and use the formula L = (W+1) S for the taper length

~~Bicycle lanes should provide bicycle-compatible drainage inlet grates, smooth pavement surfaces, and~~ Ttraffic signals should be responsive to bicyclists. Regular maintenance of bicycle lanes should be a ~~top~~ priority, since bicyclists are unable to use a lane with potholes, debris or broken glass.

In conjunction with resurfacing projects, the roadway width shall be redistributed when practical to provide for bicycle facilities. The types of bicycle facilities considered for implementation include buffered bicycle lanes, bicycle lanes, wide outside lanes, and shared lanes. Lane widths on urban multilane roadways and two-lane curb and gutter roadways may be reduced as shown in Table 9 – 1 Lane Widths to provide for bicycle facilities.

Draft

Table 9 – 1 Lane Widths
Urban Multilane or Two-Lane with Curb and Gutter

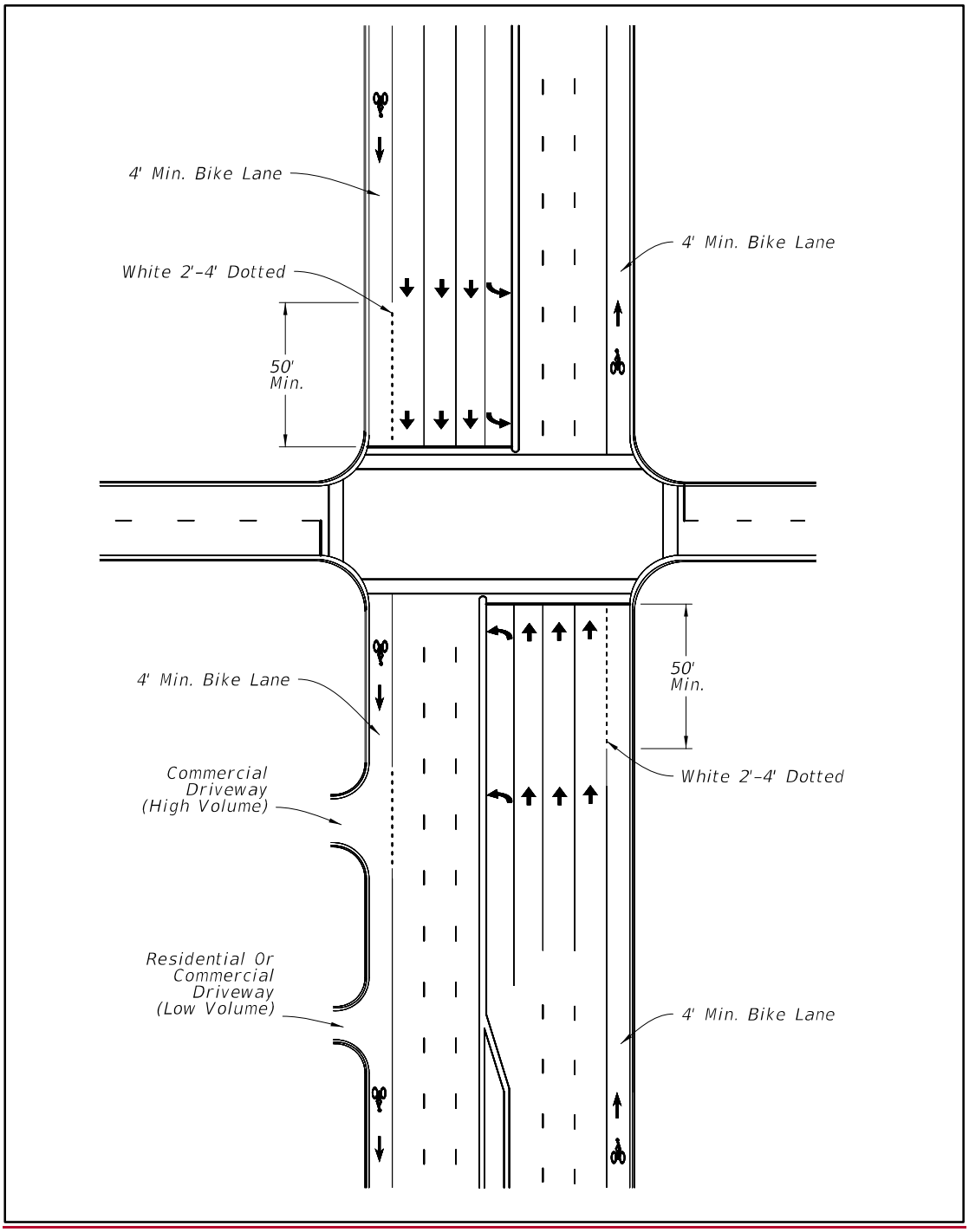
Design Year AADT	Design Speed (mph)	Minimum Thru Lane (ft.)	Minimum Turn Lane (ft.)	Minimum Parking Lane (ft.)
ALL	ALL	10 [1]	9 [2]	7 [3]

1. 11 ft. where either of the following conditions exist:
   a) Trucks are >10% of Design Year Traffic.
   b) Design Speed is 40 mph or greater.
2. 10 ft. for 2 Way Left Turn Lanes.
3. A minimum width of 7 ft. measured from face of curb may be left in place. Otherwise provide 8 ft. minimum, measured from face of curb.

~~The combined minimum width of a travel lane and a bicycle lane is 14 feet. Bicycle lanes shall not be provided on the circular roadway of a roundabout, and shall be transitioned prior to the roundabout in accordance with the MUTCD.~~Various configurations of bicycle lanes on curb and gutter and flush shoulder typical sections are illustrated in Figures 9 – 6 to 9 – 23~~7xx14~~.

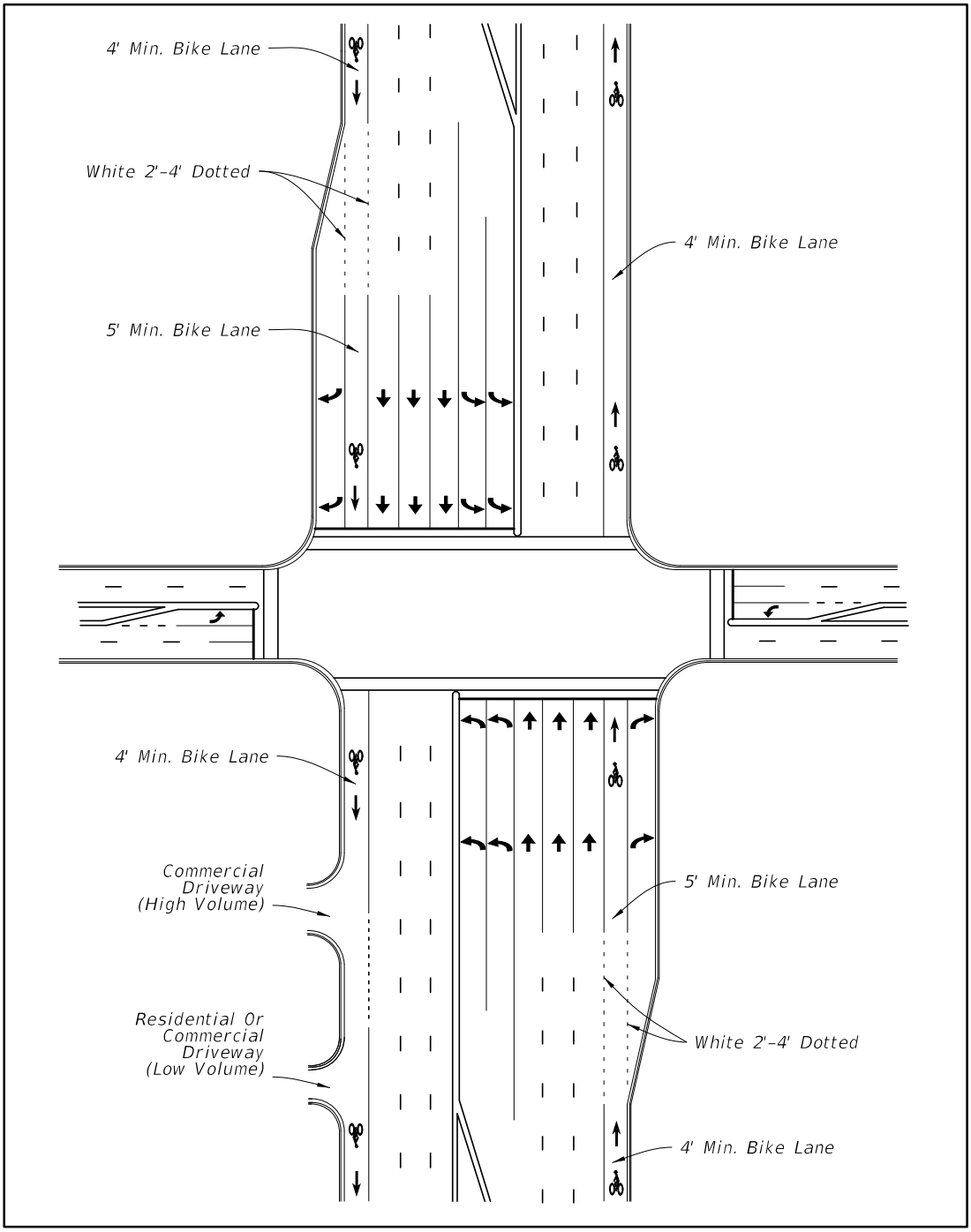
Draft

Figure 9 – 6 Bicycle Lane Markings



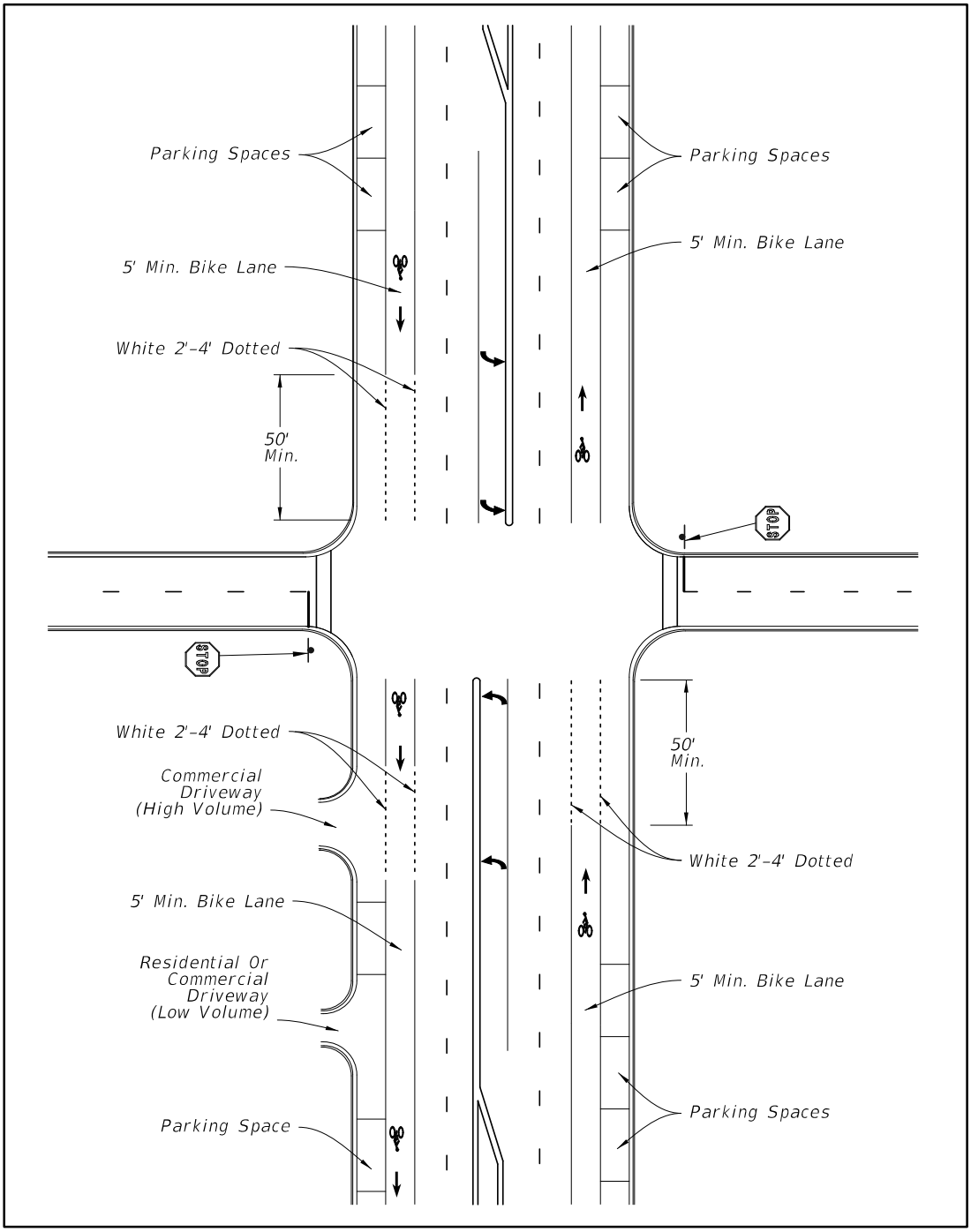
Draft

Figure 9 – 7 ~~6~~ Bicycle Lanes with Separate Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter ~~Typical Section~~)



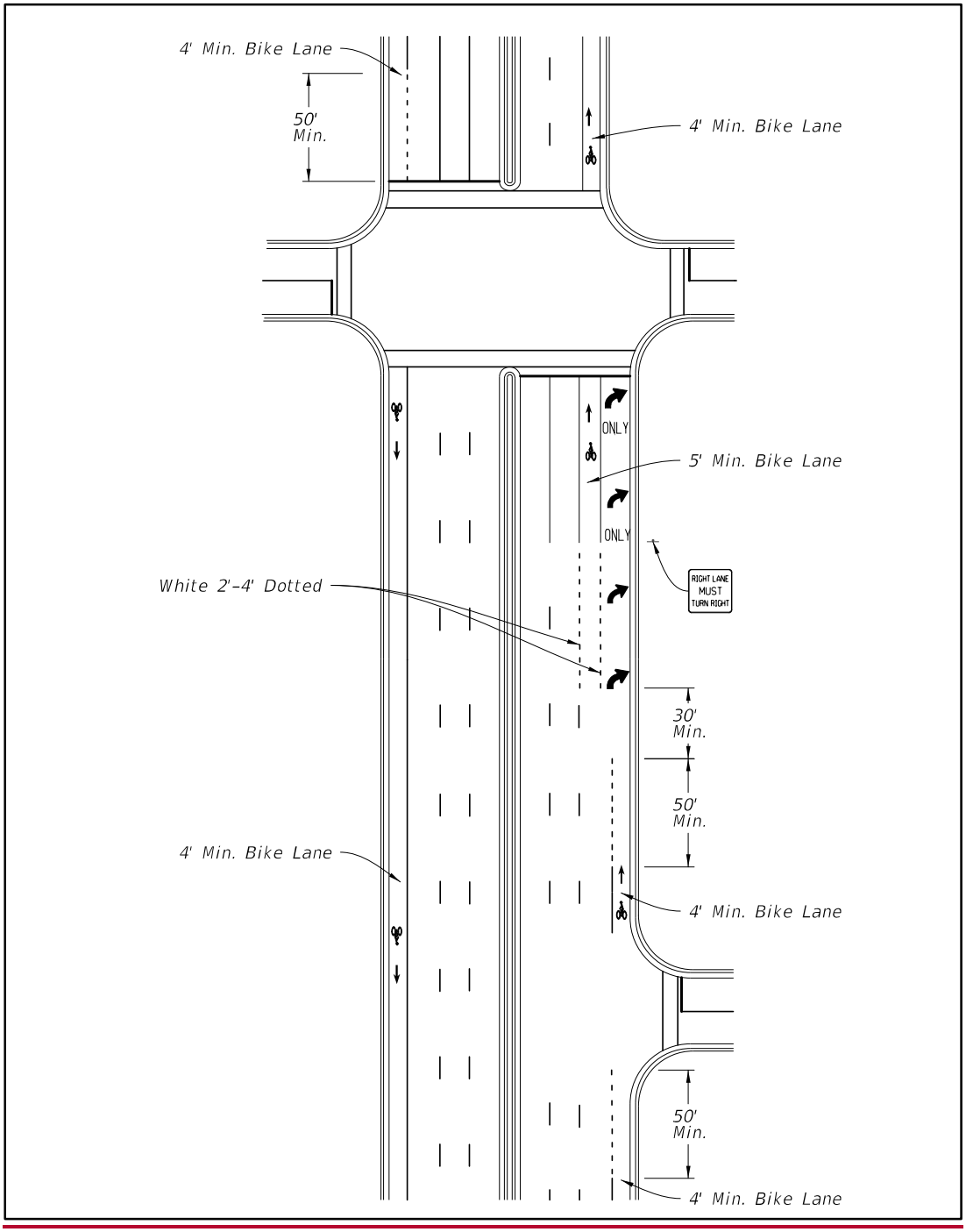
Draft

Figure 9 – 8 Bicycle Lanes with On Street Parking, No Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter)



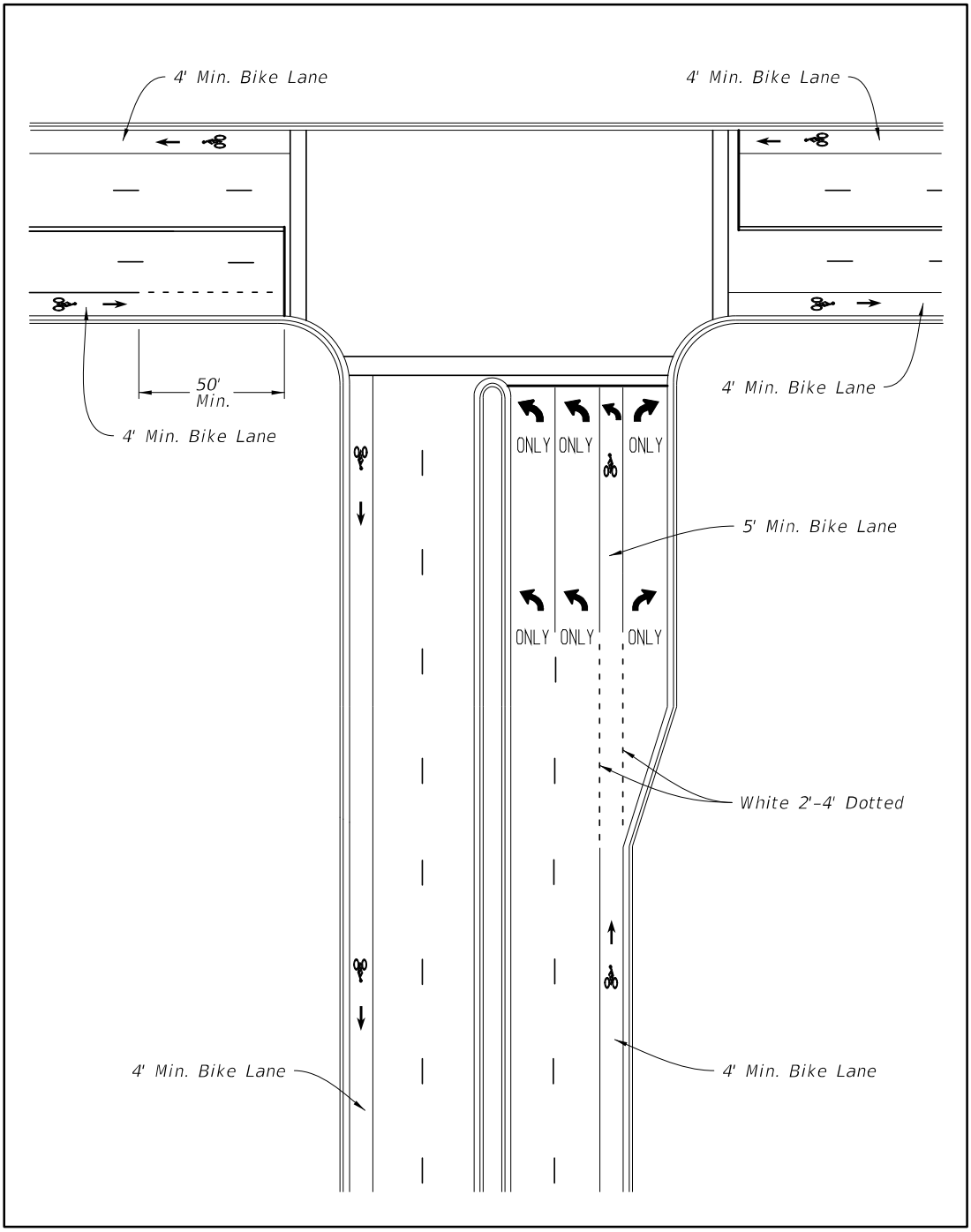
Draft

Figure 9 – 9 Bicycle Lane with Right Turn Drop Lane (Curb and Gutter)



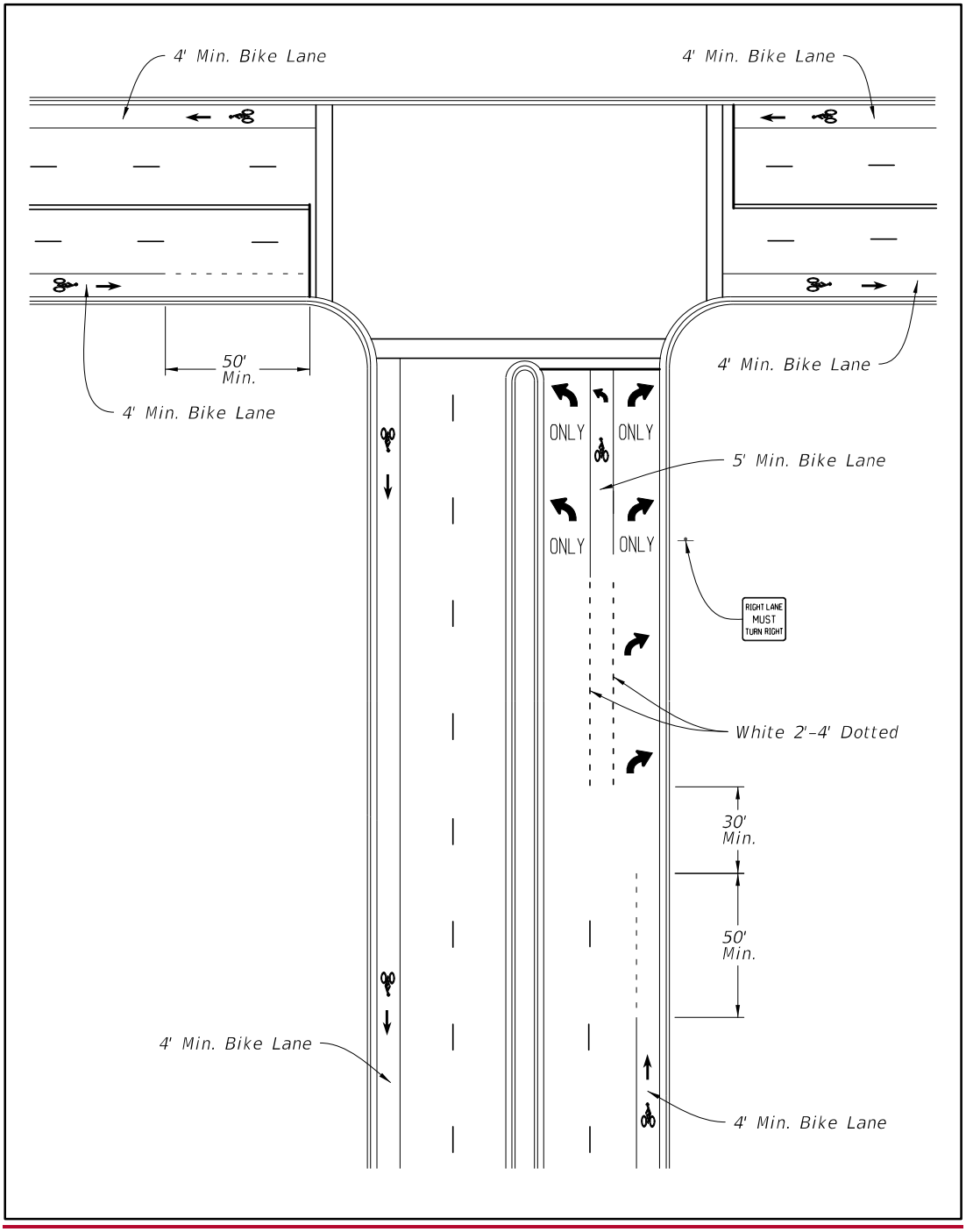
Draft

Figure 9 – 10 "Tee" Intersection with Bicycle Lane, Separate Right and Left Turn Lanes (Curb and Gutter)



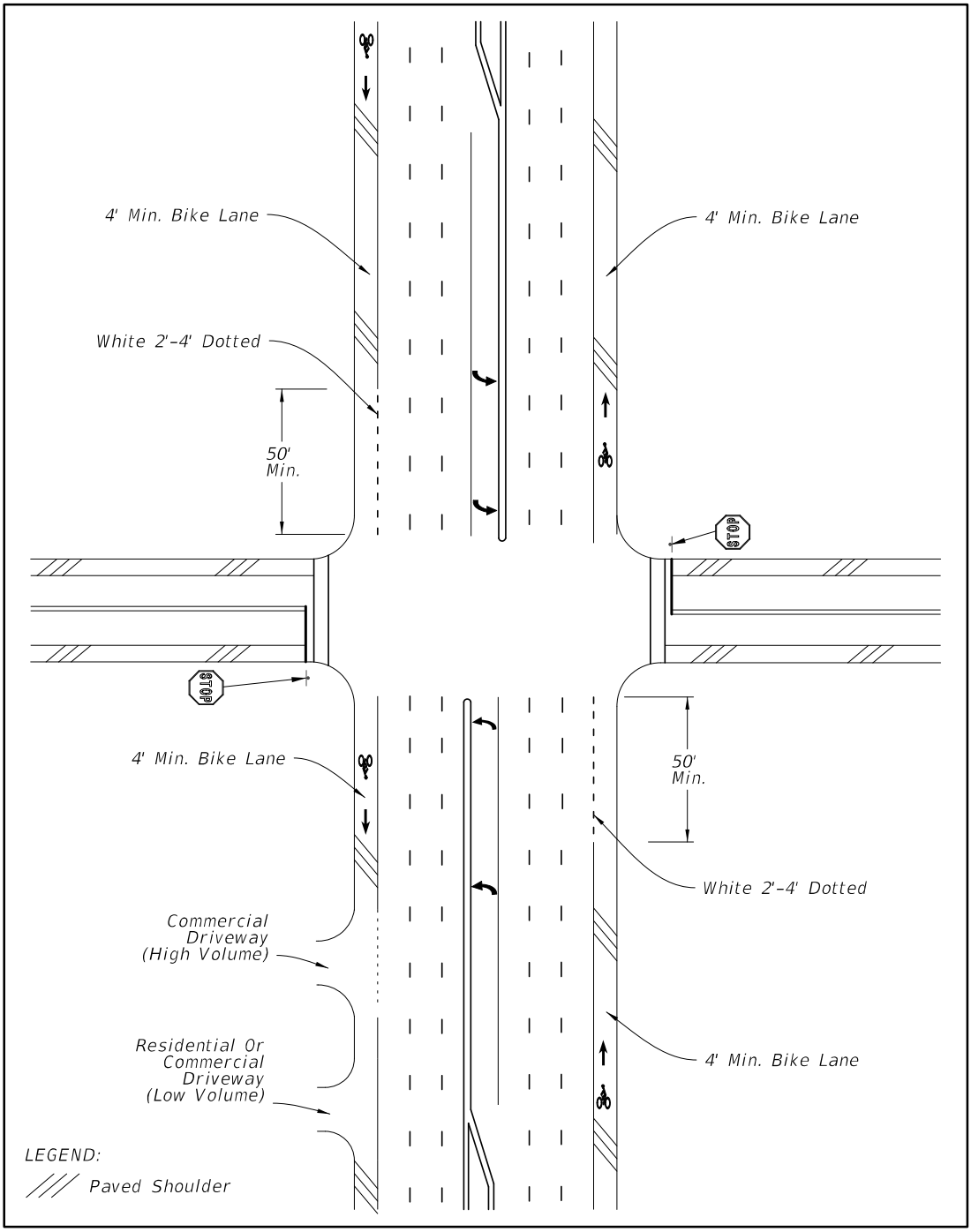
Draft

Figure 9 –11 "Tee" Intersection with Bicycle Lanes, Left Turn Lane and Right Turn Drop Lane (Curb and Gutter)



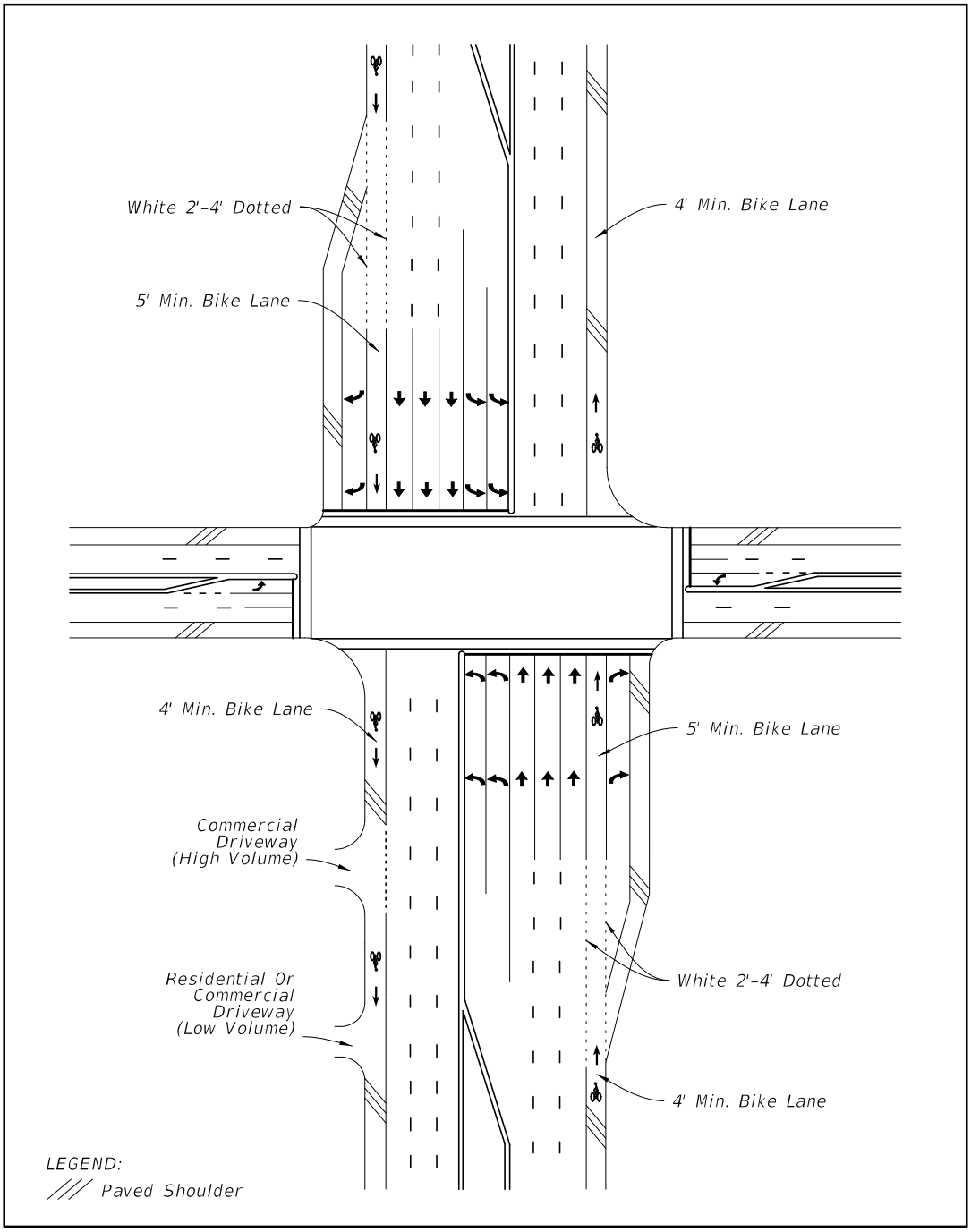
Draft

Figure 9 – 12 Bicycle Lanes with No Right Turn Lane (Flush Shoulder)



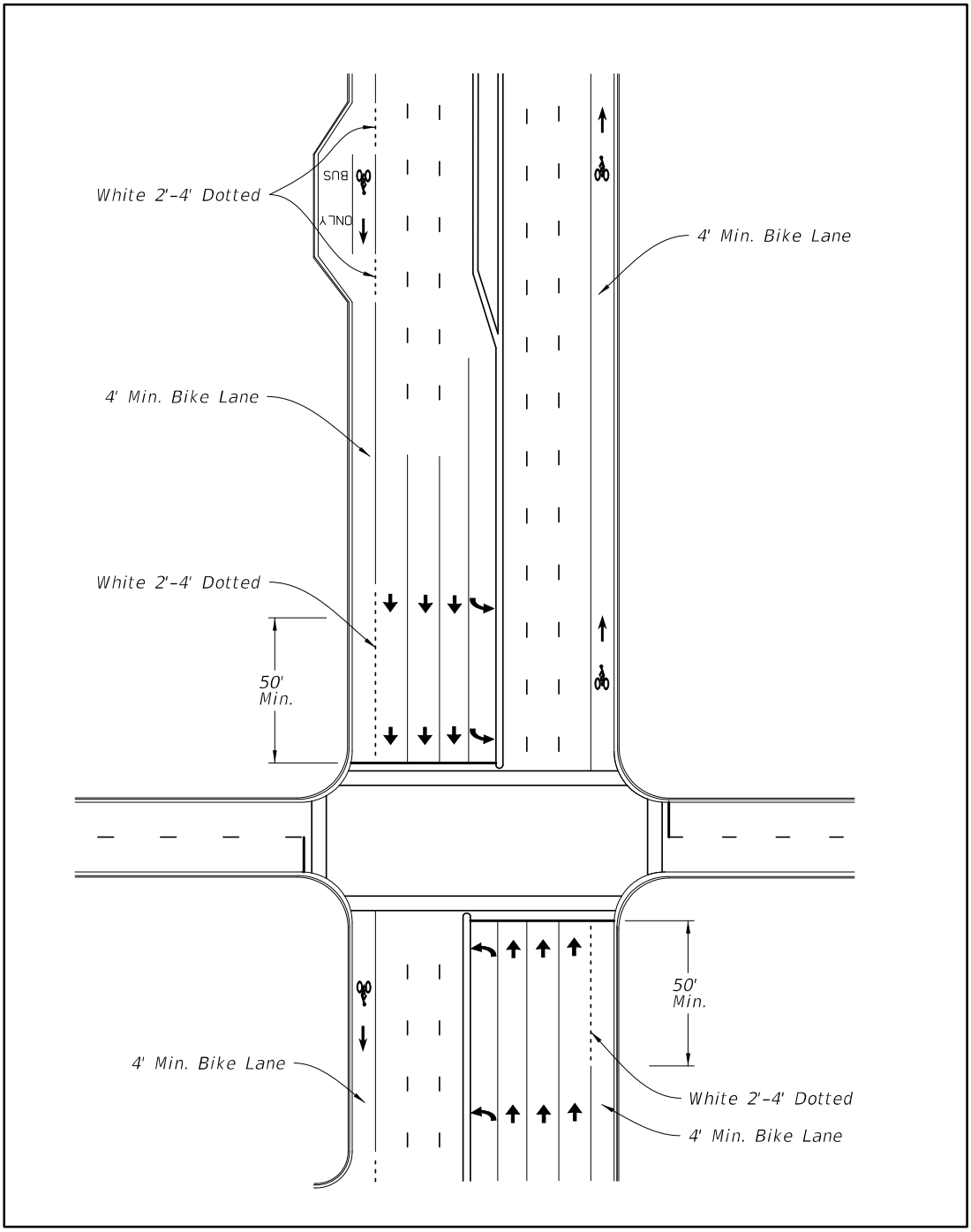
Draft

Figure 9 – 13 Bicycle Lane with Separate Right Turn Lane (Flush Shoulder)



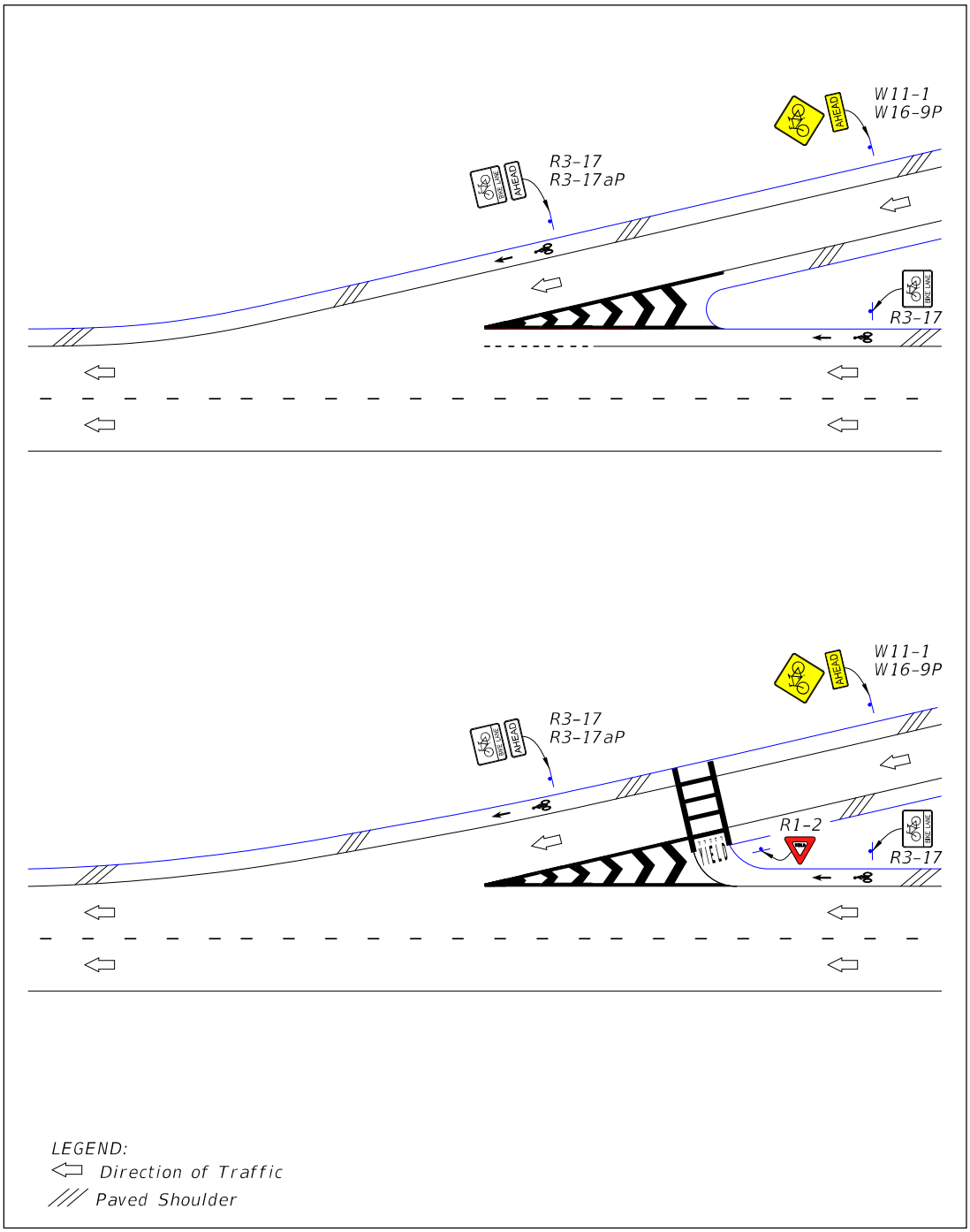
Draft

Figure 9 – 14 Bicycle Lanes with Bus Bay, No Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter)



Draft

Figure 9 – 15 Bicycle Lanes on Interchange Ramps (Flush Shoulder)



Draft

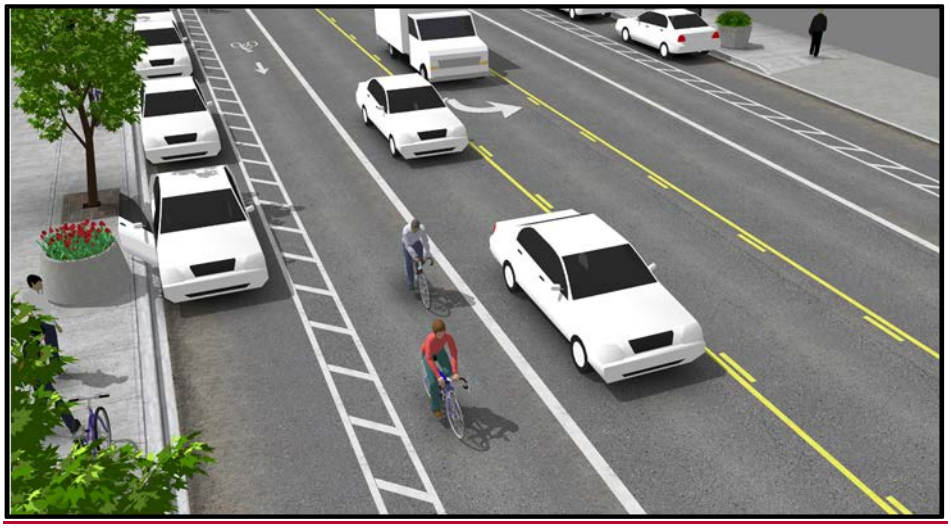
B.2 Buffered Bicycle Lanes

Buffered bicycle lanes are bicycle lanes separated from either the adjacent travel lane or parking lane with a marked buffer area. They provide greater shy distance between motor vehicles and bicyclists and encourage bicyclists to ride outside of the "door zone" of parked cars. Typical applications include streets with high travel speeds, high traffic volumes, high amounts of truck or transit traffic, or where there are underutilized travel lanes or extra pavement width.

The bicycle lane symbol and arrow markings shall be used, along with longitudinal lines to create the buffer. There are several options for marking the buffer area, including a wide solid double line (crossing prohibited), wide solid single line (crossing discouraged) or wide dotted single line (crossing permitted to make right hand turn). Where the buffer space is wider than 4 feet and crossing the buffer is prohibited, chevron markings should be placed in the buffer area.

At an intersection approach, the buffer striping should transition to a wide dotted stripe using a 2/4 skip pattern. The transition should begin 150 feet in advance of an intersection to provide sufficient distance for an automobile or truck to merge into the bicycle lane before turning right. Figures 9 – 16, 17 and 18 provide examples of buffered bicycle lanes. ***Chapter 3D. Markings for Preferential Lanes*** of the ***MUTCD*** provides additional information on the striping of buffered bicycle lanes.

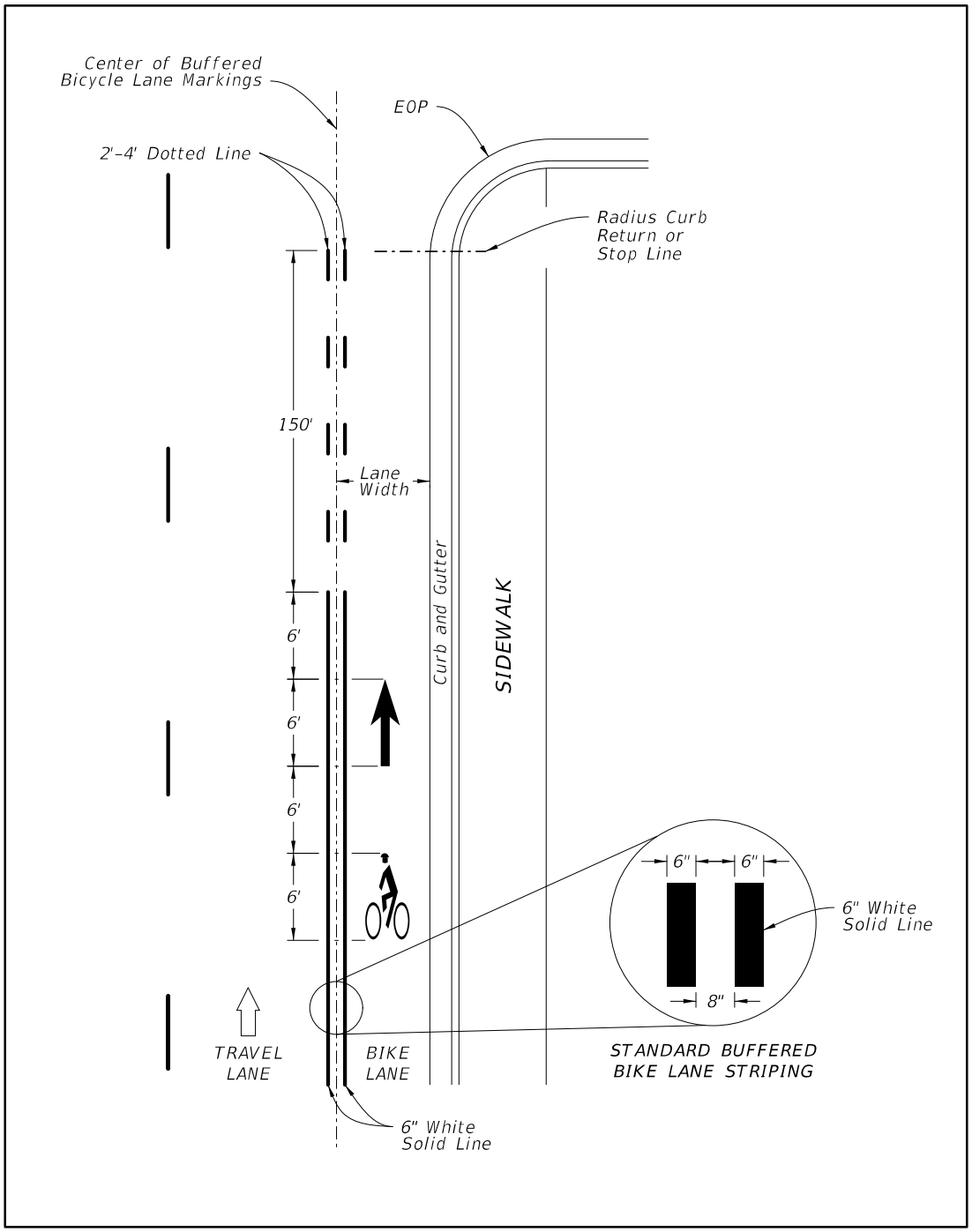
Figure 9 – 16 Buffered Bicycle Lane Adjacent to On-Street Parking



NACTO Urban Bikeway Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials

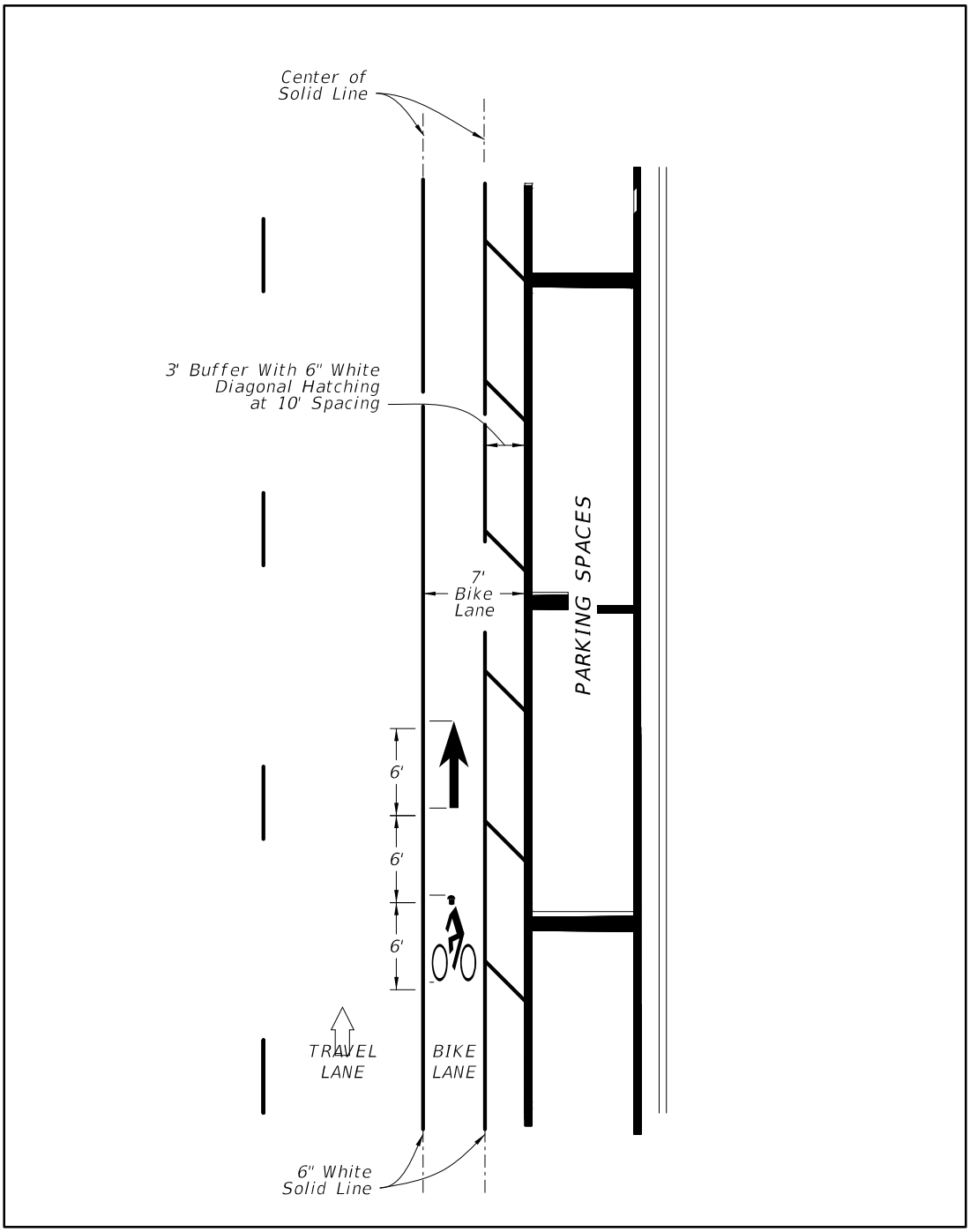
Draft

Figure 9 – 17 Buffered Bicycle Lane Markings



Draft

Figure 9 – 18 Buffered Bicycle Lane Markings with On-Street Parking

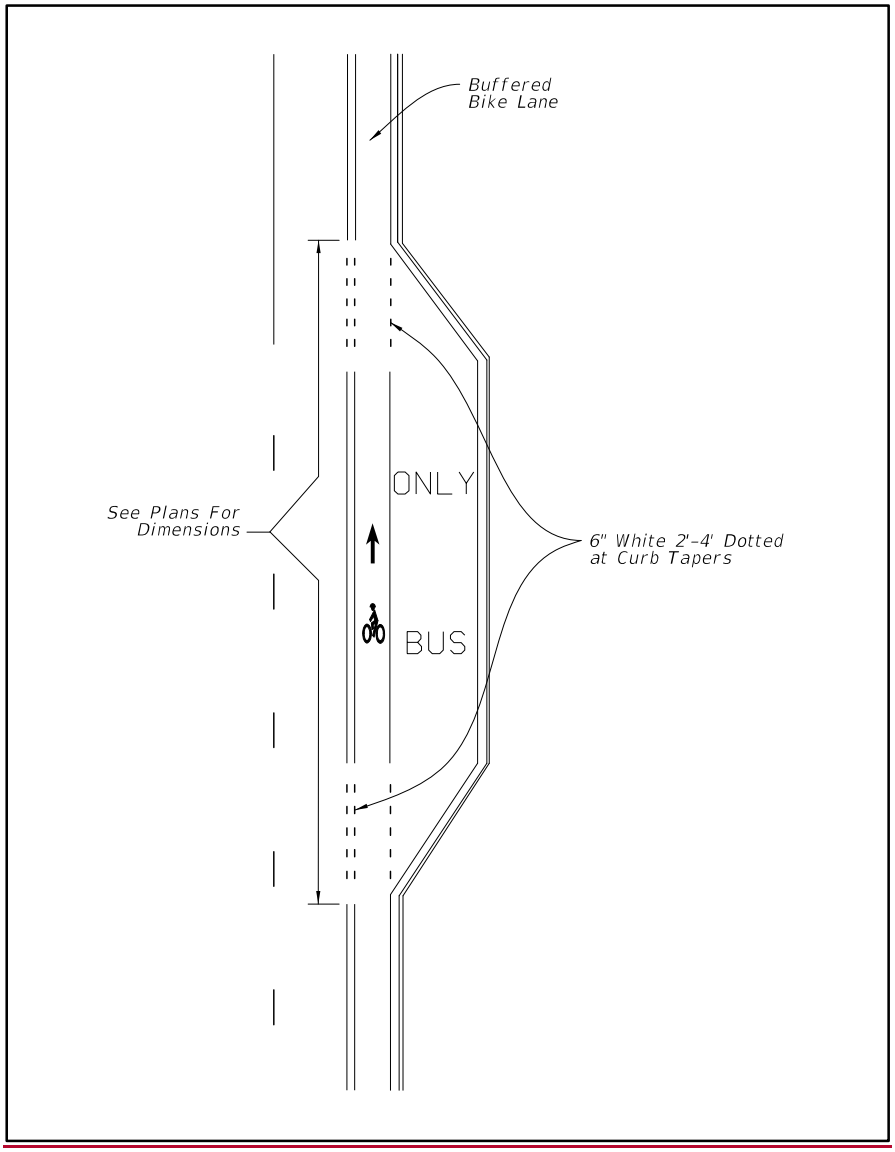


Draft

B.3 Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay

When a bus bay is provided on roadways with bicycle lanes, the bicycle lane shall be continued adjacent to the bus bay. Figure 9 – 19 Buffered Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay Marking provides an example of a buffered bicycle lane with a bus bay.

Figure 9 – 19 Buffered Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay Marking (Curb and Gutter)



Draft

B.4 Green Colored Bicycle Lanes

The Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) has issued an Interim Approval for the use of green colored pavement in bicycle lanes and in extensions of bicycle lanes through intersections and other traffic conflict areas. Colored pavements shall not replace or be used in lieu of required markings for bike lanes as defined in the ***MUTCD***, but shall only supplement such markings. Traffic conflict areas include where the:

- bicycle lane crosses a right turn lane,
- traffic in a right turn lane crosses a bike lane, or
- bicycle lane is adjacent to a dedicated bus bay.

The Interim Approval may be found at the following website and provides further information on how to submit a written request to use green colored pavement:

http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/res-interim_approvals.htm

The effectiveness of green colored pavement may be maximized if the treatment is used only where the path of bicyclists and other road users cross and yielding must occur. Because colored pavements are addressed in the 2009 MUTCD, they are by definition a traffic control device whose need should be demonstrated before they are used. A need for this treatment can be demonstrated by either of the following:

1. A history of 3 or more motor vehicle-bicycle crashes exists at or adjacent to the traffic conflict area over the most recent three-year period, or
2. A government agency has observed and documented conflicts (failure of the motor vehicle to yield to the bicyclist) between cyclists and motor vehicles at an average rate of two per peak hour. The documentation for conflicts shall include observations from a minimum of two separate data collection periods, conducted on different days in a one month period, and include at least one weekday and one weekend count period during peak bicycle travel times. Each period should be at least 2 hours in duration. Peak times vary by region and surrounding land use, but are typically:
    - Weekday, 11:00 AM to 1:00 PM
    - Weekday, 5:00 PM to 7:00 PM
    - Saturday, 8:00 AM to 2:00 PM

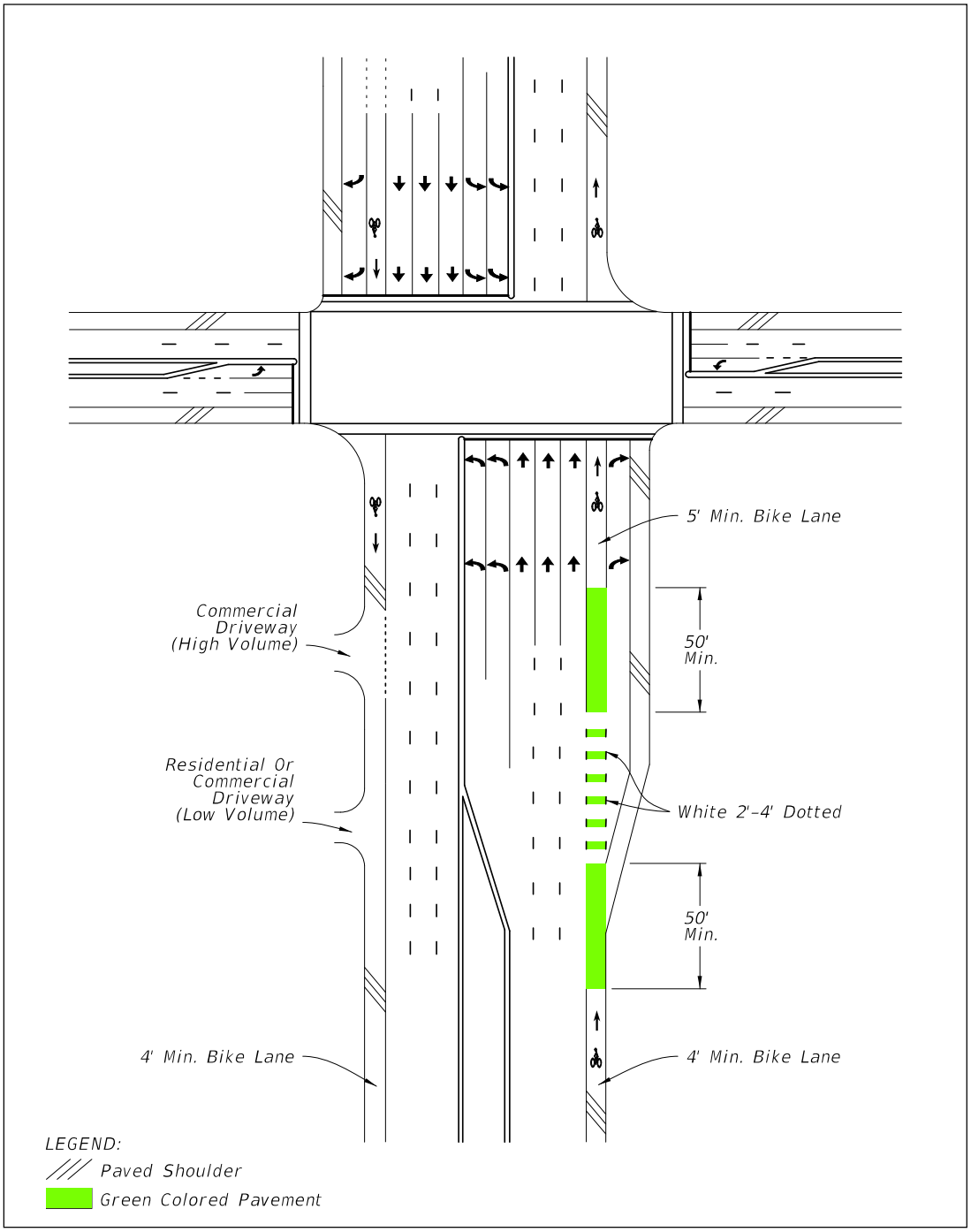
Draft

When used in conjunction with white skip lines, such as when extending a bike lane across a right turn lane or access to a bus bay, the transverse colored marking shall match the 2'-4' white skip line pattern of the bike lane extension. The green colored pavement should begin as a solid pattern 50 feet in advance of the skip striping, match the 2' 4' skip through the conflict area, and then resume the solid color for 50' after the conflict area, unless such an extent is interrupted by a stop bar or an intersection curb radius. Details of each installation and associated pavement markings shall be shown in the plans. Figures 9 – 20, 21, 22 and 23 illustrate how the green portion of the bicycle lane may be marked.

Materials permitted to color the bike lane green shall be non-reflective and fall within the color parameters defined by FHWA in their interim approval. Materials which have been tested to meet these requirements can be found in ***FDOT's Approved Product List for Specification 523, Patterned Pavement.***

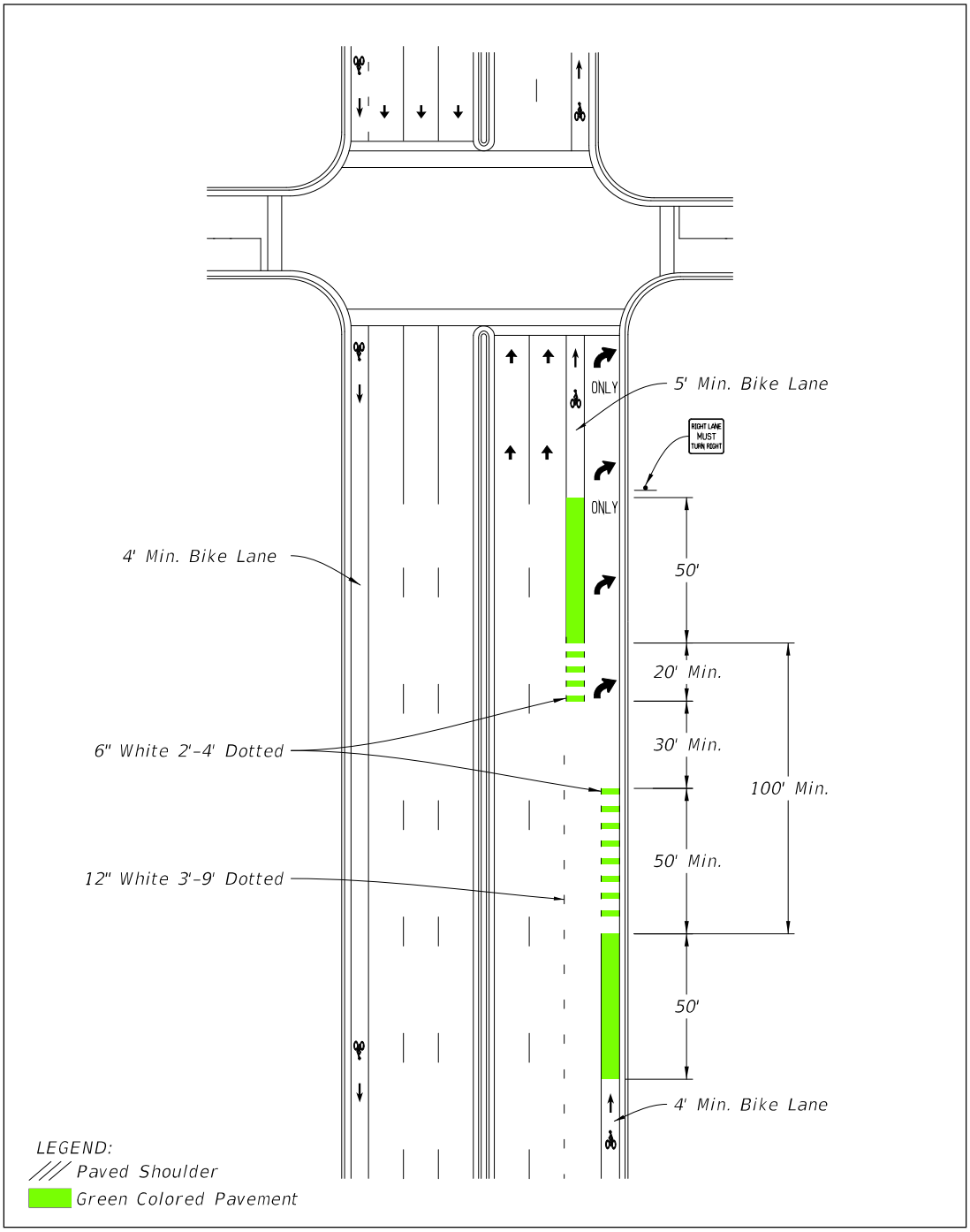
Draft

Figure 9 – 20 Green Bicycle Lane with Separate Right Turn Lane



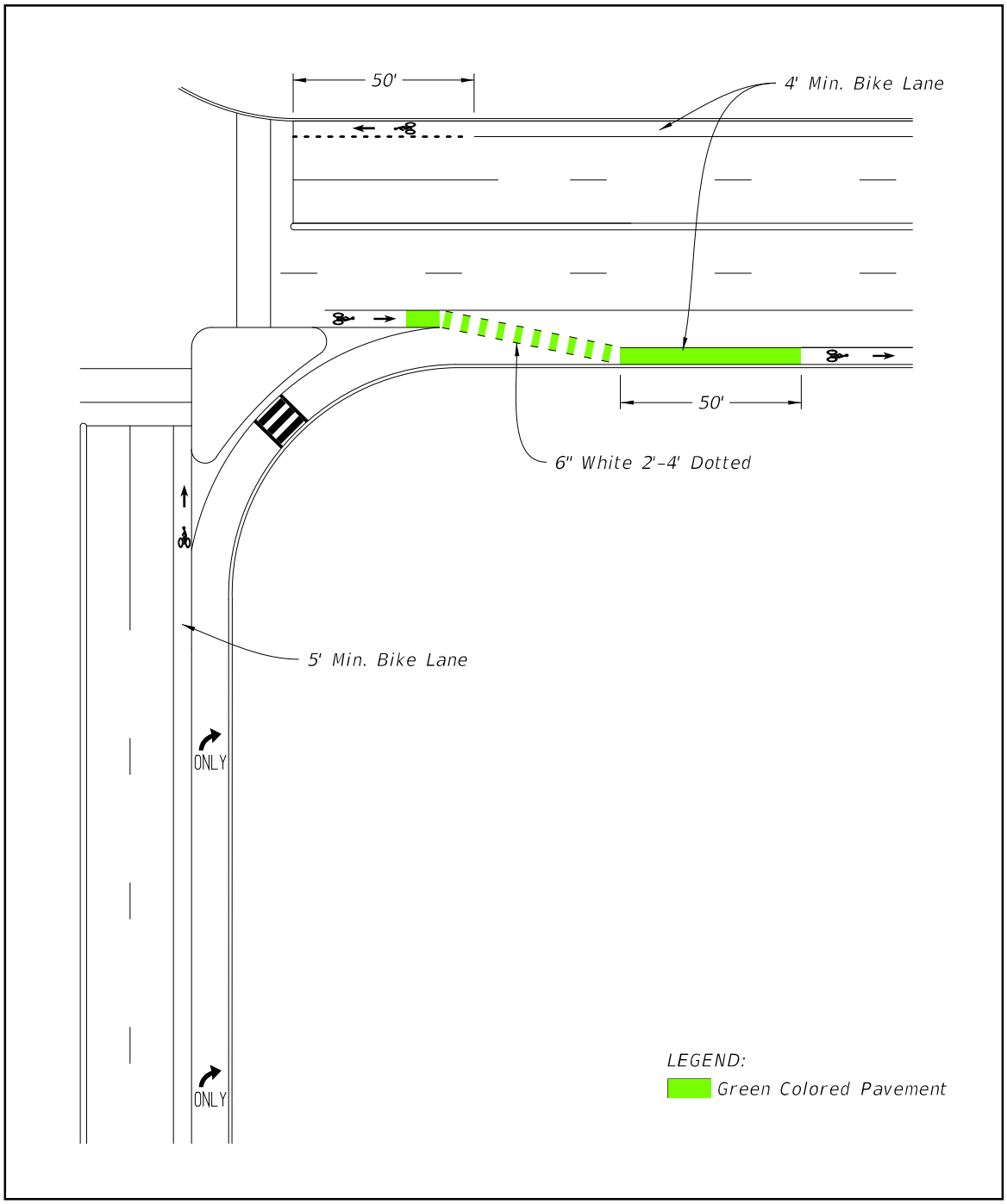
Draft

Figure 9 – 21 Green Bicycle Lane with Right Turn Drop Lane



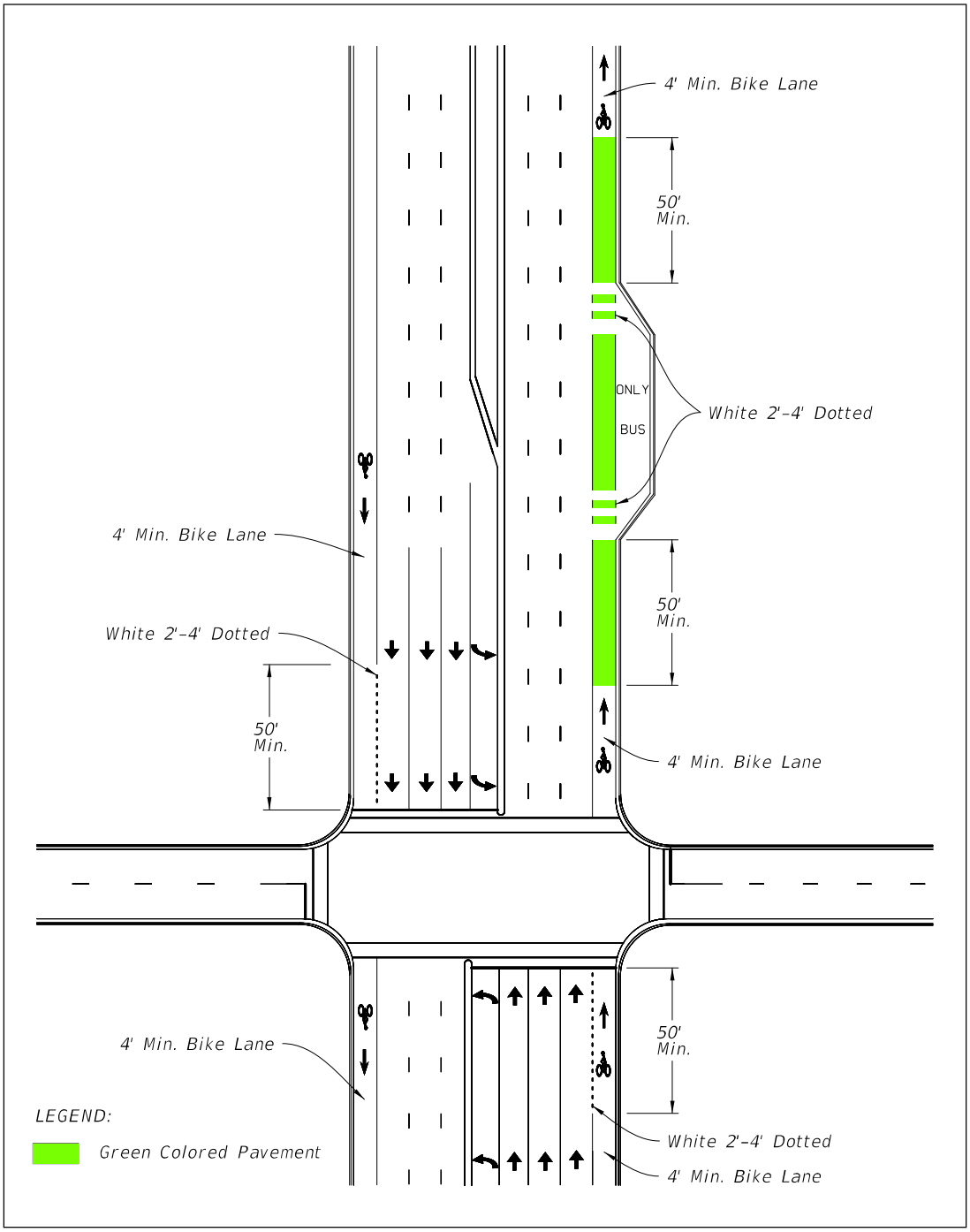
Draft

Figure 9 – 22 Green Bicycle Lane with Channelized Right Turn Lane



Draft

Figure 9 – 23 Green Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay



Draft

B.5~~2~~ Paved Shoulders

A paved shoulder is a portion of the roadway which has been delineated by edge line striping.~~, but generally does not include special pavement markings for the preferential use by bicyclists. In some areas,~~ A~~a~~dding, widening or improving paved shoulders often can be an acceptable way to accommodate bicyclists. ~~Paved shoulders 4 feet and wider may be marked as bicycle lanes.A paved shoulder at least 4 feet in width may be considered to be a bicycle facility~~However, when a shoulder is intended to serve as a bicycle facility and is adjacent to a curb, guardrail or other roadside barrier, a minimum 5-foot clear width between the traveled way and the face of the barrier is required. Additional shoulder width is desirable if the posted speed exceed 50 mph, or the percentage of trucks, buses, or recreational vehicles is high (>10%).~~ A minimum 5-foot clear width between the traveled way and the face of curb, guardrail or other roadside barrier is recommended.~~

Ground-in rumble strips should not be included in paved shoulders if a minimum clear width~~path~~ of 4 feet outside of the rumble strip cannot be provided.

B.6~~3~~ Wide Outside Lanes

~~Wide outside lanes are through lanes which provide a minimum of fourteen feet in width. This width allows most motor vehicles to pass cyclists within the travel lane, which is not possible on more typical 10-foot to 12-foot wide lanes. On stretches of roadway with steep grades where bicyclists need more maneuvering space, the wide curb lane should be slightly wider where practical. In restricted urban conditions, where it is not possible to include bicycle lanes or paved shoulders or on minor collector streets, a wide curb lane may be a practical option for a bicycle facility. However, in situations where more than 15 feet of pavement width exists, bicycle lanes or paved shoulders should be provided.~~Wide outside lanes on curbed roadways are through lanes that provide a minimum of 14 feet in width, which allows most motor vehicles to pass cyclists safely within the travel lane. Bicycle lanes are preferred for arterial and collector roadways, however, in some conditions, such as resurfacing projects, wide outside lanes may be the only practical option for a bicycle facility.

Draft

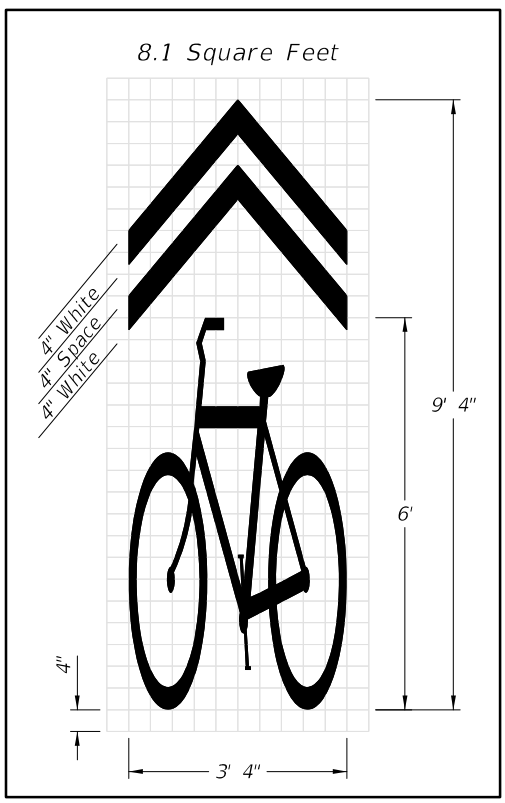
B.7~~4~~ Shared Lane Markings

The s~~S~~hared lane marking~~s,~~ ~~a~~is an optional pavement marking for roadways where bicyclists and motor vehicles are intended to share the lane and no bicycle lane or paved shoulder exists or is feasible. Shared lane markings should be limited to roadways with a posted speed of 35 mph or less. They are not intended to be placed on every roadway without bicycle facilities or on shared use paths.

Shared lane markings provide guidance to cyclists on their lateral positioning, especially on roadways with on-street parking or lanes that are too narrow to share side by side with a motor vehicle. They also help to discourage wrong way riding and encourage safer passing of bicyclists by motorists. Shared lane markings may be used to identify an alternate route as part of an approved temporary traffic control plan. Figure 9 – 24 provides the dimensions for shared lane markings.

Shared lane markings should be placed as follows:

Figure 9 – 24 Shared Lane Marking



- If used on a roadway without on-street parking that has an outside travel lane that is 14 feet wide or less, the Shared Lane Markings should be centered in the travel lane (Figure 9 – 25).
- If used on a roadway with on-street parking, the Shared Lane Markings should be centered in the travel lane (Figure 9 – 26).
- Shared Lane Markings should be placed immediately after an intersection and spaced at intervals not greater than 250 feet thereafter.

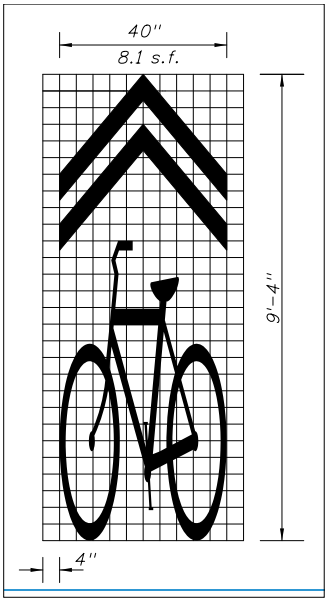
~~s shown in Figure 9-3 may be used in travel lanes to indicate the optimum alignment for a bicyclist within the lane and to inform road users that bicyclists might occupy the travel lane. Shared Lane Markings shall not be placed in bicycle lanes or on paved shoulders. Shared Lane Markings should not be~~

Draft

~~placed on roadways that have a posted speed limit above 35 mph. The Shared Lane Markings may be used to:~~

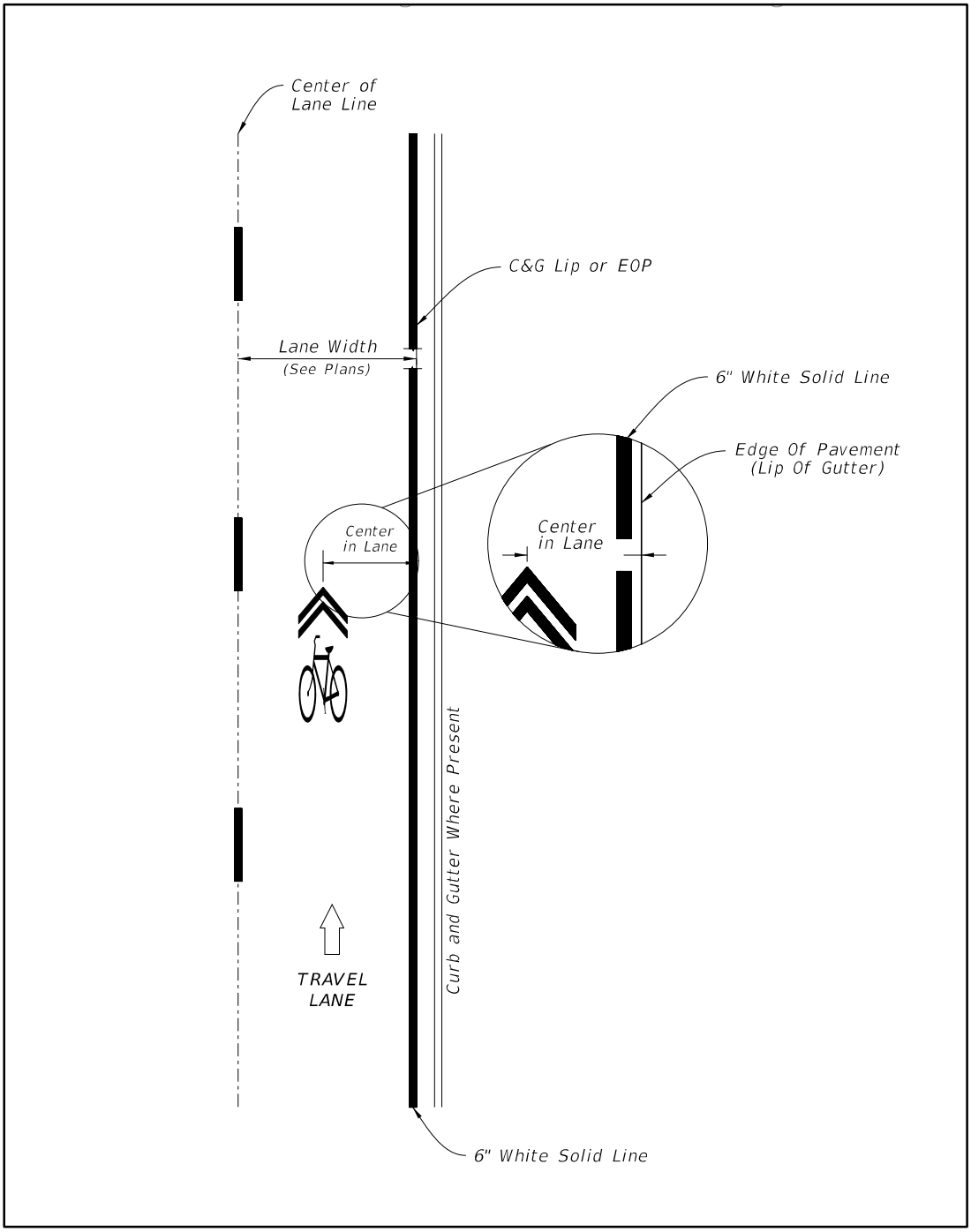
- ~~Assist bicyclists with lateral positioning in a shared lane with on-street parallel parking in order to reduce the chance of a bicyclist's impacting the open door of a parked vehicle,~~
- ~~Assist bicyclists with lateral positioning in lanes that are too narrow for a motor vehicle and a bicycle to travel side by side within the same travel lane,~~
- ~~Alert road users of the lateral location bicyclists are likely to occupy within the traveled way,~~
- ~~Encourage safe passing of bicyclists by motorists, and~~
- ~~Reduce the incidence of wrong-way bicycling.~~

~~Figure 9-3 Shared Lane Marking~~



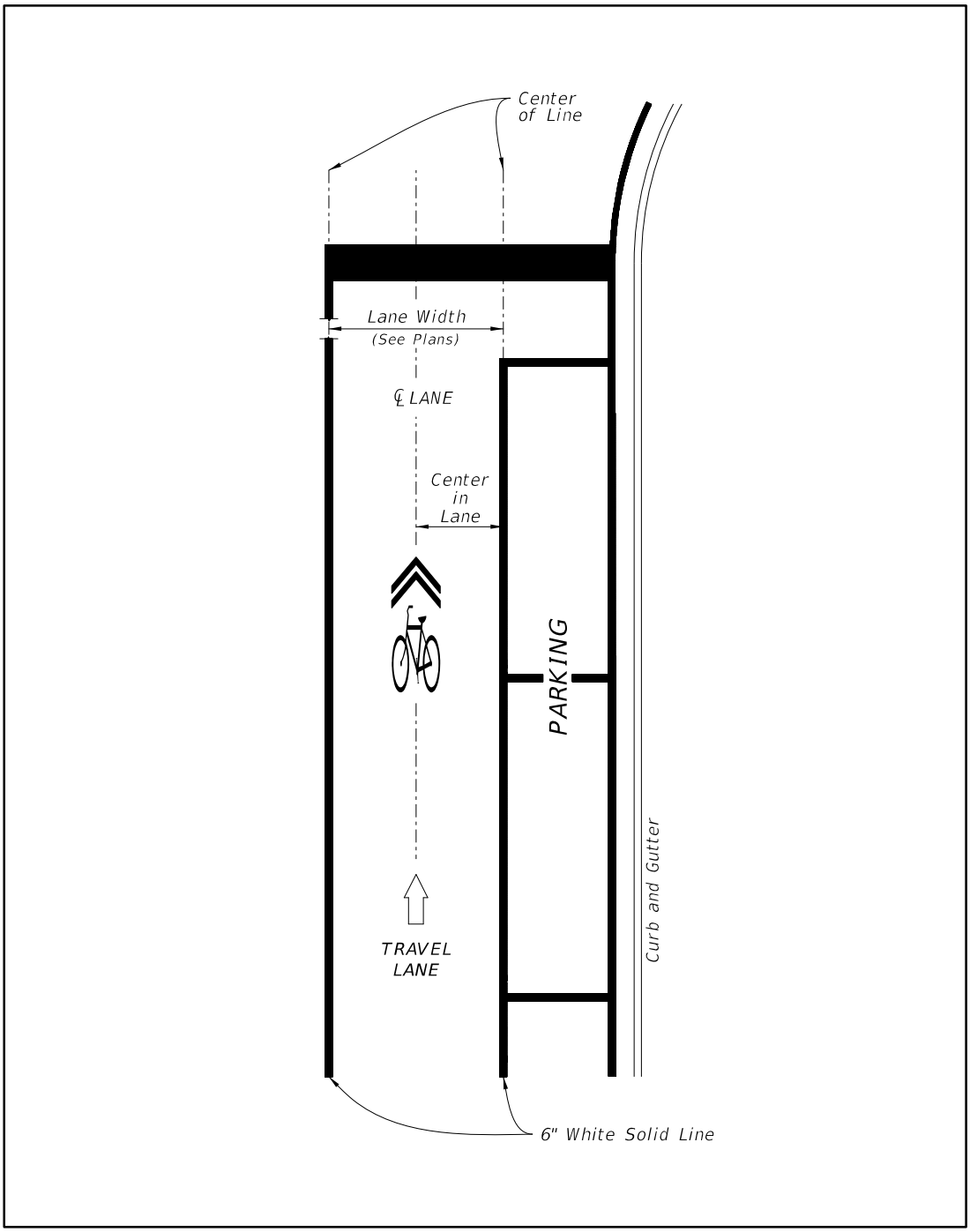
Draft

Figure 9 – 25~~-5~~ Shared Lane Marking Placement
(No Designated Parking, Lane Width ≤ 14 Feet)

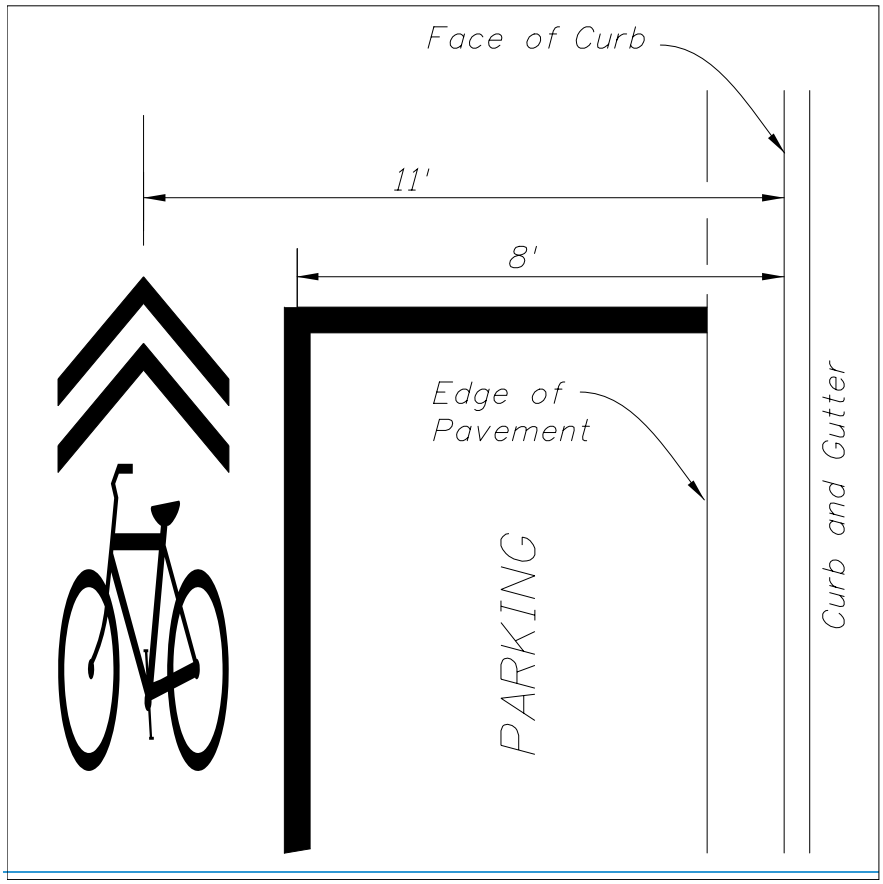


Draft

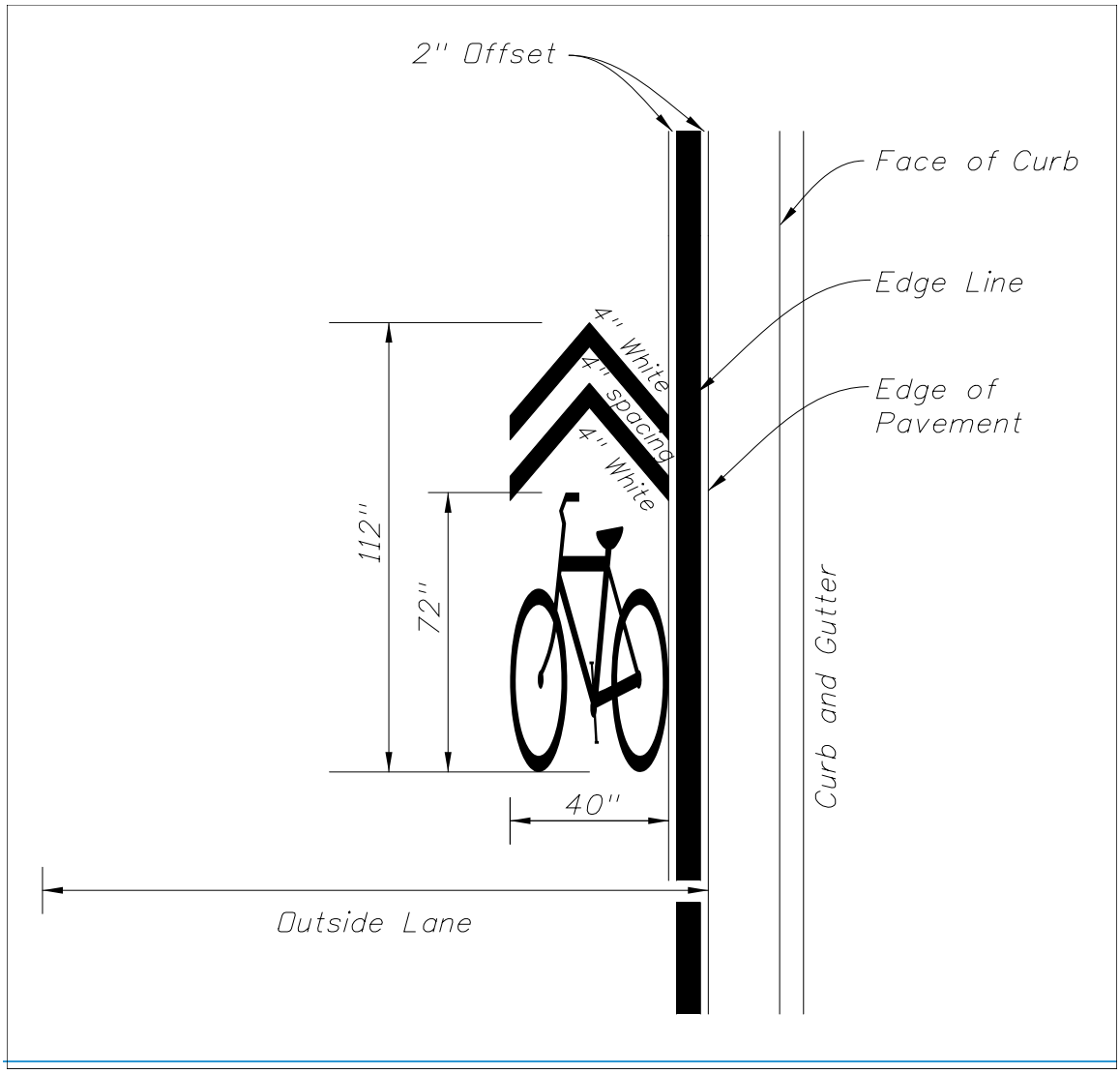
Figure 9 – 426 Shared Lane Marking Placement (With On-Street Parking)



Draft



Draft


2" Offset
Face of Curb
Edge Line
Edge of Pavement
4" White
4" Spacing
4" White
112"
72"
40"
Curb and Gutter
Outside Lane

Draft

B.8 Bicycles May Use Full Lane Sign

The Bicycle May Use Full Lane sign (R4-11) may be used on roadways where no bicycle lanes or adjacent shoulders useable by bicyclists are present and where travel lanes are less than 14' wide. The ***MUTCD*** provides additional information on the use of the sign.

Draft

C SHARED USE PATHS

Shared use paths are paved facilities physically separated from motorized vehicular traffic by an open space or barrier and either within the highway right of way or an independent right of wayusually on an exclusive right of way, with minimal cross flow by motor vehicles. They are used by bicyclists, pedestrians, runnersjoggers, in-line skaters, ,bicyclists, and in some cases equestrians. The bicycle's operating characteristics will govern the design of shared use paths. The ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act – Standards for Transportation Facilities*** and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of shared use paths since they serve as pedestrian facilities.

–Shared use paths serve a variety of purposes. They can provide a school age child, a recreational cyclist, or a person with a disability an alternative to busy roadways. Shared use paths can be located along former rail corridors, the banks of rivers or canals, and through parks and forests. Shared use paths can also provide access to areas otherwise served only by limited access highways. For transportation purposes, they should be thought of as an extension of the roadway network for non-motorized users. The inclusion of a shared use path should not be considered as an alternative to providing on-street facilities, but, rather, as a supplement.

For additional information discussion onf shared use path design, beyond what is in this chapter, refer to the ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities (2012, 4th Edition).***

C.1 Width and Clearance

The useable width and horizontal clearance for a shared use path are primary design considerations. The minimum paved width for a two-way path is 10 feet. Typically, widths range from 10 to 14 feet, with the wider values applicable to areas with high use or a wider variety of users, on steep grades, through curves, or used by larger maintenance vehicles.

Draft

In very rare circumstances, a reduced width of 8 feet may be used where the following conditions prevail:

- Bicycle traffic is expected to be low, even on peak days or during peak hours.
- Pedestrian use of the facility is not expected to be more than occasional.
- Horizontal and vertical alignments provide frequent, well-designed passing and resting opportunities.
- The path will not be regularly subjected to maintenance vehicle loading conditions that would cause pavement edge damage.

In addition, a path width of 8 feet may be used for a short distance due to a physical constraint such as an environmental feature, bridge abutment, utility structure, or fence.

A minimum 2 foot wide graded area with a maximum 1:6 slope should be maintained adjacent to both sides of the path; however, 3 feet or more is desirable to provide clearance from trees, poles, walls, fences, guardrails or other lateral obstructions. Where the path is adjacent to canals, ditches, or slopes steeper than 1:3, a wider separation should be considered. A minimum 5 foot separation from the edge of the path pavement to the top of the slope is desirable. Depending on the height of embankment and condition at the bottom, a physical barrier, such as a railing or chain link fence may need to be provided.

Where a recovery area is less than 5 feet, physical barriers or rails are recommended in the following situations:

- Slopes 1:3 or steeper, with a drop of 6 feet or greater;
- Slopes 1:3 or steeper, adjacent to a parallel body of water or other substantial obstacle
- Slopes 1:2 or steeper, with a drop of 4 feet or greater; and
- Slopes 1:1 or steeper, with a drop of 1 foot or greater.

The ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities (2012, 4th Edition)*** provides additional information on the design of barriers or railings.

Draft

The desirable vertical clearance to obstructions is 10 feet. Fixed objects should not be permitted to protrude within the vertical or horizontal clearance of a shared use path. The recommended minimum vertical clearance that can be used in constrained areas is 8 feet. In some situations, vertical clearance greater than 10 feet may be needed to permit passage of maintenance and emergency vehicles.

C.21 Separation Bbetween Shared Use Paths and Roadways

When shared use paths are located adjacent to a roadway, a separation shall be provided. This demonstrates to both path users and motorists that the shared use path is a separate facility.

The minimum distance between a path and the face of curb or edge of traveled way (where there is no curb) should be 5 feet. On roadways with flush shoulders, this separation is measured from the outside edge of the shoulder to the inside edge of the path. Where the separation is less than 5 feet, a physical barrier or railing should be provided between the path and the roadway.

A barrier or railing between the path and adjacent highway should not impair sight distance at intersections, and should be designed to limit the potential for injury to errant motorists or bicyclists. The barrier or railing need not be of size and strength to redirect errant motorists toward the roadway, unless other conditions indicate the need for a crashworthy barrier.

Barriers or railings at the outside of a structure or steep fill embankment that not only define the edge of the path but also prevent bicyclists from falling over the rail to a substantially lower elevation should be a minimum of 42" high. Barriers at other locations that serve only to separate the area for motor vehicles from the path should generally have a minimum height equivalent to the height of a standard guard rail.

When a path is placed along a high-speed highway, a separation greater than 5 feet is desirable.

~~Shared use paths should be separated from the roadway. In some cases, paths along highways for short sections are permissible, given an appropriate level of separation between facilities. Some problems with paths located immediately adjacent to the roadways are as follows:~~

- ~~Unless separated, they require one direction of bicycle traffic to ride against motor vehicle traffic, contrary to normal rules of the road.~~

Draft

- ~~When paths end, bicyclists going against traffic will tend to continue to travel on the wrong side of the street. Likewise, bicyclists approaching a path often travel on the wrong side of the street to get to the path. Wrong-way travel by bicyclists is a major cause of bicycle/automobile crashes and should be discouraged at every opportunity.~~

- ~~At intersections, motorists entering or crossing the roadway often will not notice bicyclists coming from the right, as they are not expecting or looking for contra-flow vehicles. Motorists turning to exit the roadway may likewise fail to notice the bicyclists. Even bicyclists coming from the left (the expected direction) often go unnoticed, especially when sight distances are limited.~~

- ~~When constructing a two-way path within a narrow right of way, sacrificing the shoulder on the adjacent roadway would be a detriment to both the motorist and the bicyclists and should be avoided if at all possible.~~

- ~~Many bicyclists will use the roadway instead of the shared use path because they have found the roadway to be safer, less congested, more convenient, or better maintained. Bicyclists using the roadway are often subjected to harassment by motorists who feel that, in all cases, bicyclists should be on the path instead.~~

- ~~Although the shared use path should be given the same priority through intersections as the parallel highway, motorists falsely expect bicyclists to stop or yield at all cross streets and driveways. Efforts to require or encourage bicyclists to yield or stop at each cross street and driveway are inappropriate and frequently ignored by bicyclists.~~

- ~~Stopped cross street motor vehicle traffic or vehicles exiting side streets or driveways may block the path crossing.~~

- ~~Because of the proximity of motor vehicle traffic to opposing bicycle traffic, barriers are often necessary to keep motor vehicles out of shared use paths and bicyclists out of traffic lanes. These barriers can represent an obstruction to bicyclists and motorists, can complicate maintenance of the facility, and cause other problems.~~

~~When it is decided to construct a shared use path adjacent to a roadway, the following should be considered.~~

Draft

- Conflict points should be limited to as few as possible.
- Conflicts should occur at as low a speed as possible. Consider reducing turning radii to reduce the speeds of motorists turning toward the shared use path. Kinks in the path alignment can reduce the speed of path users approaching the conflict.
- Maintain adequate sight distances for both motorists and path users to perceive and react to potential conflicts.

When the distance between the shared use path and the highway shoulder is less than 5 feet, a physical barrier is recommended. Where used, the barrier should be a minimum of 42 inches high, to prevent cyclists from toppling over it. A barrier between a shared use path and an adjacent highway should not impair sight distance at intersections, and should be designed to not be a hazard to errant motorists.oca Ratonto whether a s

C.2 Width

The paved width and operating width required for a shared use path are primary design considerations. The minimum recommended width for a paved two-way path is 10 feet. In many cases, it is desirable to increase the minimum width to 12 feet. The width should be increased if there is expected substantial use by bicyclists, probable shared use with joggers and in-line skaters, steep grades, and locations where bicyclists are likely to ride two abreast.

In a few cases, it may be acceptable to decrease the trail width to 8 feet. This width should only be used where the following conditions prevail:

- Bicycle traffic is expected to be low, even on peak days or during peak hours.
- Pedestrian use of the facility is not expected to be more than occasional.
- There will be good horizontal and vertical alignment, providing safe and frequent passing opportunities.
- During normal maintenance activities, the path will not be subjected to maintenance vehicles causing pavement edge damage.

Draft

For further discussion of shared use path design, refer to the Florida Bicycle Facilities Planning and Design Handbook.

C.3 Horizontal Clearance

A minimum 2 foot wide graded area with a maximum 1:6 slope should be maintained adjacent to both sides of the path; however, 3 feet or more is desirable to provide clearance from trees, poles, walls, fences, guardrails or other lateral obstructions. Where the path is adjacent to canals, ditches, or slopes steeper than 1:3, a wider separation should be considered. A minimum 5 foot separation from the edge of the path pavement to the top of the slope is desirable. Depending on the height of embankment and condition at the bottom, a physical barrier, such as dense shrubbery, railing or chain link fence, may need to be provided.

C.4 Vertical Clearance

Vertical clearance to obstructions should be a minimum of 8 feet. However, vertical clearance may need to be greater to permit passage of maintenance and emergency vehicles. In undercrossings esand tunnels, 10 feet is desirable.

C.35 Design Speed

For paths in relatively flat areas (grades less than or equal to 4%), a design speed of 18 mph shall be used. When a sustained downgrade greater than 4% exists, refer to the ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities (2012, 4th Edition)*** for further guidance,

A design speed of 20 mph should be used for shared use paths.

C.4 Horizontal Alignment

The typical adult bicyclist is the design user for horizontal alignment. Please refer to the ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities (2012, 4th Edition)*** for further information on determining the minimum radius of curves on shared use paths.

Shared use paths should be transitioned as necessary towards the roadway at intersections to provide a more functional crossing location that also meets driver

Draft

expectation.

C.5 Accessibility

Since nearly all shared use paths are intended to be used by pedestrians, they fall under the accessibility requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act.

Pull boxes, manholes (and other utility covers), and other types of existing surface features in the location of a proposed curb ramp or detectable warning should be relocated when feasible. When relocation is not feasible, the feature shall be adjusted to meet the ADA requirements for surfaces (including the provision of a nonslip top surface, and adjustment to be flush with and at the same slope as the adjacent surface).

The detectable warning systems are designed to work with concrete surfaces. In areas where the path has an asphalt surface, the engineer must specify an appropriate detectable warning system. In these cases, consider including a short section of concrete that will accommodate any system.

If curb ramps are included in the path design, they should be parallel to and the full width of the approaching path width. Shared use path crossings shall meet the same grade and cross slope requirements as sidewalks where the grade should not exceed 5%, and the maximum cross slope shall be no more than 2%.

Project design shall include an evaluation of existing driveways to determine if it is feasible to upgrade nonconforming driveway turnouts to meet maximum cross slope criteria. Nonconforming driveways are not required to be upgraded if it is not feasible within the scope of the project.

Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities provides additional information regarding accessible design of shared use paths.

C.6 Structures

The minimum clear width on structures should be the same as the approach shared use path, plus the minimum 2 foot wide clear areas. Access by emergency, patrol and maintenance vehicles should be considered in establishing the design clearances of structures on shared use paths. Where practical, a path vertical clearance of 10 feet (on the structure) is desirable for adequate vertical shy

Draft

distance.

Ramps on new structures that are part of a shared use path and serve as the accessible route shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:12 and cross slope not steeper than 1:48. Landings are required at the top and the bottom of each ramp run.

Grades on structures to be used by pedestrians shall comply with the requirements of the ADA Accessibility Guidelines (as described in the Federal Register) and the Florida Accessibility Code For Building Construction as given in CHAPTER 3 – GEOMETRIC DESIGN.

C.7 Ramp Widths

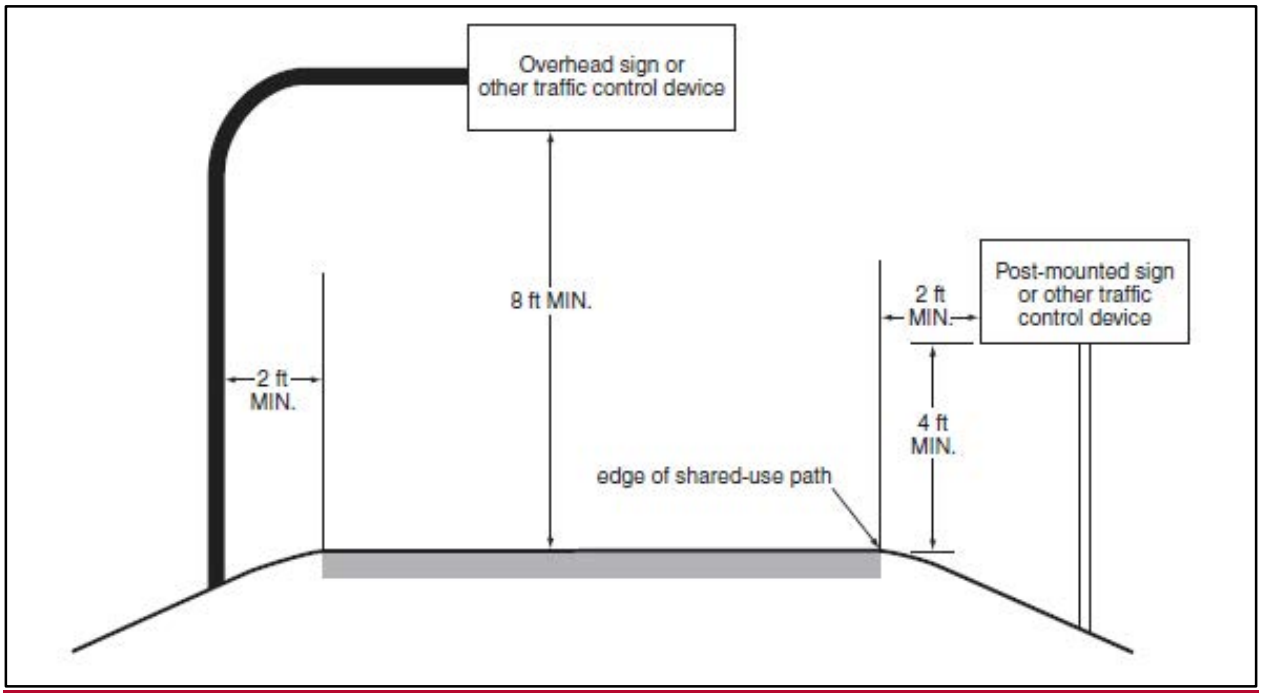
Ramps for curbs at intersections should be at least the same width as the shared use path. Curb cuts and ramps should provide a smooth transition between the shared use path and the roadway. A 5 foot radius or flare may be considered to facilitate right turns for bicyclists.

C.7 Pavement Markings and Signage

The MUTCD regulates the design and use of all traffic control devices on shared use paths. Figure 9 – 27 Sign Placement on Shared Use Paths provides the minimum criteria for the placement of signs along or over a shared use path. The maximum height from the outside edge of the path to the bottom elevation of a sign is five feet. Signs on shared use paths should follow the dimensions provided in ***Table 9B-1 Bicycle Sign and Plaque Sizes, MUTCD***. Guidance on the placement of stop or yield lines and crosswalks on roadways intersecting with shared use paths is provided in the ***MUTCD, Part 3***.

Draft

Figure 9 – 27 Sign Placement on Shared Use Paths



Draft

D RAILROAD CROSSINGS

Railroad-highway grade crossings should ideally be at a right angle to the rails. This can be accomplished either as a separate path or a widened shoulder. The greater the crossing deviated from this ideal crossing angle, the greater is the potential for a bicyclist's front wheel to be trapped in the flangeway, causing loss of steering control. If the crossing angle is less than approximately 45 degrees, an additional paved shoulder of sufficient width should be provided to permit the bicyclist to cross the track at a safer angle, preferable perpendicularly. Where this is not possible, and where train speeds are low, commercially available compressible flangeway fillers may enhance bicyclist operation. It is also important that the roadway approach be at the same elevation as the rails. For more information, see Figure 4 – 28~~27~~ Correction for Skewed Railroad Grade Crossing – Separate Pathway in the ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities***.

E STRUCTURES

All new bridges over roadways and shared use paths shall be designed to meet the vertical clearance standards specified in ***Chapter 3, Section C.7.j.4.(b)***, and ***Chapter 17, Section C.3.b.***

All bridges that include provisions for pedestrians shall provide pedestrian accommodations and design considerations that meet the provisions of the ADA.

Bridges over roadways should be covered or screened to reduce the likelihood of objects being dropped or thrown below. If the bridge is enclosed, the visual tunnel effect may require widening the bridge to provide a feeling of security for all bridge users. The area adjacent to overpasses may be fenced to prevent unsafe crossings and to channel pedestrians to the vertical separation structure.

Draft

F REFERENCES

- USDOT/FHWA ADA Standards for Accessible Design (ADAAG)
  http://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/buildings-and-sites/about-the-ada-standards/ada-standards

- AASHTO – Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities, 2012, 4th Edition
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/

- NACTO Urban Streets Design Guide
  http://nacto.org/usdg

- FHWA Policy Memo for Flexibility in Pedestrian and Bicycle Facility Design
  http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/guidance/design_guidance/design_flexibility.cfm

- Storm Drain Handbook, Florida Department of Transportation, October 2014
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/Drainage/files/StormDrainHB.pdf

- Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, May 2012
  http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/pdfs/2009r1r2/pdf_index.htm

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 10

MAINTENANCE AND RESURFACING

A INTRODUCTION 10-1

B MAINTENANCE 10-1
- B.1 Objectives 10-1
- B.2 Policy 10-1
- B.3 Identification of Needs 10-2
  - B.3.a Inspection 10-2
  - B.3.b Crash Records 10-2
- B.4 Establishment of Priorities 10-3
- B.5 Establishment of Procedures 10-3
  - B.5.a Emergency Maintenance 10-3
  - B.5.b Routine Maintenance 10-4
  - B.5.c Special Maintenance 10-5
  - B.5.d Pavement Maintenance 10-5

C RESURFACING 10-7
- C.1 Accessibility Requirements 10-7
- C.2 Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Near or Within Project Limits 10-7
- C.3 Safety Improvements 10-8
  - C.3.a Pavement Safety Edge 10-8
- C.4 Federal Aid Project Requirements 10-10

D REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 10-11

~~A INTRODUCTION ..... 10-1~~

~~B MAINTENANCE ..... 10-1~~
- ~~B.1 Objectives ..... 10-1~~
- ~~B.2 Policy ..... 10-1~~
- ~~B.3 Identification of Needs ..... 10-2~~
  - ~~B.3.1 Inspection ..... 10-2~~
  - ~~B.3.2 Crash Records ..... 10-2~~

Draft

B.4 Establishment of Priorities 10-3
B.5 Establishment of Procedures 10-3
B.5.1 Emergency Maintenance 10-3
B.5.2 Routine Maintenance 10-4
B.5.3 Special Maintenance 10-5
B.5.4 Pavement Maintenance 10-5

C RESURFACING 10-7
C.1 Accessibility Requirements 10-7
C.2 Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Near or Within Project Limits 10-7
C.3 Safety Improvements 10-8
C.3.1 Pavement Safety Edge 10-8
C.4 Federal Aid Project Requirements 10-10

D REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 10-11

FIGURES

Figure 10 – 1 Two Lane Road with Safety Edge 10-9

Figure 10 – 2 Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders) 10-9

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 10

MAINTENANCE AND RESURFACING

A INTRODUCTION

In order to provide for the safe and efficient movement of all modes of traffic, it is essential to maintain all aspects of the road and right of way at the highest reasonable level of safety. Improvements consistent with upgrading safety standards or accommodating changes in traffic are also required to maintain the facility in a quality condition. Maintenance and resurfacing are costly operations; therefore, every effort should be made to provide the maximum safety benefit from each operation. The fact that a major portion of the maintenance effort is necessary to merely preserve the economic investment in a facility should not be considered as justification for sacrificing the requirements for maintaining or improving the safety characteristics of a street or highway.

B MAINTENANCE

B.1 Objectives

The major objectives of a maintenance program include the following:

- Maintain all highway features and components in the best possible condition.
- Improve sub-standard features, with the ultimate goal to at least meet minimum standards.
- Provide for minimum disruptions and hazards to traffic during maintenance operations.
- Location and reporting of inadequate safety features.

B.2 Policy

Each highway agency responsible for maintenance shall develop and maintain a program of highway maintenance for the entire highway network under its jurisdiction. This program should include the following activities:

- Identify needs
- Establish priorities
- Establish procedures
- Establish and maintain a regular program of maintenance for all aspects

The program should be regularly evaluated and suitably modified to promote the maintenance of streets and highways that result in the best practicable condition.

B.3 Identification of Needs

The identification of maintenance needs is the first stage in the development of a successful maintenance program, and is required when any portion of the highway system is in a sub-standard condition. Action is also required to correct any situation which is hazardous or may become hazardous in the near future. This may be accomplished by both regular inspection of the highway network and proper analysis of crash records.

B.3.a1 Inspection

Periodic and systematic inspection of the entire highway network under each agency's jurisdiction is required to identify situations requiring improvements, and corrections or repairs. These inspections should be conducted by maintenance or traffic operations personnel, or other qualified personnel who are trained in the aspects of highway maintenance requirements.

B.3.b2 Crash Records

A regular program of crash investigations, record keeping, and analysis should be established to provide information for recommended highway modification and corrective maintenance requirements. Cooperation among maintenance, traffic operations, and police agencies is required, and activities of these agencies should be coordinated in accordance with the guidelines set forth in the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) Program Guideline No. 21 (II), Identification and Surveillance of Crash Locations. Inspection of the highway network and analysis of crash records should be utilized to provide feedback for modification of design and construction procedures.

Draft

B.4 Establishment of Priorities

The maintenance activities determined to be necessary by the identification program should be carried out on a priority basis. The establishment of priorities should be based, to a large extent, upon the objective of promoting highway safety. A high priority should be given to the improvement or correction of situations that may result in fatal or serious crashes. Preservation of highway investment and promotion of efficient traffic operations are important maintenance objectives. Every effort should be made to ensure the highest safety payoff from the maintenance dollar.

B.5 Establishment of Procedures

Standard procedures and methods for maintenance operations should be established for efficient, rapid, and safe completion of the required work. All maintenance work shall be conducted in accordance with the Standards set forth in ***Chapter 11 - Work Zone Safety***. Each maintenance agency should develop its own Maintenance Manual or utilize the Maintenance Manuals of the Department. Such manuals should specify the methods, procedures, equipment, personnel qualifications, and other aspects of the work necessary to ensure successful completion of maintenance operations. Procedures should be developed for emergency, routine, and special operations.

B.5.a1 Emergency Maintenance

Emergency maintenance operations are those required to immediately restore the highway to a safe condition. Emergency maintenance work should be carried out by personnel who are specially trained and qualified. Work units, which should be available on a twenty-four hour basis, should be connected with the emergency response communications system. Emergency operations would include the following:

1. The removal of debris from crashes, cargo spillage, or other causes. This activity should be conducted in accordance with the guidelines set forth in the NHTSA Program Guideline No. 16, Debris Hazard Control and Cleanup.
2. Replacement of inoperative traffic control devices.
3. Repair or replacement of damaged highway safety components such as lighting, traffic control devices, redirection devices, and energy absorbing devices.

4. Repair or correction of any situation that provides an immediate or unexpected hazard to the public.
5. Assistance in any activity during emergency response operations.

B.5.b2 Routine Maintenance

Routine maintenance operations are those that may be predicted and planned in advance. These operations, which may be preventive or corrective in nature, should be conducted on a regularly scheduled basis using standard procedures. Proper scheduling of these operations should be utilized to provide minimum disruptions and hazards to the driving public. Routine maintenance may include operations such as:

1. Cleaning and debris removal from the pavement, shoulders, and roadside clear zones.
2. Mowing and other vegetation control operations to provide a smooth recovery area and to maintain proper sight distance.
3. Cleaning and inspection of gutters, ditches, and other drainage structures.
4. Structural inspection and preventive maintenance on bridges and other structures.
5. Cleaning, replacement, and maintenance of roadway lighting fixtures.
6. Replacement and maintenance of traffic control devices.
7. Inspection and maintenance of redirection and energy absorbing devices (***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***).
8. Inspection and maintenance of emergency response communication systems and access facilities.
9. Inspection and maintenance of pavement and shoulders, with particular emphasis on maintaining shoulders flush with the pavement (***Chapter 5 - Pavement Design And Construction***).
10. Inspection and maintenance of all highway components and safety features.

Draft

11. Inspection and maintenance of pedestrian pavements, crossings, etc., with particular emphasis on sidewalk cracks, joint separations, accumulated debris, adjacent landscape materials, etc.).

12. Thin pavement overlay that is intended to preserve the pavement, retard its future deterioration and maintain its functional condition.

B.5.c~~3~~ Special Maintenance

Special maintenance operations are defined as those projects that are neither urgent nor routine in nature, but are occasionally required to improve or maintain a street or highway in a quality condition. Since these projects can be planned in advance of the initiation of any work, procedures that provide for efficient, rapid, and safe operations can be developed. To avoid continuing disruptions of traffic, the quality and durability of these improvements, corrections, and repairs should be maintained at the highest practicable level. Special maintenance should include the upgrading of the highway safety features, as well as the repair or replacement of damaged or deteriorated highway components. These operations should be designed to upgrade or maintain the street or highway in accordance with the Standards presented in this Manual.

B.5.d~~4~~ Pavement Maintenance

The primary purpose of pavement maintenance is to ensure the pavement characteristics prescribed in ***Chapter 5 – Pavement Design And Construction***, are reasonably maintained. Each agency with responsibility for maintenance of streets and highways shall establish a meaningful pavement maintenance system (including shoulders and drainage structures) for the entire system under its jurisdiction. This program should include:

1. A process that monitors the serviceability of the existing streets and highways and identifies the pavement sections that are inadequate.

2. A systematic plan of maintenance activities designed to correct structural deficiencies and to prevent rapid deterioration.

3. A preservation program, with assigned priorities, designed to resurface, reconstruct, or replace pavements when they are no longer structurally serviceable.

Draft

Pavement maintenance requires a substantial portion of the total maintenance budget for streets and highways. It is necessary to ensure highway safety. The reduction of hydroplaning and splashing is essential for promoting safe and efficient operation during wet weather conditions. The elimination of driving discomfort, and vehicle damage caused by deteriorated pavements, provides additional economic justification for maintaining the pavement in a fully serviceable condition.

It is recognized that a comprehensive preservation program is expensive. Adequate financing is required to successfully carry out these activities. The establishment of appropriate budget priorities and careful planning can assist in developing and conducting a pavement maintenance and preservation program that will, within a reasonable number of years, bring substandard pavements up to the required level of serviceability and will maintain the adequacy of the entire system.

C RESURFACING

In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41*** or ***37.43*** and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by 61G20-4.002 impose additional requirements for the design and construction of resurfacing projects.

C.1 Accessibility Requirements

If new sidewalk and driveway construction or reconstruction is included on resurfacing projects they shall be designed to meet the requirements of ***Section C.7.d*** of ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** and ***Chapter 9 – Pedestrian Facilities***. Project design should include an evaluation of existing driveways to determine if it is feasible to upgrade nonconforming driveways.

Existing detectable warnings and curb ramps shall be brought into compliance. This includes installing new detectable warnings for both flush shoulder and curbed roadway connections and signalized driveways where none exist or do not meet current requirements. New curb ramps shall be provided on curbed roadways where none exist and existing substandard curb ramps shall be replaced. Existing ramps not meeting detectable warning requirements which otherwise comply with orientation, slope and width criteria shall be retrofitted with detectable warnings.

Where existing right of way is inadequate or conflicts occur with existing features that cannot be practicably relocated or adjusted (e.g. driveways, drainage inlets, signal poles, pull boxes, utility poles, etc.), pedestrian accessibility shall be provided to the maximum extent feasible, with appropriate documentation signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer (EOR). Other than meeting detectable warning and curb ramp requirements, existing sidewalks and driveways are not required to be upgraded for the sole purpose of meeting requirements for accessibility unless included in the project scope.

C.2 Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Near or Within Project Limits

Federal-aid projects must be reviewed to determine if a railroad-highway grade crossing is within the limits of or near the terminus of the project. If such railroad-highway grade crossing exists, the project must be upgraded to meet the latest *MUTCD* requirements in accordance with *Title 23, United States Code (U.S.C), Chapter 1, Section 109(e)* and *23 C.F.R. 646.214(b)*. Please refer to Section B.3

Draft

of ***Chapter 7 – Rail-Highway*** ~~***Grade***~~ ***Crossings*** for further information.

C.3 Safety Improvements

Local agencies should strive to upgrade the safety of their facilities during scheduled maintenance intervals especially during pavement resurfacing projects. Particular attention should be paid to improving pedestrian and bicyclist safety using strategies such as crosswalks and bicycle facilities. Investments should also be made in improved guardrail end treatments and bridge-end transitions on high speed facilities.

C.3.a~~1~~ Pavement Safety Edge

Many low-cost strategies exist to improve the long-term safety of streets and highways. One such strategy is the pavement Safety Edge. The Safety Edge provides a higher probability of a vehicle returning safely to the travel lane when it drifts off the pavement. The Safety Edge is a wedge-shaped transition of the structural pavement to the unpaved shoulder. The wedge shape eliminates tire scrubbing against the pavement edge and improves vehicle stability as it crosses a drop-off.

The Safety Edge is particularly effective when providing a smooth transition from pavement to shoulder when vertical drop-offs exceed 2 inches. Construction of the Safety Edge typically includes initially pulling the unpaved shoulder for pavement structural course, and then backfilling onto the Safety Edge with installation of sod or turf. The Safety Edge is very effective in mitigating the severity of road-departure crashes should the unpaved shoulder erode away between maintenance intervals.

Details for the Safety Edge are included in Figures 10 – 1 Two Lane Road with Safety Edge and 10 – 2 Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulder). Safety Edge should be constructed adjacent to the pavement edge on rural roadways with no paved shoulder and posted speeds 45 mph and above.

Figure 10 – 1
Two Lane Road with Safety Edge

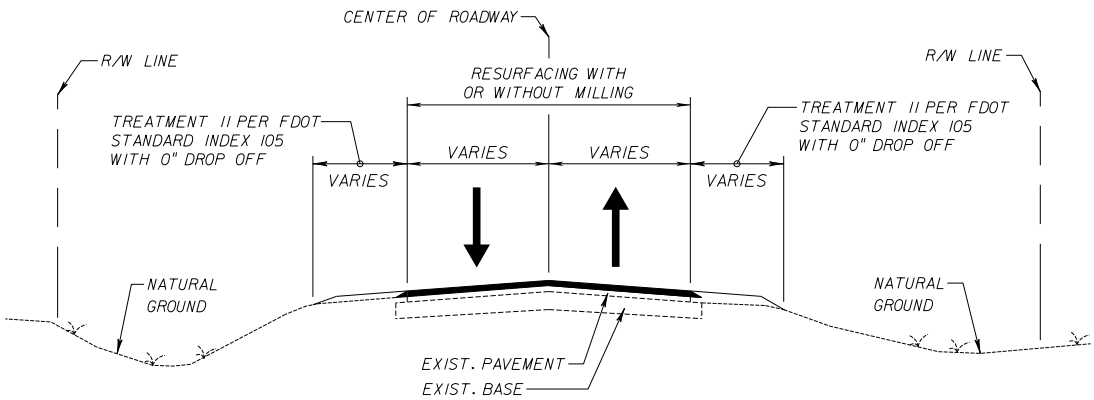
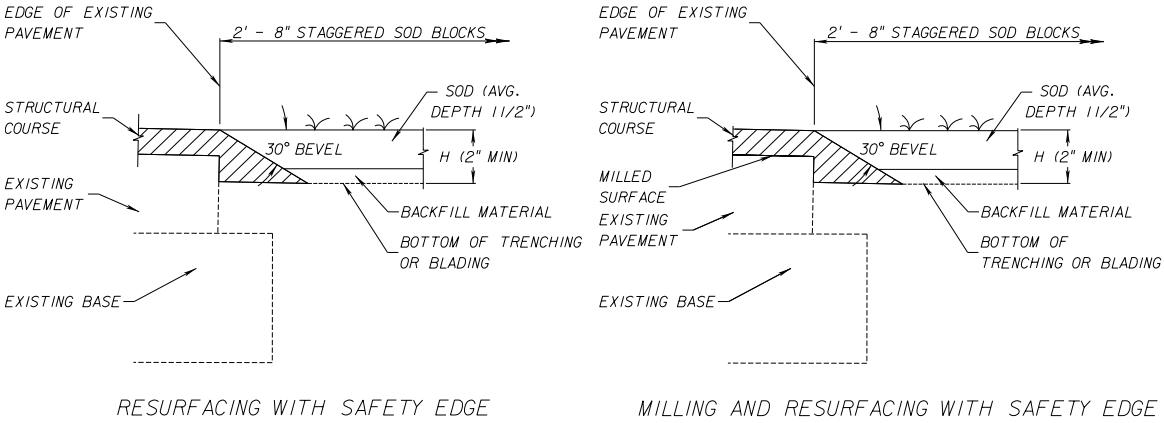


Figure 10 – 2
Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders)



FOR 2" ≤ H ≤ 5"

SINGLE LIFT
SAFETY EDGE DETAIL

Draft

C.4 Federal Aid Project Requirements

The following are the minimum requirements that a local highway resurfacing project scope must contain for federal-aid assistance including projects in the Local Agency Program (LAP):

1. Rework shoulders to be flush with the pavement and establish turf along the pavement edge.

2. Upgrade or replace existing roadside hardware (guardrail) as necessary for compliance with Federal criteria for 3R projects (as summarized in the ***Florida Department of Transportation's Plans Preparation Manual, Volume 1, Chapter 4***).

3. Meet the latest ***MUTCD*** standards for signing and pavement marking.

4. Construct or reconstruct, as appropriate, curb cuts and ramps to meet current accessibility requirements.

5. Upgrade the safety of the project by mitigating the impact of crashes involving vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.

   Note: The local agency may contact the FDOT District Safety Office and determine locations within the project with crash rates higher than average for similar facility type. The local agency may then identify the causes of the crashes from a review of crash report data provided by the FDOT District Safety Office. Based on this analysis, the local agency may then specify the appropriate crash mitigation measures (additional guardrail, signing, vibratory/audible pavement marking, designated crosswalks or other prudent safety-enhancing strategies).

6. Upgrade railroad crossings to meet the latest MUTCD requirements in accordance with ***Title 23, United States Code (U.S.C), Chapter 1, Section 109(e)*** and ***23 C.F.R. 646.214(b)***. Please refer to ***Section C~~B.3~~*** of ***Chapter 7 – Rail-Highway ~~Grade~~ Crossings*** for further information.

Draft

D REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that may be referenced for further guidance:

- *Source: AASHTO Standing Committee on Highways, 1997*
- FHWA Pavement Preservation Definitions, HIAM-20, September 12, 2005, http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/pavement/preservation/091205.cfm
- NCHRP Synthesis 417: Geometric Design Practices for Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation, http://www.nap.edu/

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 11

WORK ZONE SAFETY

A INTRODUCTION 11-1

B BACKGROUND 11-1

C OBJECTIVES 11-1

D POLICY 11-2

E PLANNING OF ROADWORK OPERATIONS 11-2
- E.1 Project Requirements 11-2
  - E.1.a Type of Operation 11-2
    - E.1.a.1 Routine Operations 11-3
    - E.1.a.2 Unplanned Operations 11-3
    - E.1.a.3 Planned Operations 11-3
  - E.1.b Nature of the Roadwork 11-3
  - E.1.c Nature of the Work Zone 11-4
- E.2 Work Scheduling 11-5
- E.3 Traffic Control and Protection 11-5
- E.4 Coordination with Others 11-6

F WORK ZONE MANAGEMENT 11-8
- F.1 Public Information 11-8
- F.2 Contracts and Permits 11-8
- F.3 Inspection and Supervision 11-8

G EVALUATION OF PROGRAM 11-9

~~11-111-111-111-211-211-211-211-311-311-311-311-411-511-511-611-811-811-811-811-9A INTRODUCTION ..... 11-1~~

~~B BACKGROUND ..... 11-1~~

~~C. OBJECTIVES ..... 11-1~~

~~D POLICY ..... 11-2~~

Draft

~~E PLANNING OF OPERATIONS ..... 11-2~~
~~E.1 Project Requirements ..... 11-2~~
~~E.1.a Type of Operation ..... 11-2~~
~~E.1.a.1 Routine Operations ..... 11-2~~
~~E.1.a.2 Traffic Incident Management ..... 11-2~~
~~E.1.a.3 Special Operations ..... 11-3~~
~~E.1.b Nature of Work ..... 11-3~~
~~E.1.c Nature of Work Zone ..... 11-4~~
~~E.2 Work Scheduling ..... 11-4~~
~~E.3 Traffic Control and Protection ..... 11-4~~
~~E.4 Coordination with Others ..... 11-5~~

~~F WORK ZONE OPERATIONS ..... 11-6~~
~~F.1 Public Information ..... 11-6~~
~~F.2 Contracts and Permits ..... 11-6~~
~~F.3 Inspection and Supervision ..... 11-6~~

~~G EVALUATION OF PROGRAM ..... 11-6~~

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 11

WORK ZONE SAFETY

A INTRODUCTION

Construction, maintenance, and utility work, along with traffic incident management, are roadwork operations that create operations produce serious highway safety challengesproblems. The changes toin normal traffic flow and the introduction of unexpected travelling conditions at many work zones may generateprovide hazardous situations and serious traffic conflicts. A comprehensive plan for work zone safety is required to minimize the risks and effects of these roadwork construction and maintenance operations and management of traffic incidents. Any activity within the highway right of way shall be subjected to the requirements of work zone safety.

B BACKGROUND

Section 316.0745, Florida Statutes, mandates the Department of Transportation compile and publish a manual of traffic control devices for use on the streets and highways of the state. To comply with this statute, the ***Federal Highway Administration's (FHWA) Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)*** has been adopted for use in ***Rule 14-15.010, Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.)***.

The intent of this chapter is to require conformance to the ***MUTCD, Part 6***.

C. OBJECTIVES

Managing traffic during roadwork operations is necessary to complete roadwork or resolve traffic incidents in a timely manner while minimizing traffic delays, maintaining access to travelers, and most importantly maintaining an acceptable level of safety. The general objective of a program of work zone safety is to protect workers, traffic incident responders, pedestrians, bicyclists, and motorists during roadworkconstruction and maintenance operations. This general objective may be achieved by meeting the following specific objectives:

- Provide adequate advance warning and information about upcoming work zones
- Provide the pedestrians, bicyclists and motorists driver clear information to understand how to navigate through or around the work zone

Draft

- Reduce the consequences of an out-of-control vehicle
- Provide safe access and storage for equipment and material
- Promote the speedy completion of projects (including thorough cleanup of the site)
- Promote the use of the appropriate traffic control and protection devices
- Provide safe passageways for pedestrians through, in, and/or around construction or maintenance work zones, including persons with disabilities in compliance with the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41 – Construction of Transportation Facilities by Public Entities*** or ***37.43 - Alteration of Transportation Facilities by Public Entities*** and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code*** as required by ***61G20-4.002.***accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990.

D POLICY

Each highway agency with responsibilities for construction, maintenance, utility, or traffic incident management, or any roadwork operations onf streets and highways shall develop and maintain a program of work zone safety, as set forth in the ***MUTCD, (Chapter 6A)***. Additional requirements related to all highway construction projects financed in whole or in part with federal-aid highway funds are provided in ***Title 23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 630 Subpart J***, more commonly known as the ***Work Zone Safety and Mobility Rule*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of projects financed in whole or in part with federal-aid highway funds.

E PLANNING OF ROADWORK OPERATIONS

The achievement of work zone safety requires careful and complete planning prior to the initiation of any roadwork project. The planning objective is to develop a comprehensivelete operational temporary traffic control plan that includesing the following considerations:

E.1 Project Requirements

E.1.a Type of Operation

Roadwork operationsConstruction and maintenance projects may be further classified as routine, unplannedtraffic incident management, or plannedspecial operations.

Draft

E.1.a.1 Routine Operations

Routine operations would involve projects such as mowing, street cleaning, and preventive maintenance operations conducted on a regularly scheduled basis.

E.1.a.2 Unplanned Operations~~Traffic Incident Management~~

Unplanned~~-~~ ~~Traffic Incident Management~~ operations require prompt, efficient action to restore the roadway to a safe condition. These include traffic incident management~~operations~~ such as clearing vehicle crash or storm ~~or crash~~ debris, addressing hazardous materials spills, repairing or replacing damaged highway safety components and restoring inoperative traffic control devices. ~~fire~~

E.1.a.3 ~~Special~~ Planned Operations

~~Special~~ Planned operations are ~~defined as the~~ scheduled roadwork~~those~~ projects, neither routine nor time-sensitive~~emergency~~ in nature, that are occasionally required to maintain or upgrade a street or highway. ~~These include any construction, maintenance, or utility roadwork, or other operation introducing~~~~producing a hazard to workers, bicyclists, pedestrians, or motorists.~~

~~Any activity involving encroachment upon the highway right of way by workers, equipment, or material storage and transfer shall be subjected to the requirements of work zone safety.~~

E.1.b Nature of the Roadw~~W~~ork ~~(fire, natural emeercencies)~~

The development of the temporary traffic control ~~operation~~ plan for work zone safety should include consideration of the following factors:

- Time span required
- Requirements for continuous operation or occupation of the work zone
- Capability of clearing the site during cessation of work activity

- The various construction methods, equipment, and procedures that may be utilized. Evaluation of alternate methods should be undertaken to determine the safest and most efficient procedures
- The necessity for storing equipment or material in the highway right of way
- Roadwork oOperations that may expose workers to hazards from through traffic
- Hazards to out of control vehicles such as excavations or unguarded structures or equipment
- Site conditions that may be confusing or distracting to the driver, pedestrian, or bicyclist, or produce sight distance problems
- Particular problems associated with night safety
- Equipment inspection and preventive maintenance program

E.1.c Nature of the Work Zone

The nature of the work zone and the prevailing traffic conditions should, to a large degree, influence the procedures incorporated into the operation plan for work zone safety. The development of the temporary traffic control plan for work zone safety should include consideration of the following factors:

- Location of the work zone in relation to the proximity to side streets, driveways, bus stops, schools, parks, places of worship, etc.
- A Ddetermination of the design vehicle, normal vehicle travelling speeds, and traffic volumes is essential.
- The Ddistribution of traffic with respect to time of day or day of week.(hour, day, etc.) types of traffic, and (peak traffic periods (seasonal, day of week, time of day, etc.)
- Truck percentage, frequency of transit vehicles, and direction of traffic is also important for establishing traffic control procedures.
- Presence of Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) such as dynamic message boards.
- Site conditions that may be confusing or distracting to the motorist, pedestrian, or bicyclist.
- Limitations on sight distance.

Draft

- Decreased visibility associated with nighttime roadwork operations.
- Impacts of detours and diversions to business and residential communities. (community)
- Maintenance of pPedestrian and bicycle accommodations.
- Reasonableness of detour length and complexity.

E.2 Work Scheduling

Proper work scheduling and sequencing of roadwork operations will not only promote efficiency, but also improve the safety aspects of construction and maintenance operations. Where feasible, routine operations and special projects should be conducted during periods of low traffic volume to reduce conflicts. Projects that may be carried out concurrently at the same site should be scheduled simultaneously to eliminate successive disruptions of traffic. Major projects that impede or restrict traffic flow should be coordinated and sequenced with similar projects in adjacent areas, to produce a minimum of disruption to orderly traffic flow in the overall highway network. The scheduling of work at a given location should include consideration of traffic generation (including special events), as well as traffic restrictions by work activities on the surrounding highway network.

E.3 Traffic Control and Protection

Plans for traffic control around or through work zones should be developed with safety receiving a high priority. Plans should include protection at work zones when work is in progress and when operations have been halted (such as during the night). Provisions for the protection of work crews, traffic control personnel, bicyclists, pedestrians (in areas of high pedestrian use, construction of temporary facilities should be considered), and motorists shall be included in the operation plans. In all cases, tThe operation plan for traffic control and protection should include provisionsconsider provisions for the following:

- Advance warning devices
- Work zone traffic signs
- Clear view of work zone
- Roadway delineation and channeling devices
- Regulatory information

- High visibility safety apparel for workers
- Traffic control officers and law enforcement
- Hazard warning
- Barriers
- Pedestrian and bicyclist safety
- Access for pedestrians, bicyclists, and vehicles
- Access to adjacent properties by the public during construction
- Location of construction vehicles and equipment, including access into and out of the work zone
- Night safety (***Chapter 6 - Roadway Lighting***)
- Personnel training
- Traffic control and protective devices
- Transit Stops – including passenger access
- Abrupt changes in geometry (lane narrowing, lane drop, transitions)
- Turning restrictions
- Temporary traffic signals

E.4 Coordination with Others

To ensure safe and efficient construction and maintenance roadwork operations, the operation temporary traffic control plan should be developed and executed in cooperation with all interested individuals and agencies, which may includeing the following:

- Highway agencies
- Police agencies
- Emergency agencies
- Contractors
- Utilities
- Building departments
- Mass transit agencies

Draft

- Traffic generators
- Local residents and businesses
- Neighboring jurisdictions
- School Boards
- Postal Services
- Media
- Trash and recycling pick ups

F WORK ZONE MANAGEMENTOPERATIONS

Roadwork operationsConstruction and maintenance projects shallould follow an appropriate coordinated temporary traffic controlthe operation plan and should include:.

F.1 Public Information

All reasonable effort should be made to inform the public of the location, duration, and nature of impending roadwork operationsconstruction of maintenance projects. Transit agencies should be given advanced notice of planned operations so they can be responsible for notifying their passengers.

F.2 Contracts and Permits

For construction and reconstruction projects, the general work zone layout; traffic control and protection procedures; occupational safety and health requirements; and specific traffic control devices required should be incorporated in the contract plans and specifications.

New utility installations in public rights of way are prohibited unless a permit by the appropriate highway agency is issued. Permits for routine maintenance (e.g., deteriorated pole/equipment replacement), minor alterations (e.g., changes in cable, wire, or transformer size), service drops, or emergency work should generally not be required. ***Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)*** regulations for work zone safety should be reviewed prior to any construction by utility companies involving encroachment of the highway right of way by workers, equipment or material.

F.3 Inspection and Supervision

A regular program of inspection and supervision of all construction and maintenance projects shall be established and executed.

Draft

G EVALUATION OF PROGRAM

The entire program for work zone safety should be periodically evaluated and revised to provide the safest practicable environment for workers, pedestrians, and motorists during roadwork construction, utility, and maintenance operations.

Draft

CHAPTER 12

CONSTRUCTION

A INTRODUCTION 12-1

B OBJECTIVES 12-1

C CONTROL OF THE WORK 12-2
- C.1 Plans and Contract Documents 12-2
  - C.1.a Plans 12-2
  - C.1.b Alterations in Plans 12-2
  - C.1.c Working Drawings (for Structures) 12-2
    - C.1.c.1 General 12-2
    - C.1.c.2 Submission of Working, Shop, and Erection Drawings 12-2
    - C.1.c.3 Responsibility for Accuracy of Working Drawings 12-3
- C.2 Coordination of Plans, Specifications, and Special Provisions 12-3
- C.3 Conformity of Work with Plans 12-4
- C.4 Conformity of Work Shown in Regulatory Permits 12-4
- C.5 Authority of the Engineer 12-4
- C.6 Engineering and Layout 12-4
  - C.6.a Control Points Furnished 12-4
  - C.6.b Layout of Work 12-5
  - C.6.c Personnel, Equipment, and Record Requirements 12-5
- C.7 Contractor's Supervision 12-5
  - C.7.a Prosecution of Work 12-5
  - C.7.b Contractor's Superintendent 12-5
  - C.7.c Supervision for Emergencies 12-6
- C.8 General Inspection Requirements 12-6
  - C.8.a Cooperation by Contractor 12-6
  - C.8.b Failure of Engineer to Reject Work During Construction 12-6
- C.9 Final Construction Inspection Maintenance until Final Acceptance 12-6

D CONTROL OF MATERIALS 12-7

Draft

D.1 Source of Supply and Quality Requirements 12-7
D.1.a Only Approved Materials to be Used 12-7
D.2 Inspection and Tests at Source of Supply 12-7
D.2.a General 12-7
D.2.b Cooperation by Contractor 12-7
D.3 Control by Samples and Tests 12-7
D.3.a Materials to be Tested, Samples 12-7
D.3.b Applicable Standards 12-8
D.4 Quality Control System 12-8
D.4.a General Requirements 12-8
D.4.b Documentation 12-8
D.4.c Corrective Actions 12-9

Draft

CHAPTER 12

CONSTRUCTION

A INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this chapter is to establish guidelines for field procedures, as they pertain to control of construction projects, supervision, and contract administration. All construction projects require an inspection process to administer the contract, to certify the project has been constructed within reasonable conformance with the plans/specifications, and the materials which were incorporated into the project were properly tested/certified.

All construction projects require:

- An inspection procedure to administer the contract
- Certification

B OBJECTIVES

Construction of street and highway facilities is the result of the effort, of the engineer, the contractor, and the owner. Minimum construction standards shall be followed to provide for proper implementation of the design. The following general objectives for roadway construction should be followed to ensure proper construction:

- All construction performed and all materials utilized shall be in reasonably close conformity with the construction plans and contract documents.
- The responsibilities and obligations of the owner, engineer, and contractor should be clearly defined.
- A safe working environment shall be provided in accordance with ***Chapter 11 - Work Zone Safety***.
- Adequate procedures through established methods of sampling and testing shall be implemented to provide for the control and placement of materials.

Draft

C CONTROL OF THE WORK

C.1 Plans and Contract Documents

The Contractor will be furnished an appropriate number of copies of the plans and special provisions as required for the particular project. The Contractor shall have available at the work site, at all times, one copy each of the plans (including relevant Design Standards), Specifications, and Special Provisions.

C.1.a Plans

The plans furnished consist of general drawings showing such details which are necessary to give a comprehensive idea of the construction contemplated. Roadway plans will show, in general, alignment, profile grades, typical cross sections, and general cross sections as necessary. Structure plans, in general, will show in detail all dimensions of the work contemplated.

C.1.b Alterations in Plans

No changes shall be made on any plan or drawing after it is approved by the Engineer, except as authorized in writing by the Engineer. All authorized alterations affecting the requirements and information given on the approved plans shall be in writing.

C.1.c Working Drawings (for Structures)

C.1.c.1 General

The Contractor shall furnish such working, shop, and erection drawings, as may be required, to complete the structure in compliance with the design shown on the plans.

C.1.c.2 Submission of Working, Shop, and Erection Drawings

All working, shop, and erection drawings prepared by the Contractor or his agents (subcontractor, fabricator, supplier, etc.)

Draft

shall be reviewed, dated, stamped, approved, and signed by the Contractor prior to submission to the Engineer of Record for review. The Contractor's signed approval of drawings submitted shall confirm he/she has verified the work requirements, field measurements, construction criteria, sequence of assembly and erection, access and clearances, catalog numbers, and other similar data. Each series of drawings shall indicate the specification section and page or drawing number of the contract plans to which the submission applies. The Contractor shall indicate on the working, shop, and erections drawings all deviations from the contract drawings and shall itemize all deviations in his letter of transmittal.

C.1.c.3 Responsibility for Accuracy of Working Drawings

It is understood that approval by the Engineer of the Contractor's working drawings does not relieve the Contractor of any responsibility for accuracy of dimensions and details, or for conformity of dimensions and details. The Contractor shall be responsible for agreement and conformity of his working drawings with the approved plans and specifications.

C.2 Coordination of Plans, Specifications, and Special Provisions

The specifications, plans, special provisions, and all supplemental documents are integral parts of the contract, and a requirement occurring in one is as binding as though occurring in all. They are to be complementary and to describe and provide for a complete work.

In cases of discrepancy, the governing order of the documents shall be as follows:

- Special Provisions
- Plans
- Standard Drawings
- Specifications

Draft

C.3 Conformity of Work with Plans

All work performed and all materials furnished shall be in reasonably close conformity with the lines, grades, cross sections, dimensions, and material requirements, including tolerances, shown on the plans or indicated in the specifications.

In the event the Engineer finds the materials or the finished product in which the materials are used not within reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications, but reasonably acceptable work has been produced, he/she shall then make a determination if the work shall be accepted and remain in place. In this event, the Engineer will document the basis of acceptance by contract modification which will provide for an appropriate adjustment in the contract price for such work or materials as he deems necessary to conform to his determination based on engineering judgment.

In the event the Engineer finds the materials, or the finished product in which the materials are used, or the work performed, are not in reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications and have resulted in an inferior or unsatisfactory product, the work or materials shall be removed and replaced or otherwise corrected by and at the expense of the Contractor.

C.4 Conformity of Work Shown in Regulatory Permits

All work shall be accomplished in accordance with special conditions of the regulatory permits.

C.5 Authority of the Engineer

All work shall be performed to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

C.6 Engineering and Layout

C.6.a Control Points Furnished

Horizontal and vertical control points are required at appropriate intervals along the line of the project to facilitate the proper layout of the work. The Contractor shall preserve all control points furnished.

Draft

C.6.b Layout of Work

Utilizing the control points furnished, all horizontal and vertical controls shall be established as necessary to construct the work in conformance with the plans and specifications. The work shall include performing all calculations required and setting all stakes needed, such as grade stakes, offset stakes, reference point stakes, slope stakes, and other reference marks or points necessary to provide lines and grades for construction of all roadway, bridge, and miscellaneous items.

C.6.c Personnel, Equipment, and Record Requirements

The Contractor shall employ only competent personnel and utilize only suitable equipment in performing layout work.

Adequate field notes and records shall be kept as layout work is accomplished. These field notes and records shall be available for review by the Engineer as the work progresses and copies shall be furnished to the Engineer at the time of completion of the project. Any inspection or checking of the Contractor's field notes or layout work by the Engineer, and the acceptance of all or any part thereof, shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to achieve the lines, grades, and dimensions shown in the plans and specifications.

C.7 Contractor's Supervision

C.7.a Prosecution of Work

The Contractor shall give the work the constant attention necessary to assure the scheduled progress and shall cooperate fully with the Engineer and with other contractors at work in the vicinity.

C.7.b Contractor's Superintendent

The Contractor shall at all times have on the work site, as his/her agent, a competent superintendent capable of thoroughly interpreting the plans and specifications and thoroughly experienced in the type of work being performed, and who shall receive the instructions from the Engineer or his/her authorized representatives. The superintendent shall have full

Draft

authority to execute the orders or directions of the Engineer and to supply promptly any materials, tools, equipment, labor, and incidentals which may be required. Such superintendence shall be furnished regardless of the amount of work sublet.

C.7.c Supervision for Emergencies

The Contractor shall have a responsible person available at or reasonably near the work site on a twenty-four hour basis, seven days a week, in order that he/she may be contacted in emergencies and in cases where immediate action must be taken to maintain traffic or to handle any other problems that might arise. The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, installing, and maintaining all traffic control devices as described in ***Chapter 11- Work Zone Safety*** and in the plans.

C.8 General Inspection Requirements

C.8.a Cooperation by Contractor

No work shall be done nor materials used without suitable supervision or inspection by the Engineer. The Contractor shall furnish the Engineer with every reasonable facility for ascertaining whether the work performed and materials used are in accordance with the requirements and intent of the plans and specifications.

C.8.b Failure of Engineer to Reject Work During Construction

If, during or prior to construction operations, the Engineer should fail to reject defective work or materials, whether from lack of discovery of such defect or for any reason, such initial failure to reject shall in no way prevent his/her later rejection when such defect is discovered.

C.9 Final Construction Inspection Maintenance until Final Acceptance

The Contractor shall maintain all work in first-class condition until it has been completed as a whole and has been accepted by the Engineer. When all materials have been furnished, all work has been performed, and the

Draft

construction contemplated by the contract has been satisfactorily completed, the Engineer will make the final inspection.

D CONTROL OF MATERIALS

D.1 Source of Supply and Quality Requirements

D.1.a Only Approved Materials to be Used

Only materials conforming to the requirements of the specifications and approved by the Engineer shall be used in the work. Any materials proposed for use may be inspected or tested at any time during their preparation and use. No material which, after approval, has in any way become unfit for use, shall be used in the work.

D.2 Inspection and Tests at Source of Supply

D.2.a General

The Engineer may undertake the inspection of materials at the source of supply.

D.2.b Cooperation by Contractor

The Contractor shall assure the Engineer has free entry at all times to such parts of the plant as concern the manufacture or production of the materials ordered, and shall bear all costs incurred in providing all reasonable facilities to assist in determining whether the material furnished complies with the requirements of the specifications.

D.3 Control by Samples and Tests

D.3.a Materials to be Tested, Samples

The Engineer may require any or all materials to be subjected to tests by means of samples or otherwise, at production points, after delivery, or both, as he/she may determine.

Draft

D.3.b Applicable Standards

Methods of sampling and testing materials shall conform to the Engineer's requirements and should be in accordance with Florida Sampling and Testing Methods (FSTM) so far as covered therein. Otherwise, they should be in accordance with Standards of AASHTO, ASTM, or other criteria as specifically designated by the Engineer. Where an AASHTO, ASTM, or other non-Florida Method is designated, but a Florida Method which is similar exists, sampling and testing should be in accordance with the Florida Method.

Whenever in these Specifications, FSTM, AASHTO, ASTM, or other standards are referenced without identification of the specific time of issuance, the reference should be construed to mean the most current issuance, including interims or addendums thereto, at the time of advertisement for bids for a project.

D.4 Quality Control System

D.4.a General Requirements

The Contractor shall furnish and maintain a quality control system that will provide reasonable assurance that all materials and products submitted for acceptance conform to the contract requirements, whether manufactured or processed by the Contractor or procured from suppliers or subcontractors. The Contractor shall perform or have performed the inspection and tests required to substantiate product conformance to contract requirements and shall also perform or have performed all inspections and tests otherwise required by the contract.

D.4.b Documentation

The Contractor shall maintain adequate records of all inspections and tests. The records shall indicate the nature and number of tests made, the number and type of deficiencies found, the quantities approved and rejected, and the nature of corrective action taken, as appropriate.

Draft

D.4.c Corrective Actions

The Contractor shall take prompt action to correct any errors, equipment malfunctions, process changes, or other assignable causes which have resulted or could result in the submission of materials, products, and completed construction which do not conform to the requirements of the specifications.

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 13

PUBLIC TRANSIT

A INTRODUCTION 13-1

B OBJECTIVE 13-2

C TRANSIT COMPONENTS 13-3
- C.1 Boarding and Alighting (B&A) Areas 13-3
- C.2 Shelters 13-7
- C.3 Benches 13-8
- C.4 Stops and Station Areas 13-8
- C.5 Bus Bays (Pullout or Turnout Bays) 13-8

D PUBLIC TRANSIT FACILITIES 13-10
- D.1. Curb-Side Facilities 13-10
- D.2 Street-Side Facilities 13-10
- D.3 Bus Stop Lighting 13-11

E REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 13-13

~~A INTRODUCTION .....~~

~~B OBJECTIVE .....~~

~~C TRANSIT COMPONENTS .....~~
- ~~C.1 Boarding and Alighting (B&A) Areas .....~~
- ~~C.2 Shelters ..... 13-6~~
- ~~C.3 Benches ..... 13-7~~
- ~~C.4 Stops and Station Areas ..... 13-7~~
- ~~C.5 Bus Bays (Pullout or Turnout Bays) ..... 13-7~~

~~D PUBLIC TRANSIT FACILITIES ..... 13-8~~
- ~~D.1. Curb-Side Facilities ..... 13-8~~
- ~~D.2 Street-Side Facilities ..... 13-8~~
- ~~D.3 Bus Stop Lighting ..... 13-9~~

Draft

E REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 13-11

Draft

FIGURES

Figure 13 – 1 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways with Connection to the Roadway 13-5

Figure 13 – 2 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways with Connection to the Sidewalk 13-6

Figure 13 – 3 Bus Shelter Location 13-7

Figure 13 – 4 Bus Stop Locations..... 13-12

~~Figure 13 – 1 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways with Connection to the Roadway ..... 13-4~~

~~Figure 13 – 2 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways with Connection to the Sidewalk ..... 13-5~~

~~Figure 13 – 3 Bus Shelter Location ..... 13-6~~

CHAPTER 13

PUBLIC TRANSIT

A INTRODUCTION

All usual modes of transportation (autos, trucks, transit vehicles, rails, aircraft, water craft, bicyclistbikes, and pedestrians) should be considered when planning, designing, and constructing the surface transportation system. Where there is a demand for highways to serve vehicles, there could also be a demand for public transit or public transportation. Public transit should be considered in all phases of a project, including planning, preliminary design and engineering, design, construction, and maintenanceetc. Coordination with the appropriate public transit provider(s) will help determine the need for transit related infrastructureand justification of bus bays on a project-by-project basis. With the recent passing of various legislation, multimodalism is the ultimate goal. The integration of public transit street side facilities along with pedestrian and bicycle facilities furthers the implementation of this goal.

Planning and designing for public transit is important because it is an integral part of the overall surface transportation system. Public transit is defined as passenger transportation service, local or regional in nature, thatnature, which is available to any person. It operates on established schedules along designated routes or lines with specific stops and is designed to move relatively large numbers of people at one time. Public transit includes bus, light rail, street carstrolleys,and bus rapid transit and paratransit. Public transportation is similar in definition because it serves the general public, it also includes non-fixed route services that are door-to-door or paratransit services.

With rising levels of congestion resulting in the use of new strategies to effectively and efficiently manage mobility, there is an increased demand for accessible and user friendly public transit. New strategies include increased emphasis on public transit and new emphasis on Transportation System Management (TSM), as well as Transportation Demand Management (TDM). TSM is the use of low cost capital improvements to increase the efficiency of roadways and transit services such as, retiming traffic signals or predesignatingpredestinating traffic flow. TDM focuses on people reducing the number of personal vehicle trips, especially during peak periods. TDM includes the promotion of alternatives to the single occupant vehicle, including public transportation, carpooling, vanpooling, bicycling, walking, and telecommuting, as well as other methods for reducing peak hour travel.

Draft

Federal and State legislation provide the stimulus for planning, designing, and constructing a fully integrated transportation system benefiting the traveling public and the environment. Examples of legislation include the – Fixing America's Surface Transportation ActMoving Ahead for Progress in the 21st Century Act Safe, Accountable, Flexible, and Efficient Transportation Equity Act – A Legacy for Users (FAST ActMAP-21SAFETEA-LU), The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA), and The Clean Air Act Amendment of 1990 (CAAA). In response to this legislation, the surface transportation system should provide for concurrent use by automobiles, public transit and rail, and, to the extent possible, bicycles and pedestrians.

Throughout the entire process, coordination with transit as if it were a utility is essential.

B OBJECTIVE

There are a number of methods to efficiently develop a coordinated surface transportation system. Coordination among agencies is necessary during the planning and design stages to:

- incorporate transit needs and during the construction phase for re-routing bus (and complementary pedestrian) movements, and
- for actual transit agency specific requirements (e.g., bus stop sign replacement, shelter installations, etc.).

For planning purposes, the state and local Transportation Improvement Program (TIP) should be referenced. Additionally, individual transit authorities have five ten year Transit Development Plans (TDPs) that are updated annually. The TDP can be used as a guide for planned transit needs along existing and new transportation corridors so transit consideration and transit enhancements can be incorporated where appropriate.

Draft

C TRANSIT COMPONENTS

C.1 Boarding and Alighting (B&A) Areas Stops and Station Areas

Boarding and Alighting (B&A) areas help to create an accessible bus stop by providing a raised platform that is compatible with a bus that kneels or extends a ramp. Where new bus stops are located with bus bays, or other areas where a lift or ramp is to be deployed, they shall have Aa B&A boarding and alighting area hasconsisting of a firm, stable and slip-resistant surface with a minimum clear length of 8.0 feet96 inches (measured perpendicular from to the curb or vehicle roadway edge), and a minimum clear width of 5.0 feet60 inches (measured parallel to the vehicle roadway). Firm, stable, and slip resistant B&A areas are required if amenities such as benches or, shelters are added to a bus stop. to the maximum extent allowed by legal or site restraints, and shall be connected to streets, sidewalks, or pedestrian paths by an accessible route. B&A areas are not required at bus stops on flush shoulder roadways where only a bus stop sign is provided. Coordinate with the appropriate public transit provider(s) to determine compatibility with equipment and transit vehicles.

The slope of the B&A boarding and alighting area parallel to the roadway shall to the extent practicable, be the same as the roadway. For water drainage, a maximum slope of 1:50 (2%) perpendicular to the roadway is allowed. In cases where there are no sidewalks or curbs, bus stop boarding and alighting areas may be necessary to allow the wheelchair passengers to board or alight from a transit vehicle. Benches and other site amenities shall not be placed on the B&A area. The B&A area can be located either within or outside the shelter, and shall be connected to streets, sidewalks, or pedestrian circulation paths by an accessible route.

On flush shoulder roadways, a B&A area may be constructed at the shoulder point (or edge of shoulder pavement on roadways with a design speed of 45 mph or less) as shown in Figures 13-1 and 13-2 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways.. A Type “E” curb (5” curb height) should be used.

A sidewalk and/or ramp provided with the B&A area shall be a minimum of 5 feet in width,; and the ramp shall not exceed a slope of 1:12. A detectable warning is required where a sidewalk associated with a B&A area connects to the roadway at grade. Except for the area adjacent to the 5” curb, the areas surrounding the B&A area shall be flush with the adjacent shoulder and side slopes and designed to be

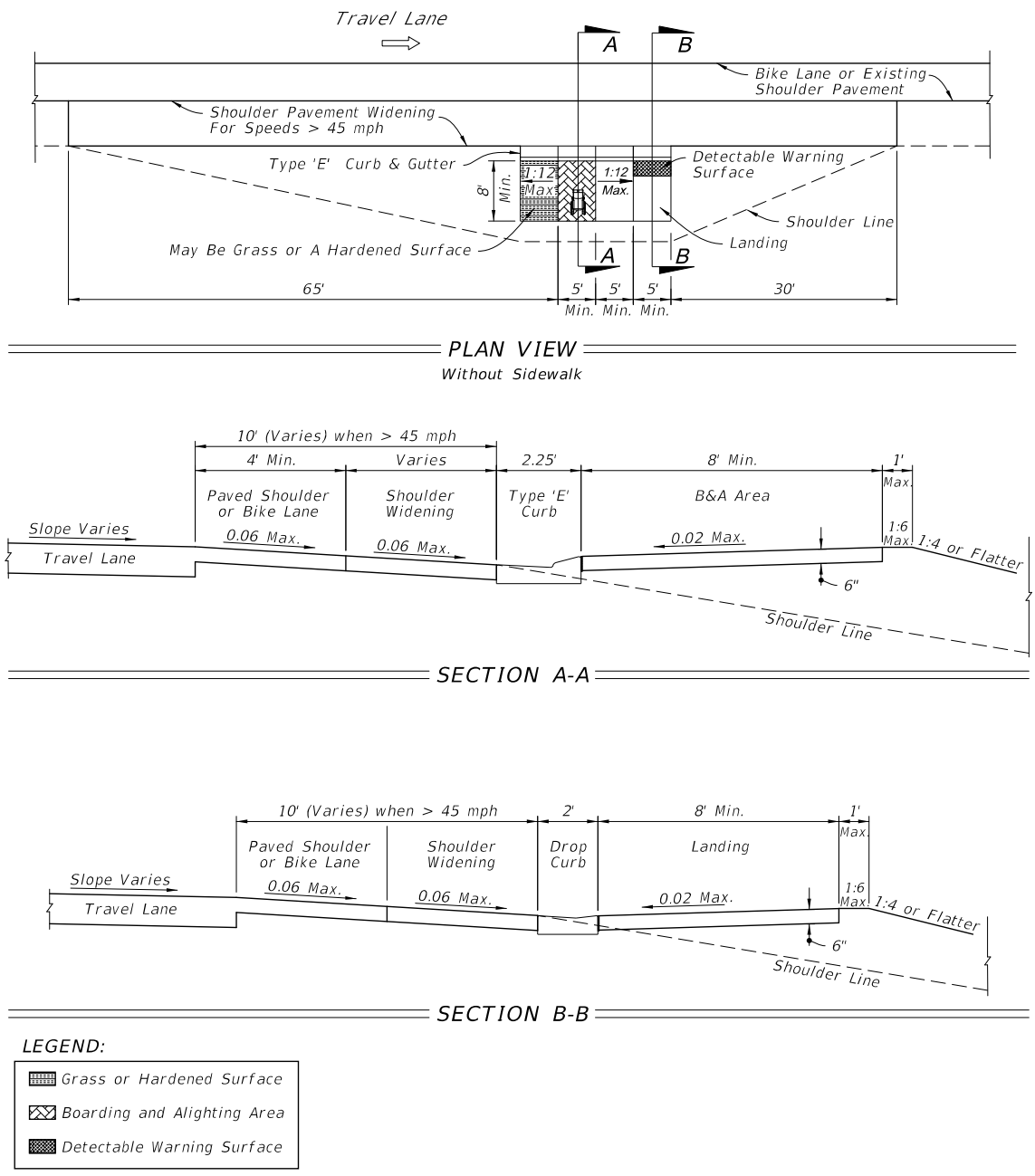
Draft

traversable by errant vehicles. On the upstream side of the platform, a maximum slope of 1:12 should be provided, and may be grass or a hardened surface. The B&A area (and ramp and level landing if needed) should be constructed with 6" thick concrete.

Coordinateion with the appropriate public transit provider(s) is necessary.

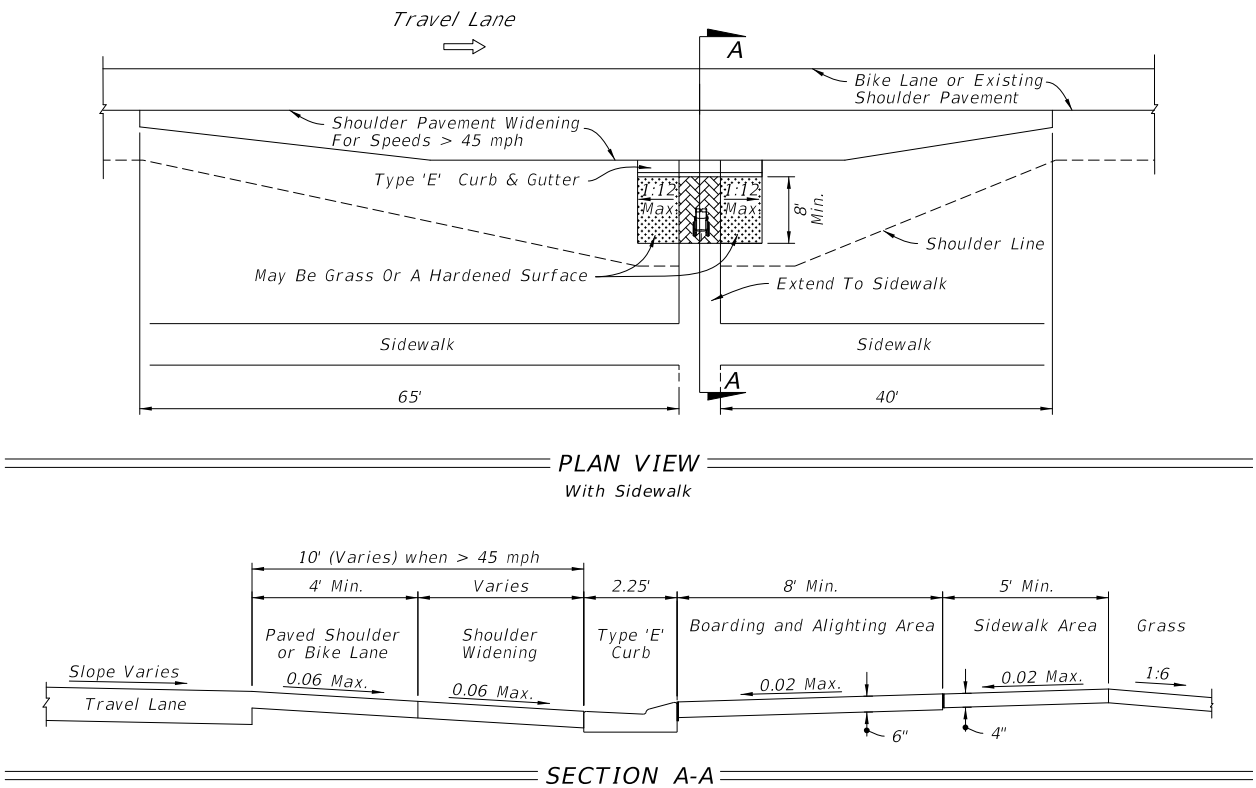
Draft

Figure 13 – 1 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways with Connection to the Roadway



Draft

Figure 13 – 2 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways with Connection to the Sidewalk



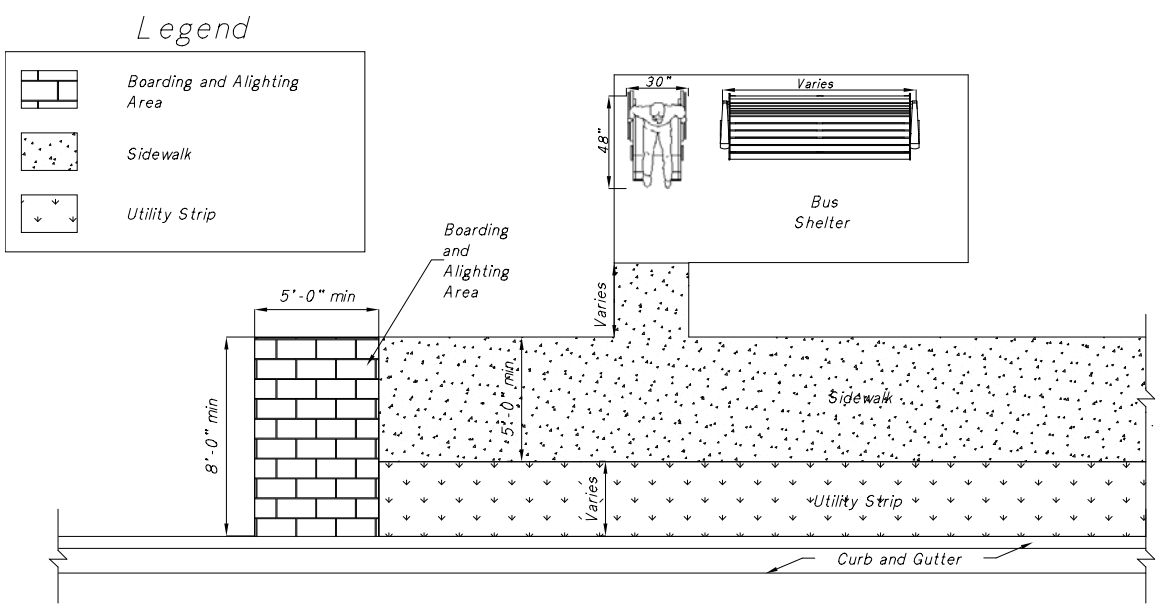
Draft

C.2 Shelters

Every public transit system has different needs with regards to shelters and corresponding amenities (e.g., benches, information kiosks, leaning posts, trash receptacles, etc.). Shelter foundation and associated pad size vary from stop to stop based on right of way availability, line of sight, and facility usage~~, etc~~. New or replaced bus shelters shall be installed or positioned ~~as to permit a wheelchair or mobility aid user to enter~~to provide an accessible route from the public way (sidewalk or roadway)~~)~~ ~~and~~ to reach a location ~~therein~~ that has~~having~~ a minimum clear floor area of 30 inches by 48 inches, entirely within the perimeter of the shelter.

~~Such~~ S~~s~~helters shall be connected by an accessible route to a B&A ~~the boarding and alighting~~ area. ~~provided under C.1 Stops and Station Areas, this Chapter.~~ Coordinate~~ion~~ with the appropriate public transit provider(s)~~ is necessary~~. Where feasible, ~~All s~~Sshelters should provide a location for a bicycle rack. Shelters should be installed at locations where demand warrants installation and in accordance with clear zone criteria in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** (***Section C.10.e*** Bus Benches and Transit Shelters and Table 3-15~~3~~ Minimum Width of Clear Zone)) of this Manual.

Figure 13 – 3 Bus Shelter Location



C.3 Benches

If a bench is provided, it should be on an accessible route, Bench placement shall be in an accessible location (i.e., not on the far side of a drainage ditch from the actual bus stop), on an accessible route appropriately out of the path of travel on a sidewalk. BenchesThey and shall have an adjacent firm, stable and slip-resistant surface at least 30 inches wide and 48 inches deep to allow a user of a wheelchair user to sit next to the bench, permitting the user shoulder-to-shoulder seating with a companion. Connection between the bench, the sidewalk and/or bus stop B&A boarding and alighting area shall be provided. Coordinateion with the Public Transportation Office and the local public transit provider(s) is necessary.

C.4 Stops and Station Areas

Transit stops should be located so that there is a level and stable surface for boarding vehicles. Locating transit stops at signalized intersections increases the usability for pedestrians with disabilities.

Concrete Bus Stop Boarding and Alighting Areas

Although not always practical, there are situations where concrete bus stop boarding and alighting areas should be incorporated into the pavement design of a project. Frequent stopping transit vehicles in a particular location is an example where concrete pads may be warranted.

C.5 Bus Bays (Pullout or Turnout Bays)

In some situationsturnoutBbus bays for transit vehicles are appropriatemay be necessary (ei.ge., extended dwell time,consistent slow boarding layover needs, safety reasons, high volumes or speed of traffic, etc.). Bus bays can be designed for one or more buses. Coordinateion with the Public Transportation Office and/or thelocal public transit provider(s) will to help determine the need forand justification of bus bays. When possible, bus bays should be located on the far side of a signalized intersection. The traffic signal will create the critical gap needed for bus re-entry into traffic. There are several publications available which provide additional design information for transit system applications. The Department District Public Transportation Office(s) maintains a library of these publications.

Draft

C.6 Promote Public Transit

All citizens and businesses in the State of Florida are encouraged to promote public transit. This can be done in many ways, from providing employees reduced fares to providing route maps and schedules. Work with your local transit agency to provide service to large employment areas and major attractions. Assist local transit agencies in providing such things as bus lanes, park and ride lots and easements for bus shelters and bicycle parking. Encourage businesses or neighborhoods to hold a "Commuter Choices Week" and invite your transit agencies to provide information on the advantages of using transit. "Commuter Choices Week" is a state sponsored event that promotes alternative transportation in the work place (walk, bike, bus, transit, telecommuting).

D PUBLIC TRANSIT FACILITIES

When a project includes a public transit route, curb-side and street-side transit facilities for bus stops should be considered in the roadway design process. Transit facilities shall comply with ***Chapter 14-20, Florida Administrative Code***.,

Following is a link to the code:
https://www.flrules.org/gateway/ChapterHome.asp?Chapter=14-20

The "Accessing Transit: Design Handbook for Florida Bus Passenger Facilities" and "Transit Vehicles and Facilities on Streets and Highways" provides guidance relating to provisions for curb-side and street-side facilities.

D.1. Curb-Side Facilities

Curb-side facilities are the most common, simple and convenient form of facilities at a bus stop. These include bus stop signs, passenger waiting shelters, bus stop wheelchair access padB&A areas, benches, bike racks, leaning rails, and shelter lighting.. Chapter 1 of "Accessing Transit" provides additional details and guidelines for each type of transit facility that may be considered as guidelines. Coordinateion with the appropriate public transit provider(s) may be necessary into determine the appropriate type and placement of amenitiesdeveloping the bus stop plans.

D.2 Street-Side Facilities

Bus stop locations can be categorized as far side, near side and mid blockmid-block stops. Bus stops may be designed with a bus bay or pullout to allow buses to pick up and discharge passengers in an area outside of the travel lane. This design feature allows traffic to flow freely without the obstruction of stopped buses.See Figure 13 - 31 for typical detail for the bus stop and bus bay categories. Chapter 2 of "Accessing Transit" provides additional details that may be considered as guidelines. Far side bus stops and bays are preferred. See ***Accessing Transit 2013*** for a more detailed discussion of the location of the bus stop or bay.

Bus bays can be closed-ended, open-ended, or nubs/bulbs, and can be positioned

Draft

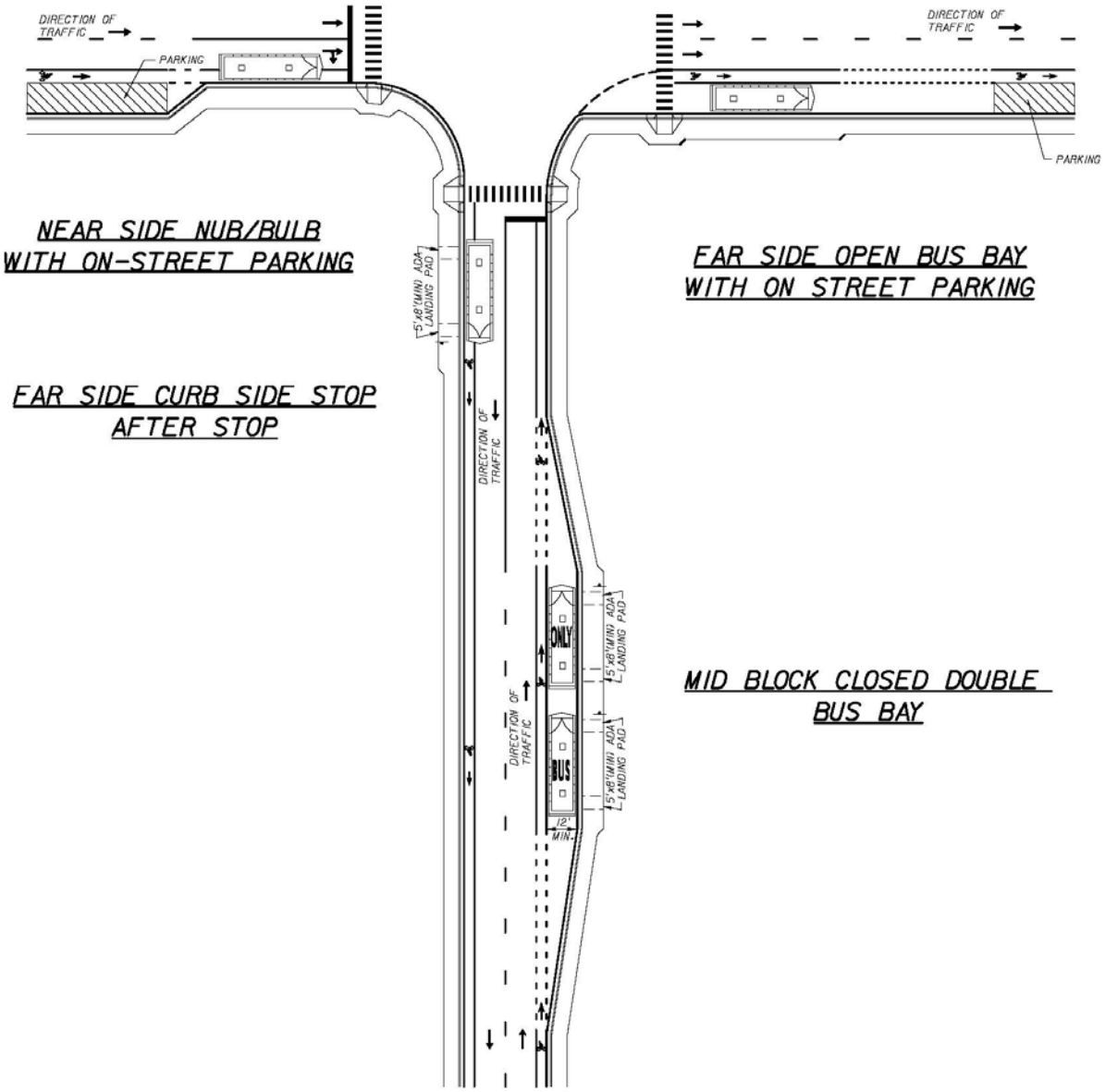
near-side, far-side, or mid-block in relation to an intersection, as illustrated in Figure- 13 - 3 Bus Shelter Location. The greater distance placed between waiting passengers and the travel lane increases safety at a stop. Bus bays are classified as 'closed', 'open' or 'bulbs'. Detailed standard drawings that may be considered for various bus bay configurations are provided in "Transit Facilities Guidelines" provide detailed standard drawings that may be considered for various bus bay configurations on the Department's Public Transportation Office website: http://www.dot.state.fl.us/transit/.

The total length of the bus bay should allow room for an entrance taper, a stopping area, and an exit taper as a minimum. However, in some cases it may be appropriate to consider providing acceleration and deceleration lanes depending on the volume and speed of the through traffic. This decision should be based upon site specific conditions. "Accessing Transit" provides detailed bus bay dimensions for consideration with various right of way and access conditions.when right of way is unlimited and access points are limited.

D.3 Bus StopBay Lighting

Lighting design for bus bay pavement areasstops should meet the same criteria for minimum illumination levels, uniformity ratios and max-to-min ratios that are being applied to the adjoining roadway based on ***Chapter 6 – Roadway Lighting*** of this Manual. If lighting is not provided for the adjoining roadway, coordinateion with the transit agency may be considered to determine if lighting is toshould be provided for the bus stop area, particularly when night transit services are provided. A decision to install lighting for the adjoining bus stop area may include illumination of the bus bay pavement area. The use of solar panel lighting for bus stopsbays is another option that should be considered.

Figure 13 – 4 1 Bus Stop Bay Locations Categories



Draft

E REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that may be referenced for further guidance:

- FDOT's " 2013 Accessing Transit Design Handbook ***for Florida Bus Passenger Facilities" on the Public Transportation Office web site:*** http://www.dot.state.fl.us/transit/Pages/NewTransitFacilitiesDesign.shtm

- TCRP Report 155 – Track Design Handbook for Light Rail Transit, Second Edition http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/tcrp/tcrp_rpt_155.pdf

- Central Florida Commuter Rail Transit Project, Design Criteria – Phase 2 South RFP http://corporate.sunrail.com/wp-content/uploads/2015/06/P2S-RFP-Design-Criteria-06-15-15.pdf

- Transit facilities shall comply with Chapter 14-20, Florida Administrative Code, Private Use of Right of Way , Following is a link to the code: https://www.flrules.org/gateway/ChapterHome.asp?Chapter=14-20

- "Transit Vehicles and Facilities on Streets and Highways", from Transit Cooperative Research Program (TCRP) of the Transportation Research Board of the National Research Council January 2007

Draft

CHAPTER 14

DESIGN EXCEPTIONS

A GENERAL 14-1

B DESIGN EXCEPTIONS 14-1

C RECOMMENDATIONS FOR AND APPROVAL OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS ... 14-2

D COORDINATION OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS 14-2

E JUSTIFICATION AND DOCUMENTATION OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS 14-3

F FINAL PROCESSING OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS 14-5

EXHIBITS

EXHIBIT 14 – A Sample Request Letter for Design Exception 14-6

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 14

DESIGN EXCEPTIONS

A GENERAL

Uniform minimum standards for design, construction, and maintenance of streets and highways are contained in this Manual and meet or exceed the minimum values established by AASHTO. Consequently, the values given govern the design process. When it becomes necessary to deviate from the Manual's criteria, early documentation and approval are required. This chapter provides the process for documentation and approval of Design Exceptions. When the Manual's criteria are met, no Design Exception is required.

To expedite the approval of these deviations, it is important the correct approval process be followed. The design project file should clearly document the action taken and approval given.

B DESIGN EXCEPTIONS

Design Exceptions are required when any of the Manual's criteria for the 13 controlling Design Elements listed below cannot be met.

1. Design Speed
2. Lane Widths
3. Shoulder Widths
4. Bridge Widths
5. Structural Capacity
6. Vertical Clearance
7. Grades
8. Cross Slopes
9. Superelevation
10. Horizontal Alignment
11. Vertical Alignment
12. Stopping Sight Distance
13. Horizontal Clearance

If the county or municipality has adopted by ordinance design criteria for local subdivision roads and/or residential streets, compliance with those regulations is an approved design exception.

Draft

C RECOMMENDATIONS FOR AND APPROVAL OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS

Design Exceptions are recommended by the Professional Engineer responsible for the project design elements (Responsible Professional Engineer). A public or private utility may submit to the maintaining authority a completed exception package for work designed by the utility's forces. However, if the design is by others, the package must be submitted, signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the State of Florida.

All Design Exceptions require approval from the maintaining authority's (county or municipality) designated Professional Engineer representative with project oversight or general compliance responsibilities.

Any Design Exception that involves a state or federal facility must be processed through the Department's local District Design Engineer who will then follow Department processes for concurrence and approval by FHWA, if necessary.

The Department's Utility Accommodation Manual provides guidance on exceptions with respect to utilities.

D COORDINATION OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS

In order to allow time to research alternatives and begin the analysis and documentation activities, it is critical that Design Exceptions be identified as early in the process as possible. This is preferably done during the planning phases of projects or as soon as possible in the initial design efforts.

When the need for a Design Exception has been determined, the Responsible Professional Engineer must coordinate with the maintaining authority and the Department (if applicable), to obtain conceptual concurrence providing any required documentation requested.

Draft

E JUSTIFICATION AND DOCUMENTATION OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS

The objective of the justification of Design Exceptions is to demonstrate the impacts on the operation and safety of the facility are acceptable compared to the impacts and added benefits of meeting the criteria. All Design Exception requests shall include documentation sufficient to justify the request and independently evaluate the operational and safety impacts. Any request for a Design Exception should address the following issues applicable to the element in question:

Description:

a) Project description (general information, typical section, etc.)

b) Description of Design Exception (specific project conditions related to Design Exception, controlling design element, acceptable Manual value, and proposed value for project)

c) The compatibility of the design and operation with the adjacent sections

Operational Impacts:

a) Amount and character of traffic using facility

b) Effect on capacity of the deviation (proposed criteria vs. Manual using an acceptable capacity analysis procedure and calculate reduction for design year, level of service)

Safety Impacts:

a) Crash history and analysis (location, type, severity, relation to the Design Exception element)

b) Impacts associated with proposed criteria (annualized value of expected economic loss associated with crashes)

Benefit/Cost Analysis:

Calculate a benefit/cost analysis which estimates the cost effectiveness of correcting or mitigating a substandard design feature. The benefit is the expected reduction in future crash costs and the cost is the direct construction and maintenance costs associated with the design. These costs are calculated

and annualized so that direct comparison of alternate designs can be made.

A benefit/cost ratio equal to or greater than 1.0 indicates it may be cost effective to implement a particular design; however, the final decision is a management decision which considers all factors. The key factors in the analysis are:

a) Evaluation of crashes by type and cause

b) Estimate of crash costs (based on property damage and severity of injuries)

c) Selection of a crash reduction factor

d) Selection of a discount rate

e) Estimate of construction and maintenance costs

f) Selection of life of the improvements

g) Period of time over which the benefits will be realized

NOTE: Chapter 2 of the AASHTO Roadside Design Guide and the FHWA Technical Advisory titled "Motor Vehicle Accident Costs" dated October 31, 1994, provides guidance for the benefit/cost analysis, and may be considered.

Conclusion and Recommendation:

a) The cumulative effect of other deviations from design criteria

b) Safety mitigating measures considered and provided

c) Summarize specific course of action

Draft

F FINAL PROCESSING OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS

After conceptual approval has been obtained from the maintaining authority's designee and the documentation justifying the Design Exception is signed by the Responsible Professional Engineer and forwarded as per the sample request letter EXHIBIT 14 - A to the maintaining authority's designated Professional Engineer, the Design Exception will be reviewed for completeness and adherence to the requirements of Sections D and E, this Chapter.

If the Design Exception satisfies all requirements, the approval will be signed by the maintaining authority's designated Professional Engineer; and, if applicable, forwarded to the Department's District Design Engineer for concurrence.

When all signatures are obtained, the Design Exception will be returned to the Responsible Professional Engineer. A copy will be retained by the maintaining agency and the Department, if applicable.

Draft

EXHIBIT 14 – A Sample Request Letter for Design Exception

TO: _____ DATE:_____

SUBJECT: **DESIGN EXCEPTION**

Local road number or street name:_____
Project description (limits): _____
Type construction (new, rehab, adding lanes, resurfacing, etc.) _____
State and/or Federal road number (if applicable): _____

DESIGN EXCEPTION FOR THE FOLLOWING ELEMENT:

( ) Design speed
( ) Structural capacity
( ) Superelevation
( ) Stopping sight distance
( ) Lane widths
( ) Vertical clearance
( ) Horizontal alignment
( ) Horizontal clearance
( ) Shoulder widths
( ) Grades
( ) Vertical alignment
( ) Bridge widths
( ) Cross slope

Include a brief statement concerning the project and items of concern.

Attach all supporting documentation to this exhibit in accordance with **SECTION 14 - E**.

Recommended by:_____
(Responsible Professional Engineer)

Approval:_____
(Maintaining authority's designated Professional Engineer)

Concurrence:_____
FDOT/FHWA (if applicable)

Draft

CHAPTER 15

TRAFFIC CALMING

A INTRODUCTION 15-1

B PLANNING CRITERIA 15-2

C INAPPROPRIATE TRAFFIC CALMING TREATMENTS 15-6
- C.1 Stop Signs 15-6
- C.2 Speed Bumps 15-6
- C.3 Other Inappropriate Treatments 15-6

D APPROPRIATE TRAFFIC CALMING TREATMENTS 15-8
- D.1 Vertical Treatments 15-9
- D.2 Horizontal Treatments 15-12
- D.3 Neighborhood Entry Control 15-15
- D.4 Diverters 15-17
- D.5 Other Treatments 15-18

E OTHER SOURCES 15-19

F REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 15-21

~~A INTRODUCTION ..... 15-1~~

~~B PLANNING CRITERIA ..... 15-2~~

~~C INAPPROPRIATE TRAFFIC CALMING TREATMENTS ..... 15-6~~
- ~~C.1 Stop Signs ..... 15-6~~
- ~~C.2 Speed Bumps ..... 15-6~~
- ~~C.3 Other Inappropriate Treatments ..... 15-6~~

~~D APPROPRIATE TRAFFIC CALMING TREATMENTS ..... 15-7~~
- ~~D.1 Vertical Treatments ..... 15-8~~
- ~~D.2 Horizontal Treatments ..... 15-9~~
- ~~D.3 Neighborhood Entry Control ..... 15-10~~
- ~~D.4 Diverters ..... 15-11~~

Draft

~~D.5 Other Treatments ..... 15-12~~

~~E OTHER SOURCES ..... 15-13~~

TABLES

Table 15 – 1 Vertical Treatments 15-9

Table 15 – 2 Horizontal Treatments 15-12

Table 15 – 3 Neighborhood Entry Control 15-15

Table 15 – 4 Diverters 15-17

Table 15 – 5 Other Treatments 15-18

~~TABLE 15-1 VERTICAL TREATMENTS ..... 15-8~~

~~TABLE 15-2 HORIZONTAL TREATMENTS ..... 15-9~~

~~TABLE 15-3 NEIGHBORHOOD ENTRY CONTROL ..... 15-10~~

~~TABLE 15-4 DIVERTERS ..... 15-11~~

~~TABLE 15-5 OTHER TREATMENTS ..... 15-12~~

FIGURES

Figure 15 – 1 Raised Crosswalk 15-11

Figure 15 – 2 Speed Hump 15-11

Figure 15 – 3 Chicanes 15-14

Figure 15 – 4 Key Roundabout Characteristics 15-14

Figure 15 – 5 Curb Extension or Bulb Out 15-16

Figure 15 – 6 Bicycle Lane, Advance Yield Bar and Crosswalk 15-18

Draft

CHAPTER 15

TRAFFIC CALMING

A INTRODUCTION

As Florida continues to grow, more and more of the major highways in its communities are becoming congested. This has caused many drivers to seek less crowded local residential streets as alternatives to get to their destinations. In many cases, this has meant the use of local residential streets as bypasses. The increase in traffic intrusion, volume, and speeds on residential streets has degraded the livability standards of various neighborhoods in Florida and as a result many residents complain about their environment (noise, air pollution), livability (quality of life, traffic intrusion, excessive volume, and speed of traffic), safety (as well as safety of their children, pets, and property) and physical characteristics (absence of sidewalks, etc~~.~~). This chapter provides some guidance to Florida roadway planners, designers, and traffic engineers on how to address concerns about maintaining or enhancing the quality of life in residential neighborhoods by balancing the need for safety for all roadway users and adjacent property owners of the street network and maintaining the integrity of the highways networks as a whole.

Draft

B PLANNING CRITERIA

Traffic calming is the combination of mainly physical measures that reduce the negative effects of motor vehicle use, alter driver behavior, and improve conditions for non-motorized street users.

Communities undertaking a traffic calming program shall have a procedure for planning which neighborhoods and roadways qualify for participation in the program. Specifics of these methods shall be developed by the local jurisdictions. The methods will likely vary from locality to locality. However, some issues should be addressed in all communities:

- Through the public involvement process, adjacent residents and road users who are impacted by the situation should be included in identifying the concern(s).
- The need for traffic-calming measures should be confirmed by appropriate studies (license plate survey, speed, volume, crash analyses) studied.
- Once the concerns are clearly identified and confirmed by traffic studies, and documented, it will provide the focus for possible solution, prioritizing, and development of appropriate traffic calming measures. It will also help determine the best approach to address the concerns.
- When developing traffic calming measures, in addition to the affected property owners, emergency response, transit, school, and sanitation officials and any other entities impacted by the installation of such devices should be included in the review process.

Traffic calming may not be the appropriate method in all cases to address vehicle speeds, volumes, and safety. Alternative solutions or educational tools may be considered, as well as coordinated effort with law enforcement.~~.~~

The application of traffic calming measures should consider possible network and access issues. A system impact analysis should be performed as part of the development process. Vehicular and pedestrian counts, speed data, and crash history of the streets under evaluation should be reviewed. Storm water and environmental impacts also need to be addressed, as well as facility type, urban and rural design factors, and driveway densities.

Draft

Design details for each traffic calming measure may vary depending on local conditions. Factors to be considered include both horizontal and vertical deflection, ease of use, emergency vehicle accessibility, ease of maintenance, and facility type. Operational considerations and geometrics are critical factors to consider as well. A list of references and resources to consider in providing more detailed design factors and information can be found at the end of this section. It may be desirable to begin with less restrictive measures and progress to more restrictive ones in stages.

Listed below are some "Do's" and "Don'ts" of the planning process for traffic calming which may be helpful in working through the design process.

Do's and Don’ts of the Planning Process

Do the following:

- Install temporary traffic calming features and monitor them for a period of time before installing the permanent features. Testing features on site prior to permanent installation will relieve resident anxiety about the impact on their own driving patters and driving behaviors will adjust to the new route circumstances.

- Have an organized program including public involvement. ~~with p~~ Plans and policies should be approved and supported by the local government. Emphasize the selected treatments(s) will be initially in a “test” mode, with permanency pending the outcome measurement. Be able to describe what is being done to keep traffic off residential streets.

- Channel public resources by prioritizing traffic calming request according to documentable criteria, setting thresholds of volume, speed, etc., to merit treatment.

- Involve the local service agencies, including fire, police, and emergency medical services personnel, from the start.

- Consult with fire department and EMS personnel to develop the preferred design, particularly with speed humps and traffic circles. Set up traffic circles with cones and have fire trucks and other emergency vehicles drive around them; this will help determine what radius is best for the vehicles used in a given area. The same process can be used in the design of speed humps.

- Review traffic patterns in the neighborhood as a whole. Avoid solving the problem on one neighborhood street by just shifting the traffic to another neighborhood street.

Draft

- Consider appropriate landscape treatments as part of the traffic calming design and implementation.

- Make certain that all signing, pavement markings, and channelization is in accordance with the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)***, the ***AASHTO Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets***, and ***Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, Second Edition, National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP 672)***~~the Florida Roundabout Guide~~.

- Check sight distances for vehicles, pedestrians, and bicyclists. Sight distance should be consistent with the dimensions shown in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** or ***Chapter 16 – Residential Street Design***.

- Become familiar with the traffic calming features used in other communities and assemble references so that residents can be directed where to see them.

- Decide on a safe design speed beforehand and in consultation with neighborhood residents.

- Check sight distances by visiting the site before and after installation. Do parked cars obstruct sight distances? Do landscaping or other features obstruct sight distance?

- Review the illumination at night. Are additional street lights needed? Does landscaping block the light? Is there a shadow on one side of a median or traffic circle that might hide pedestrians from view?

- Review the channelization during the day and night. Is it a clear approach from all directions? Can it be seen at night? Watch the traffic: Is the driving public confused by the signing and channelization? Make adjustments as needed.

- Review the site for utility conflicts. Is there a fire hydrant? Does it need to be moved? Are there existing utilities in the way?

- Check the storm water drainage. Will the storm drain system need to be moved or revised? Can the runoff flow through or around the device?

- Review on-street parking. Will parked cars block the access of emergency vehicles through or around the proposed neighborhood traffic control devices? Add additional no parking zones where needed. Additional enforcement of parking restrictions may be required to keep the traveled path clear.

Draft

- Include weekends in traffic counts, as residential streets may have unique travel patterns and high use periods.

Don't do the following:

- Install neighborhood traffic calming features without a well-engineered program supported by the local government and public.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on arterial streets (See Section 1.C.2 for a discussion of roadway classifications). Typically, physical devices are not installed on streets with volumes greater than 3,000 vehicles per day, or with posted or operating speeds of greater than 30 MPH.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on streets without curbs unless supplemental features or other design considerations are included to keep vehicles within the traveled way.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on street with grades of greater than 10 percent.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on major truck routes.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on primary emergency routes. Contact local fire, emergency service, and police departments to determine these routes. Secondary access routes should be considered on a case-by-case basis.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on curving or winding roads with limited sight distance, unless reduced speed limits and adequate warning signs are used in conjunction with the devices.
- Place neighborhood traffic calming features in front of driveways.
- Neglect to check for conflicting utilities or drainage considerations.
- Install physical features on adjacent parallel routes, unless feasible design alternatives have been agreed upon, as this prevents or hinders emergency response.

Draft

C INAPPROPRIATE TRAFFIC CALMING TREATMENTS

C.1 Stop Signs

Unwarranted stop signs should not be~~When~~ used for traffic calming for ~~, stop signs often do one or more of~~ the following reasons:

- Increase midblock speeds along the street because of drivers trying to make up for lost time
- Increase noise because of quick accelerations and decelerations
- Increase pollution
- Reduce drivers' expectation of a uniform flow
- Relocate the problem
- Cause disrespect for stop signs by drivers and bicyclists

~~For these reasons, s~~Stop signs shall~~should not~~ be used only when warranted per the ***MUTCD***~~for traffic calming~~.

C.2 Speed Bumps

Speed bumps shall not be used on public streets. Speed bumps are severe treatments 3 to 6 inches high and 1 to 2 feet long~~wide~~ that slow drivers to speeds of less than 10 mph. Due to their abrupt rise and required low speed they can be a hazard to motorists and bicyclists. Speed *humps*, as described in Section D under vertical deflection, should not be confused with speed *bumps*.

C.3 Other Inappropriate Treatments

There are some other treatments that have been shown to be ineffective at reducing the speed and volume of traffic on local roadways. While a temporary improvement may result, long-term improvement is not likely; consequently, their use is discouraged. These treatments include the following:

- Novelty signs -While signs such as CHILDREN AT PLAY, SENIORS CROSS HERE ~~and, SLOW~~and SLOW DEAF ~~CHILD, and DEAR CROSSING (meaning loved one) may~~CHILD may make an infrequent

Draft

roadway user aware of a specific local population, most regular users of the roadway are unaffected by the signs.

- Odd speed limit - NEIGHBORHOOD SPEED LIMIT 23 MPH and other odd speed limit signs place a high dependence on police to monitor speeders and are not consistent with the national practice required by the ***MUTCD*** of posting speeds limits in 5 mph increments.
- Crosswalks – Standard crosswalks marked only with signs and pavement markings do not affect motorists' speeds and should not be used by themselves as traffic calming treatments.
- Bicycle~~ke~~ lanes – Standard bicycle~~ke~~ lanes are not traffic calming treatments. They can be used to provide ~~additional~~ space for bicyclists between the sidewalk and travel lanes~~motor vehicle traffic~~ but should not be used by themselves for traffic calming.
- Speed trailers – While speed trailers can be used as part of a traffic calming program for educational awareness, they have no lasting effect on motorists' behavior.
- Reduced speed limit signs – Reduced speed limits without physical traffic calming measures do not slow drivers and should not be used for traffic calming.
- Rumble strips – These applications have high maintenance requirements and can cause severe noise problems. Also, they can be an obstacle to bicyclists.

Draft

D APPROPRIATE TRAFFIC CALMING TREATMENTS

The following sections describe some of the available traffic calming strategies. This list is not exhaustive, nor do the treatments necessarily fall exclusively into only one category.

In a typical traffic calming plan various types of treatments will be used. These plans will be based upon neighborhood preferences combined with engineering judgment.

Design details for traffic calming treatments will vary with application. Specific designs will need to be determined based upon the objective of the installations.

Draft

D.1 Vertical Treatments

Vertical treatments are those that depend upon a change in vertical alignment to cause drivers to slow down. When properly used, these treatments can be effective in reducing speeds and crashes. However, consideration should be given to impacts on emergency responders, buses, and, to some extent, bicyclists and motorcyclists.

Traffic calming features that alter the vertical alignment should not be installed near fire hydrants or mailboxes.

Information on signing and pavement markings for vertical deflections can be found in the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)***.

Table 15 – - 1 Vertical Treatments

Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Raised Intersection	A raised plateau where roads intersect. - Plateau is generally 4 inches above surrounding street.	Slows vehicles entering intersection and improves pedestrian safety.	Increases difficulty of making a turn.	Medium to High
Raised Crosswalk	Raised pedestrian crossing used in mid-block locations. Crosswalks installed on flat-top portion of speed table. See Figure 15 - 1	Reduces speed and is an effective pedestrian amenity makes pedestrians more visible.	May be a problem for emergency vehicles and vehicles with trailers.	Low to Medium
Speed Humps	Speed humps are parabolic, curved, or sinusoidal in profile, 3 to 4 inches in height and 12 to 14 feet long. Comfortable speeds limited to 15 to 20 mph. See Figure 15 - 2.	Reduces speed.	May cause delays for emergency vehicles and impact patient comfort. May have greater impacts on longer wheelbase cars.	Low
Speed Tables	Speed tables are flat-topped speed humps, also 3 to 4 inches high but with a sloped approach taper on each side of a flat top. They are generally 20 to 24 feet longwide. Comfortable speeds limited to 20 to 25 mph.	Reduces speed.	May cause delays for emergency vehicles and impact patient comfort.	Low
Speed Cushions/ Pillows	Signed speed humps as described above.	Reduces speed.	May not slow all vehicles.	Low

Draft

~~Speed Cushions/ pillows~~	~~Slotted speed humps as described above.~~	~~Reduces speed.~~	~~May not slow all vehicles.~~	~~Low~~

Draft

Figure 15 – 1 Raised Crosswalk

Suwannee Street, Tallahassee, Florida

Figure 15 – 2 Speed Hump

Inside Loop Road, **O**range County, Florida

Draft

D.2 Horizontal Treatments

Horizontal deflection treatments are often more expensive than vertical deflection treatments. However, they have less of an impact on emergency responders and large vehicles with multiple axles. They generally do not create problems for bicyclists and motorcyclists. Because pavement area is usually reduced, additional landscaping may be possible, making horizontal deflection treatments useful as part of neighborhood beautification projects.

Information on striping and signing roundabouts can be found in the ***MUTCD***.

Table 15 - 2 Horizontal Treatments

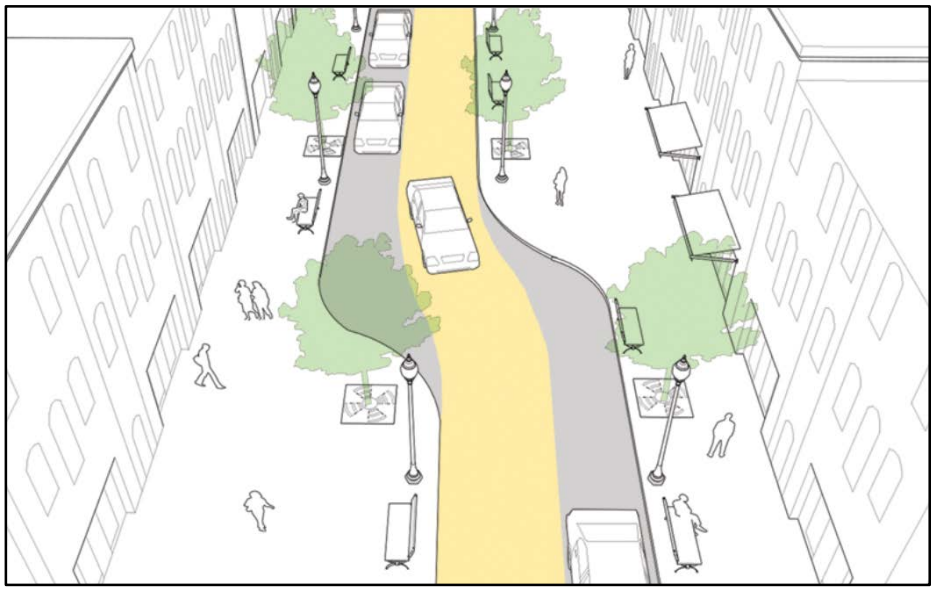
Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Angled Slow Point	Angled deviation to deter the path of travel so that the street is not a straight line	Reduces speed and pedestrian crossing distance.	Landscaping must be controlled to maintain visibility. Conflicts may occur with opposing drivers.	Medium to High
Chicanes	Mainline deviation to deter the path of travel so that the street is not a straight line. See Figure 15 - 3.	Reduces speed and pedestrian crossing distance.	A chicane design may warrant additional signing and striping to ensure that drivers are aware of a slight bend in the roadway. Increases the area possible forof landscaping maintained by residents.	Medium to High
Mini-Circles	A raised circular island in the center of an existing intersection, typically 15 to 20 feet in diameter. May have mountable truck apron to accommodate large vehicles.	Reduces speed and both the number and severity of crashes.	May restrict larger vehicles. May cause some confusion when not signed properly. Some communities have documented increased crashes when mini-circles replaced all-way stop intersections.	Low to Medium
Roundabouts*	A raised circular area placed at intersections with specific design and traffic control features, including yield control of all entering traffic, channelized approaches, geometric curvature; travel is in counter clockwise direction around the circle. May be appropriate at locations as an alternative to , which might otherwise need a traffic signal. See Figure 15 - 4.	Reduces vehicle speeds and reinforces a change in the driving environment in transition areasSlows traffic and reduces crashes by 50% - 90% over stop signs and traffic signals.	May require more space at the intersection itself than other intersection treatments.May restrict larger vehicles. May require significant reconstruction of the intersection and all approaches. While Roundabouts have sometimes been considered traffic calming features, they are primarily traffic control measures.	High

Draft

~~* While Roundabouts have sometimes been considered traffic calming features, they are primarily traffic control measures. Roundabouts are large raised circular areas installed in intersections where a traffic signal might otherwise be needed. All travel is in a counter-clockwise direction. While the main objective of Roundabouts is to control traffic at the intersection, added benefits may include the reduction of vehicular speeds. Some jurisdictions have reported reduction in crashes of 50% to 90% over stop signs and traffic signals. Roundabouts should be designed for design vehicles appropriate for the intersection, and may require significant reconstruction of the intersection and all approaches.~~

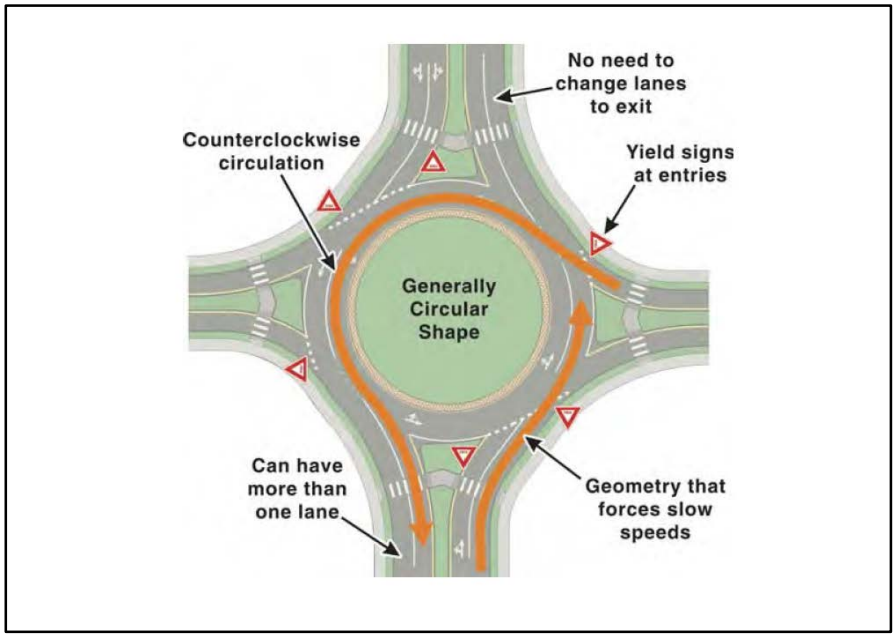
Draft

Figure 15 – 3 Chicanes



NACTO Urban Street Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials

Figure 15 – 4 Key Roundabout Characteristics



NCHRP Report 672: Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, Second Edition

Draft

D.3 Neighborhood Entry Control

Neighborhood entry control treatments include partial street closures and gateway type tools. They are used to reduce speeds and volume at neighborhood access points and may be used in conjunction with neighborhood beautification or~~/~~ enhancement projects and residential area identification.

Table 15 – 3 Neighborhood Entry Control

Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Chokers	Midblock reduction of the street to a single travel lane for both directions.	Reduces speed and volume.	Costs increase if drainage needs to be rebuilt.	Medium to High
Gateway Treatment or Entrance Features	Treatment to a street that includes a sign, banner, landscaping, ~~roadway~~and roadway narrowing or other structure that helps to communicate a sense of neighborhood identity.	Reduces entry speed and pedestrian crossing distance. Discourages intrusion by cut through vehicles and identifies the area as residential.	Maintenance responsibility. May lose some on street parking.	Medium to High
Curb Extensions or Bulb-outs	Realignment of curb~~Physical curb reduction~~ at intersection or mid-point of a block to decrease pavement width. ~~of road width at intersection~~. See Figure 15 - 5.	Visually and physically narrows the roadway, ~~Discourages cut-through traffic and~~ shortens pedestrian crossing distance, increases space for plantings, street furniture.~~-~~	~~Need to accommodate cyclists out of street.~~ May impact sight distance, parking, and d~~D~~rainage. ~~and parking may also need to be addressed~~.	Medium to High
Midblock Median, Slow Point	An island or barrier in the center of a street that separate traffic.	Provides refuge for pedestrians and cyclists.	Landscaping may impede sight distance.	Varies
Lane Narrowing	Street physically narrowed to expand sidewalks and landscaping areas. Could include median, on street parking etc.	Improved pedestrian safety.	May create conflict with opposing drivers in narrow lanes.	Medium to High
One-Way In or One-Way Out Channelization	Intersection reduction of the street to single travel lane with channelization. Also called half road closure.	Reduces speed and traffic.	Costs increase if drainage must be rebuilt. Transfers additional vehicles to other ingress/egress points.	Medium to High
Textured Pavement	A change in pavement texture, and color (e.g., asphalt to brick), that helps make drivers aware of a change in driving environment.	Enhances pedestrian crossings, bike lanes, or on street parking.	Increase maintenance. May increase noise.	Low to Medium

Draft

Figure 15 – 5 Curb Extension or Bulb Out

First and Lee Streets, Ft. Myers, Florida

Draft

D.4 Diverters

A diverter consists of an island or curbed closure, which prevents certain movements at intersections, and reduces speeds and volumes. By diverting motorists within a neighborhood they can significantly reduce cut through traffic.

Diverters must be planned with care because they will impact the people who live in the neighborhood more than anyone else. Trip lengths increase, creating inconvenience to residents. Emergency responders must also be considered when diverting traffic.

Bicyclists and pedestrians should be provided access through traffic diverters.

Table 15 – 4 Diverters

Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Diagonal Diverters	Barrier placed diagonally across an intersection, interrupting traffic flow forcing drivers to make turns.	Eliminates through traffic.	May inhibit access by emergency vehicles and residents and increase trip lengths.	Medium
Forced Turn Barrier/Diverters	Small traffic islands installed at inter-sections to restrict specific turning movements.	Reduces cut through traffic.	Could impact emergency vehicles response time.	Low to Medium
Road Closures, Cul-de-sac	One or more legs of the intersection closed to traffic.	Eliminates through traffic improving safety for all street users.	May increase volumes on other streets in the area. Access restriction may cause concerns for emergency responders. Additional right of way for proper turnaround at dead ends may be required.	Low to Medium
Median Closures	Small median islands installed at cross streets to prevent through movements and restrict left turns.	Reduces cut through traffic.	Could impact emergency vehicle responses, inhibit access, and increase trip lengths or transfer volumes to other streets.	Low to Medium

Draft

D.5 Other Treatments

These treatments are most effective when used in combination with other physical traffic calming features, and should be used as supplements.

Table 15 – 5 Other Treatments

Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Pavement Markings	Highlighting various area of road to increase driver's awareness of certain conditions such as bike lanes or crosswalks. See Figure 15 - 6.	Inexpensive and may reduce speed.	May not be as effective as a structure such as curb.	Low
Traversable Barriers	A barrier placed across any portion of a street that is traversable by pedestrians, bicycles, and emergency vehicles but not motor vehicles.	Eliminates cut-through traffic.	Inconvenience to some residents.	Medium
Colored Bike Lanes or Shoulders	A bike lane or shoulder painted, covered with a surface treatment or constructed of a pigmented pavement designed to contrast with the adjacent pavement.	Visually narrows the roadway and may reduce speeds.	May not be effective on roadways with 12 foot lanes.	Low to medium

Figure 15 – 6 Bicycle Lane, Advance Yield Bar and Crosswalk

Franklin Blvd, Tallahassee, Florida

Draft

E OTHER SOURCES

The publications listed below are additional sources, of information related to topics presented in this chapter. Search the Internet Web for up-to-date resources using "traffic+calming" as key words.

1. Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, with Revisions 1 and 2, May 2012 (MUTCD). US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/kno_2009r1r2.htm

1. Civilizing Traffic, City of Honolulu Traffic Calming Training Manual, Dan Burden, DRAFT.

2. Code of Practice for the Installation of Traffic Control Devices in South Australia, July 19962013. Traffic and Operational Standards Section, Department Transportation, P.O. Box. 1, Walkerville, South Australia, 5081. (updated in 2013)

3. National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) Report 672, Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, Second Edition, (2010) http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_672.pdf

4. The Florida Intersection Design GuideRoundabout Guide. Florida Department of Transportation, http://www.dot.state.fl.us/officeofdesign/publicationslist.shtm

5. Maps & Publications Sales, Mail Station 12, 605 Suwannee Street, Tallahassee, Florida 32399-0450.Traffic Calming Measures - Speed Hump, Institute of Transportation Engineers Guidelines for the Design and Application of Speed Humps, http://www.ite.org/traffic/A Recommended Practice of the Institute of Transportation Engineers, 1997. Institute of Transportation Engineers, 525 School Street, SW, Suite 410, Washington, DC, 20024-2729.

6. New York State Supplement (2001) to the Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices, 2009 00. Transportation Planning, Highway Safety, and Traffic Engineering Division, New York State Department of Transportation, 1220 Washington Avenue, Albany, NY 12232-0204. https://www.dot.ny.gov/divisions/operating/oom/transportation-systems/repository/B-2011Supplement-adopted.pdf

7. Modern Roundabout Practice in the United States, National Cooperative Highway Research Program Synthesis off Highway Practice 264, 1998, Jacquernart, G.

Draft

Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, 2101 Constitution Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, 20418.

8.7. New York State Vehicle & Traffic Law, (latest edition). New York State Department of Motor Vehicles, Swan Street Building, Empire State Plaza, Albany, NY, 12228.

8. Roundabout Design Guidelines, Supplement to the NCHRP 672 (October 2012). Maryland Department of Transportation, State Highway Administration, P.O. Box 717, Baltimore, MD, 21203-0717. http://sha.md.gov/OHD2/MDSHA_Roundabout_Guidelines.pdf

9.

10. Traffic Control Systems Handbook FHWA-SA-95-032, 1996, Gordon, R.L., R.A. Reiss, H. Haenel, E.R. French, A. Mochaddes, R. Wolcott. Federal Highway Administration, Office of Technology Applications, 400 Seventh Street, SW, Washington, DC 20590.(Updated in 2013)

9. Traffic Control Systems Handbook, Revised Edition, 20051985, FHWA-IP-85-1-1, Wilshire, R., R. Black, R. Grachoske, J. Higanbotham. Federal Highway Administration, Office of Implementation, 400 Seventh Street, SW, Washington, DC 20590. (Updated in 2013) http://ops.fhwa.dot.gov/publications/fhwahop06006/

11.

12. Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, 2000. US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, 400 7th Street, Washington D.C., 20509.

13. Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, 2000. US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, 400 7th Street, Washington D.C., 20509.

Draft

F REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of the publications that were used in the preparation of this chapter.

1. *A Guidebook for Residential Traffic Management* WA\RD 368-1, Final Report, December 1994, Savage, J.P. Jr., R.D. MacDonal, J. Ewell. Washington State Department of Transportation, Engineering Publications Room SD3, PO Box 47300, Olympia, WA 98504-7300.

2. 1. *Florida Pedestrian Planning and Design Handbook,* March 1997, University of North Carolina, Highway Safety Research Center. Florida Department of Transportation, Safety Office, 605 Suwannee Street, Mail Station 82, Tallahassee, Florida 32399-0450.

3. 2. *Highway Design Manual.* Plan Sales Unit, Support Services Bureau, New York State Department of Transportation, 1220 Washington Avenue, Albany, NY, 12232-0204. (updated in 2014)

4. 3. ITE Traffic Calming Definition, Lockwood, I.M. In *ITE Journal,* Volume 67, Number 7, July 1997. Institute of Transportation Engineers, 525 School Street, SW, Suite 410, Washington, DC, 20024-2729.

5. 4. *Neighborhood Traffic Management and Calming Program,* City of San Buenaventura, Department of Community Services, Engineering Division, 501 Poli Street, Ventura, C.A, 93001.

6. 5. Supplementary Pedestrian Crossing channelization Devices. TC Werner memo to Regional Traffic Engineers, July 15, 1997, Transportation Planning, Highway Safety and Traffic Engineering Division, NYS Department of Transportation, 1220 Washington Avenue, Albany, N`Y, 12232.

7. 6. *Traffic Calming,* July 1995, Hoyle, C.L., Planning Advisory Service Report Number 456 American Planning Association, Publications Office, 122 S. Michigan Avenue, Suite 1600, Chicago, IL, 60603.

8. 7. *Traffic Calming Guidelines,* 1992, Devon County Council, Engineering and Planning Department, Devon County, Great Britain.

9. 8. *The Traffic Calming Program: Simplification and Enhancement of the Neighborhood Traffic Management and Arterial Traffic Calming Programs* September 30, 1994. City of Portland, Office of Transportation, Bureau of Traffic Management, Neighborhood Traffic Management, 1120 SW. 5th Avenue, Room 730, Portland, OR, 97204-1914.

10. 9. *Traffic Calming: State of Practice*, 1999. FHWA-RD-99-135. R. Ewing. Institute of Transportation Engineers, Washington, D.C.

Draft

10. *Boulder, Colorado, Neighborhood Traffic Mitigation Program.* Transportation Division https://bouldercolorado.gov/transportation/transportation-safety~~ oat (303) 441-3266. http://www.ci.boulder.co.us/publicworks/depts/trans/ntmp/information.htm#Policies~~

~~11.~~

~~12.~~11. Neighborhood Traffic Management Dade County, Florida's street closure experience, Anthony J. Castellone and Muhammed M. Hasan, I.T.E. Journal, Volume 68, Number 1.

~~13.~~12. Traffic Flow Modification / Street Closure Procedure. Miami-Dade County Public Works Department and Metropolitan Planning Organization, Florida.

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 16

RESIDENTIAL STREET DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION 16-1

B OBJECTIVES 16-2

C DESIGN ELEMENTS 16-4
- C.1 Design Speed 16-4
- C.2 Sight Distance 16-4
  - C.2.a Stopping Sight Distance 16-4
  - C.2.b Passing Sight Distance 16-4
  - C.2.c Intersection Sight Distance 16-5
- C.3 Horizontal Alignment 16-6
  - C.3.a Minimum Centerline Radius 16-6
  - C.3.b Minimum Curb Return Radius 16-6
- C.4 Vertical Alignment 16-7
  - C.4.a Vertical Curves 16-7
- C.5 Cross Section Elements 16-7
  - C.5.a Width of Roadway 16-7
  - C.5.b Medians 16-7
- C.6 Cul-de-sacs and Turnarounds 16-8
  - C.6.a Turning Area 16-8
- C.7 Pedestrian Considerations 16-8
  - C.7.a Sidewalks 16-8
- C.8 Bicyclist Considerations 16-9
  - C.8.a Bicycle Facilities 16-9
- C.9 Shared Use Paths 16-9
- C.10 Clear Zone 16-9

D REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 16-10

~~A INTRODUCTION ..... 16-1~~

~~B OBJECTIVES ..... 16-2~~

Draft

C DESIGN ELEMENTS 16-4
C.1 Design Speed 16-4
C.2 Sight Distance 16-4
C.2.a Stopping Sight Distance 16-4
C.2.b Passing Sight Distance 16-4
C.2.c Intersection Sight Distance 16-5
C.3 Horizontal Alignment 16-6
C.3.a Minimum Centerline Radius 16-6
C.3.b Minimum Curb Return Radius 16-6
C.4 Vertical Alignment 16-6
C.4.a Vertical Curves 16-6
C.5 Cross Section Elements 16-7
C.5.a Width of Roadway 16-7
C.5.b Medians 16-7
C.6 Cul-de-sacs and Turnarounds 16-7
C.6.a Turning Area 16-7
C.7 Pedestrian Considerations 16-8
C.7.a Sidewalks 16-8
C.8 Bicyclist Considerations 16-8
C.8.a Bicycle Facilities 16-8
C.8.b Shared Use Paths 16-8
C.9 Clear Zone 16-9

Draft

TABLES

Table 16 – 1 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance for Residential Streets 16-4

Table 16 – 2 Minimum Corner Intersection Sight Distance for Residential Streets. 16-5

Table 16 – 3 Minimum Centerline Radii for Residential Streets 16-6

TABLE 16 - 1 MINIMUM STOPPING SIGHT DISTANCE FOR RESIDENTIAL STREETS..... 16-4

TABLE 16 - 2 MINIMUM CORNER INTERSECTION SIGHT DISTANCE FOR RESIDENTIAL STREETS 16-5

TABLE 16 - 3 MINIMUM CENTERLINE RADII FOR RESIDENTIAL STREETS 16-6

Draft

CHAPTER 16

RESIDENTIAL STREET DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION

The street is a public way designed for the purposes of serving motor vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians, and transit vehicles. The primary function of residential streets is to provide access to homes that front those streets. The primary consideration, therefore, of residential street design should be to foster a safe and pleasant environment for the residents that live along the street, and safe traveling conditions for motorists, bicyclists and pedestrians. The convenience of motorists is a secondary consideration.

The street design should create an environment that cautions drivers that they are in a residential area where they must safely share the traveling space with pedestrians and bicyclists, both child and adult. Visual cues such as meandering streets, sidewalks, landscaping, signage, narrowed streets, changes in pavement texture (such as brick, stamped, or textured surfaces), and raised crosswalks all serve to heighten drivers' awareness for the need to maintain lower speeds. Incorporating such features into residential street design at inception will reduce or eliminate the need for traffic calming retrofits.

Section B of this chapter discusses the primary objectives of Residential Street Design in more detail, to aid the designer in the selection of proper criteria. ***Section C*** sets forth specific design criteria for residential streets.

Draft

B OBJECTIVES

The basic principles of residential street design are based on four factors:

1. SAFETY
2. EFFICIENCY OF SERVICE
3. LIVABILITY AND AMENITIES
4. ECONOMY OF LAND USE, CONSTRUCTION, AND MAINTENANCE

The following 17 principles incorporate these factors. These principles are not intended as absolute criteria, since instances may occur where certain principles conflict. The principles should therefore be used as concepts for layout of proper street systems.

1. Adequate vehicular and pedestrian access should be provided to all parcels.
2. Local street systems should be designed to minimize through traffic movements unless it is specifically desired by the County or municipality to connect residential developments.
3. Street patterns should minimize excessive vehicular travel through connectivity between adjacent residential developments, and to larger street networks.
4. Local street systems should be logical and comprehensible, and systems of street names and house numbers should be simple, consistent, and understandable.
5. Local circulation systems and land-development patterns should not detract from the efficiency of adjacent~~bordering~~ major streets due to lack of connectivity.
6. Elements in the local circulation system should not have to rely on extensive traffic regulations and enforcement in order to function efficiently and safety.
7. Traffic generators within residential areas should be considered in the local circulation pattern.

8. The planning and construction of residential streets should clearly indicate their local function. The street's residential nature should be obvious to those driving on them.

9. The street system should be designed for a relatively uniform low volume of traffic.

10. Local streets should be designed to discourage excessive speeds.

11. Pedestrian-vehicular conflict points should be minimized.

12. The amount of space in the land development devoted to motor vehicle uses should be minimized.

13. There should be a limited number of intersections.Smaller block sizes may be used to encourage walking or bicycling. See ***Chapter 19 – Traditional Neighborhood Development*** for more information.

14. The arrangement of local streets should permit economical and practical patterns, shapes, and sizes of development parcels and provide interconnectivity without using arterials or collectors.

15. Local streets should consider and utilize topography from the standpoint of both economics and amenities.

16. Appropriate provisions for transit service within residential areas should be included.

17. Street design should consider horizontal and vertical compatibility and connectivity with sidewalks, bicycle lanes, and pedestrian walkways.

Draft

C DESIGN ELEMENTS

C.1 Design Speed

For local residential streets, design speeds of 1520 to 30 mph are appropriate, depending on the adjacent development, terrain, available right of way, and other area controls. Alleys and narrow roadways intended to function as shared spaces (that is, could be used to access driveways, for garbage pickup, and travel by walking or bicycling) may have design speeds as low as 10 mph. Design speeds greater than 30 mph in residential areas require increased sight distances and radii which are contrary to the function of a local residential street.

C.2 Sight Distance

C.2.a Stopping Sight Distance

The minimum stopping sight distance is shown in Table 16 – 1 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance for Residential Streets.

Table 16 – 1 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance for Residential Streets

Design Speed (mph)	Stopping Sight Distance (feet)
10	45
15	75
20	125
25	150
30	200

C.2.b Passing Sight Distance

Passing should not be encouraged on local residential streets, and design for passing sight distance is seldom applicable on these streets. If longer straight sections and higher design and posted speeds support passing, the

Draft

street shall be designed under the design criteria established in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

C.2.c Intersection Sight Distance

Intersections shall be designed with adequate corner sight distance as set forth in Table 16 – 2 Minimum Corner Intersection Sight Distance for Residential Streets. Intersection design should take into consideration growth of landscaping and other amenities. Where a local residential street intersects a higher-order street, the design criteria of the higher-order street shall control within the right of way of the higher-order street. Where the right of way of the higher order street is indistinguishable from that of the lower street, the right of way for this purpose may be determined by connecting the points where the two rights of way intersect.

Table 16 – 2 Minimum Corner Intersection Sight Distance for Residential Streets

Design Speed (mphMPH)	Corner Intersection Sight Distance * (feetFEET)
10	110
15	160
20	210
25	260
30	310

* Corner sight distance measured from a point on the minor road at least 14.5 feet from the edge of the major road pavement and measured from a height of eye at 3.50 feet on the minor road to a height of object at 3.5 feet on the major road.

Where stop or yield control is not used, the corner sight distance should be a minimum of 3200 feet. If restrictions are unavoidable, a minimum of , and desirably 2300 feet is allowed with proper warning signage found in the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)*** such as an intersection warning sign (W2 series) or cross traffic does not stop here plaque (W4-4P)or more. To maintain the minimum sight distance, restrictions on height of embankments, locations of buildings, and screening fences may be necessary. Any landscaping in the sight distance triangle

should be low growing, and should not be higher than 3 feet above the level of the intersecting street pavements. Tree overhangs should be trimmed to at least 8 feet above the level of the intersections.

Intersecting streets should meet at approximately right angles. Angles of less than 60 degrees should be avoided.

C.3 Horizontal Alignment

C.3.a Minimum Centerline Radius

The minimum radii for horizontal curves are given in Table 16 – 3 Minimum Centerline Radii for Residential Streets. Typically, superelevation should not be utilized on local residential streets. Where superelevation is appropriate or required, the street shall be designed under the design criteria established in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

Table 16 – 3 Minimum Centerline Radii for Residential Streets

Design Speed (mphMPH)	Min. Centerline Radius (feetFEET)
10	25
15	50
20	89
25	166
30	275

C.3.b Minimum Curb Return Radius

Where there are substantial pedestrian movements, the minimum radius of curb return where curbs are used, or the outside edge of pavement where curbs are not used shall be 15 feet. A minimum radius of 25 feet is desirable to accommodate turning movements of service vehicles.

Draft

C.4 Vertical Alignment

C.4.a Vertical Curves

Vertical curves shall be designed for a minimum stopping sight distance using the design criteria of 30 mph established in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design.***

C.5 Cross Section Elements

C.5.a Width of Roadway

The minimum width of a two-way residential roadway shouldall be 2018 feet from edge-of-pavement to edge-of-pavement (excluding curbs and gutters). Travel lanes should be a minimum of 10 feet wide, and wider where practicable. Under constrained conditions or in some very rural areas, lanes 9 feet or narrower may be used. Refer to ***Chapter 4*** of the ***AASHTO Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400)***. Lanes narrower than 9 feet are prohibited in the absence of a Design Exception as provided for in ***Chapter 14 – Design Exceptions***.

When parking lanes are provided on one or both sides of the roadway, they shall be at least 7 feet wide including the gutter section where applicable.

Where curb and gutter sections are used, the roadway may be narrowed to the travel lane width (plus bike lane if present) at intersections. This will prevent parking close to the intersection, reduce crossing distances for pedestrians, provide space for curb ramps, and reduce turning speeds. By providing occasional midblock curb extensions, as well as intersection curb extensions, the visual width of the roadway can be reduced.

C.5.b Medians

When used in residential areas, medians or traffic separators should conform to ***Chapter 3*** or ***Chapter 19***. The minimum width for a median is 4 feet (6 feet if it is to serve as a pedestrian refuge). When median openings are provided to allow turns across the roadway, median opening length shall be adequate to accommodate the design vehicle's turning radius requirements.

Draft

C.6 Cul-de-sacs and Turnarounds

C.6.a Turning Area

A residential street open at one end only should have a special turning area at the closed end, and Aa residential street more than 100 feet long and open at one end only shall have a special turning area at the closed end. This turning area should be circular and have a radius appropriate to the types of vehicle expected. The minimum outside radius of a cul-de-sac shall be 30 feet. In constrained circumstances, other turning configurations such as a "hammerhead" may be considered. Cul-de-sacs can detract from connectivity if used excessively or inappropriately.

C.7 Pedestrian Considerations

C.7.a Sidewalks

In residential areas, sidewalks should be provided on both sides of the street. The sidewalks should be located as far as practicable from the travelffic lanes and usually close to the right of way line. In certain circumstances, such as where the adjacent lots are very large or there are environmental limitations, sidewalk on only one side may be considered. Along collector roadways shared use paths may be provided in lieu of sidewalks. Connectivity to and between existing public sidewalk or shared use path facilities is desired.

Pedestrian access should be provided to schools, day care facilities, parks, churches, shopping areas, and transit stops within or adjacent to the residential development. Pedestrian access to these destinations and throughout the neighborhood shall be designed for safe and convenient pedestrian circulation.from each house in the development should be as direct as practicable. With careful design, direct pedestrian access can be provided to these destinations without requiring pedestrians to walk along high volume, high speed roadways. Mid-block crossings between houses, for Ssidewalks or shared use paths between houses or to connect cul-de-sacs, may be used where necessary to provide direct access.

Sidewalks, crosswalks and mid-block crossings shall be constructed under the criteria set forth in ***Section C.7.d*** of ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***,

Draft

and ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities***.

C.8 Bicyclist Considerations

C.8.a Bicycle Facilities

Residential roadways are generally sufficient to accommodate bicycle traffic. ; however, Wwhen specificcial bicycle facilities are desired, they should connect to existing facilities and be designed in accordance with ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** and ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***. For bike lane transitions, see ***Chapter 9***.

C.98.b Shared Use Paths

Connections to schools, parks, shopping areas, and transit stops within or adjacent to the residential development should be provided. Bike lanes along collector and arterial roadways may be used to provide these connections. However, when designated bike lanes are not available, shared use paths may be utilized to provide direct access. A shared use path is a hard-surfaced pathway physically separated from motorized vehicular traffic by an open space or barrier. Shared use paths may be used by bicyclists, pedestrians, skaters, wheelchair users, and joggers.

Shared use paths may be provided in lieu of sidewalks along collector roads in accordance with ***Section C.7.a***. When shared use paths are desired, they should connect to other pedestrian and bicycle facilities within or adjacent to the residential area, and connect to schools, day care facilities, parks, churches, shopping areas, and transit stops. Shared use paths shall be designed in accordance with ***Section C*** of ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***. Shared use paths may be used by golf carts in certain areas, underin certain circumstances in accordance with ***Sections 316.212, 316.2125 and 316.2126, F.S.***

C.109 Clear Zone

Clear zone requirements for residential streets shall be based on ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***, Table 3 – 1523 Minimum Width of Clear Zone.

Draft

D REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that may be referenced for further guidance:

- AASHTO Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400): https://bookstore.transportation.org/
- Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/pdfs/2009r1r2/pdf_index.htm

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 17

BRIDGES AND OTHER STRUCTURES

A INTRODUCTION 17-1

B OBJECTIVES 17-2

C DESIGN 17-2
- C.1 Bridges - General 17-2
- C.2 Bridge Live Loads 17-3
- C.3 Bridge Superstructure 17-3
  - C.3.a Girder Transportation 17-3
  - C.3.b Vertical Clearance 17-4
  - C.3.c Railings 17-4
  - C.3.d Expansion Joints 17-5
  - C.3.e Drainage 17-5
  - C.3.f End Treatments 17-5
- C.4 Bridge Substructure 17-5
  - C.4.a Scour 17-6
  - C.4.b Vessel Impact 17-6
  - C.4.c Pier Locations 17-7
- C.5 Retaining and Noise Walls 17-8
- C.6 Sign, Lighting, and Traffic Signal Supports 17-8
- C.7 Pedestrian Bridges 17-8

D CONSTRUCTION 17-9

E ROUTINE INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE 17-10

F BRIDGE LOAD RATING AND POSTING 17-12

G RECOMMENDATIONS 17-15

H REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 17-16

~~A INTRODUCTION ..... 17-1~~

Draft

~~B OBJECTIVES ..... 17-1~~

~~C DESIGN ..... 17-2~~
~~C.1 Bridges - General ..... 17-2~~
~~C.2 Bridge Live Loads ..... 17-2~~
~~C.3 Bridge Superstructure ..... 17-2~~
~~C.3.a Girder Transportation ..... 17-2~~
~~C.3.b Vertical Clearance ..... 17-3~~
~~C.3.c Railings ..... 17-4~~
~~C.3.d Expansion Joints ..... 17-4~~
~~C.3.e Drainage ..... 17-4~~
~~C.3.f ADA ..... 17-5~~
~~C.3.g End Treatments ..... 17-5~~
~~C.4 Bridge Substructure ..... 17-5~~
~~C.4.a Scour ..... 17-5~~
~~C.4.b Vessel Impact ..... 17-6~~
~~C.4.c Pier Locations ..... 17-6~~
~~C.5 Retaining Walls and Sound Barriers ..... 17-7~~
~~C.6 Sign, Lighting, and Traffic Signal Supports ..... 17-7~~
~~C.7 Pedestrian Bridges ..... 17-8~~

~~D CONSTRUCTION ..... 17-8~~

~~E ROUTINE INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE ..... 17-8~~

~~F BRIDGE LOAD RATING, PERMITTING, AND POSTING ..... 17-9~~

~~G RECOMMENDATIONS ..... 17-10~~

~~H REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ..... 17-11~~

EXHIBITS

EXHIBIT A Bridge Load Rating Summary Table 17-13

CHAPTER 17

BRIDGES AND OTHER STRUCTURES

A INTRODUCTION

Bridges provide safe passage for multimodal traffic over various obstacles along a road or path. This chapter presents guidelines and standards for designing, constructing, inspecting, and maintaining bridges as well as other structures such as walls and supports for signs, lights, and traffic signals. These standards and criteria are necessary due to the critical function these structures serve to communities throughout their lifespan. This chapter establishes uniform minimum standards and criteria for all bridges used by the public for vehicular and/or pedestrian traffic as well as other structures such as walls and supports for signs, lights, and traffic signals. The geometry of structures shall follow the standards and criteria set forth in ***Chapters 3, 8, 9***, and ***13***. Exceptions to these standards and criteria must be processed in accordance with the procedures described in ***Chapter 14***.

In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41*** or ***37.43*** and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by 61G20-4.002 impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities on bridges or other structures. Examples of facilities include sidewalks and shared use paths, and drainage grates and inlets in or near the accessible route. Significant ADA design considerations exist for all facilities with grades that exceed 5%.

Note: This chapter applies to all bridges under local control, with the exception of bridges constructed on or over the Department's system. For bridges constructed on and over the Department's system, as well as all bridges that will be maintained by the Department, the Department's policies, procedures, standards and specifications will apply.

B OBJECTIVES

The objectives of this chapter are as follows:

- To prescribe uniform criteria with respect to bridge and miscellaneous structures design ~~loads, design methodology,~~ and geometric layout.
- To alert owners to the various federal and state requirements to be included in the design, construction, maintenance, and inspection of their bridges and other structures~~.~~.
- To provide practical suggestions specific to Florida on prudent ~~bridge~~ structural engineering based on past experience with statutes, standards, and criteria.

C DESIGN

The design of bridges and other structures shall be led by a licensed professional engineer who shall assume responsible charge of the work. The standards and criteria included here are directed only toward specific considerations that shall be followed. Other considerations are necessary to create a comprehensive bridge design allowing owners and their engineer's flexibility in design. All bridges and other structures shall be designed in accordance with specifications (including guide specifications) published by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).

C.1 Bridges - General

~~All bridges and other structures shall be designed in accordance with specifications (including guide specifications) published by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).~~ At a minimum, the ***AASHTO Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) Bridge Design Specifications, 7th Edition (2013)*** with ~~2013~~ applicable Interims (e.g. 2014 and 2015) shall be used. Any bridge reconstruction (i.e., lengthening, widening, and/or major component replacement) shall be designed as specified in this ~~S~~section ~~C of this chapter~~. Record of such reconstruction shall be maintained as specified in Section D of this chapter. The remaining design life should be considered in the design ~~of a repair on the project~~.

~~The design of all bridge facilities shall consider both the economic use of materials and the sound application of aesthetic principles. According to Section 336.045, Florida Statutes:~~

> ~~"*In developing such standards and criteria, the department shall consider design approaches which provide for the compatibility of such facilities with the surrounding natural and manmade environment; …and the appropriate*~~

~~*aesthetics based upon scale, color, and architectural style, materials used to construct the facility, and the landscape design and landscape materials around the facility…"*~~

C.2 Bridge Live Loads

In addition to the notional (HL - 93) design load specified in ***LRFD***, bridges shall also require a FL 120 permit load rating greater than 1 as defined in the FDOT ***Structures Manual, Volume 1 – Structures Design Guidelines (SDG)***. This vehicle allows for a more consistent load rating comparison considering the current bridge inventory.

C.3 Bridge Superstructure

The superstructure of a bridge is that portion of the structure that spans between its supports or piers. Considerations that shall be incorporated into the design of all superstructures will include the following:

C.3.a Girder Transportation

The Engineer of Record (EOR) is responsible for investigating the feasibility of transportation for heavy, long and/or deep girder field sections. In general, the EOR should consider the following during the design phase:

- Whether or not multiple routes exist between the bridge site and a major transportation facility.
- The transportation of field sections longer than 130 ft or weighing more than 160,000 pounds requires coordination through the Department's Permit Office during the design phase of the project. Shorter and/or lighter field sections may be required if access to the bridge site is limited by roadway(s) with sharp horizontal curvature or weight restrictions.
- On steel superstructures, where field splice locations required by design result in lengths greater than 130 feet, design and detail "Optional Field Splices" in the plans.
- For curved steel box girders, prefabricated trusses, and integral pier cap elements, size field pieces such that the total hauling width does not exceed 16 feet.

C.3.b Vertical Clearance

All new bridges over roadways and shared use paths shall be designed to meet the vertical clearance standards specified in ***Chapter 3, Section C.7.j.4.(b)***, and ***Chapter 9, Section C.6~~4~~***.

All new bridges over water shall be designed to meet the following vertical clearance standards:

- To allow debris to pass without causing damage, the clearance between the design flood stage and the low member of bridges shall be a minimum of two feet. This standard does not apply to culverts and bridge-culverts.

- For crossings subject to boat traffic, the minimum vertical navigation clearance should be:

Tidewater bays and streams	6 feet above Mean High Water *
Freshwater rivers, streams, non-regulated/controlled canals, and lakes	6 feet above Normal High Water
Regulated/controlled lakes and canals	6 feet above control elevation

* For locations subject to tidal salt / brackish water splashing, a 12 foot vertical clearance above Mean High Water should be considered for bridge durability reasons.

Higher clearances apply for crossings over legislated channels under the control of the U.S. Coast Guard (USCG). Designers should also consider future navigation demands and future shared use path demands in setting the vertical clearance of a bridge.

C.3.c Railings

All traffic, pedestrian, and bicycle railings shall comply with the requirements in ***Section 13*** of ***LRFD***. Traffic railings shall meet the crash requirements of at least Test Level 3 (TL-3) for bridges with design speeds greater than 45 mph and at least TL-2 for design speeds less than or equal to 45 mph.

For pedestrian/bicycle railings, two-pipe guiderails and details ~~(~~similar to the Department's ***Design Standards, Indexes 870 or 880~~)~~*** may be mounted on walls or other structures where drop-off hazards are 5 feet or less. Concrete, aluminum or steel railing and details ~~(~~similar in strength and geometry to the Department's ***Design Standards, Indexes 820 thru 862~~)~~*** shall be used (or modified to suit environmental runoff concerns) where drop-off hazards are greater than 5 feet. See appropriate Instructions for ***Design Standards (IDS***) for more information.

C.3.d Expansion Joints

The number of joints should be minimized to reduce the inspection and maintenance needs of the bridge.

C.3.e Drainage

All bridge designs shall include a drainage design that is specific to its site. Conveyance of drainage off the bridge roadway should be designed to meet spread standards contained in the Department's ***Drainage Manual, Chapter 3*** and may include open systems (i.e., scuppers) or closed systems (i.e., inlets and pipes) based on environmental permitting restrictions. Drainage from the bridge should not drop onto traffic below. Longitudinal conveyance piping attached to bridges is expensive and maintenance-intensive, and should be avoided whenever possible.

Conveyance of drainage off pedestrian facilities shall be designed to provide an accessible route for pedestrians~~meet the provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)~~. Further guidance on the design of bridge deck drainage may be found in the current version of ***FHWA Publication HEC-21, "Design of Bridge Deck Drainage."***

C.3.f End Treatments

Requirements for end treatments of structures are given in ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design***. Bridge barriers shall be designed to accommodate connection of a guardrail transition or energy absorbing system.

C.4 Bridge Substructure

The substructure of a bridge consists of all elements below the superstructure including its bearings, piers, and foundations. For guidance on bridges vulnerable

to coastal storms, see ***SDG, Section 2.5***. Considerations that shall be incorporated into the design of all substructures include the following:

C.4.a Scour

A hydrologic/hydraulic analysis shall be performed to quantify expected stages and flows at the bridge site. Anticipated substructure scour shall be developed for the following conditions

Hydraulic Design Flood Frequency	Scour Design Flood Frequency	Scour Design Check Flood Frequency
Q_{10}	Q_{25}	Q_{50}
Q_{25}	Q_{50}	Q_{100}
Q_{50}	Q_{100}	Q_{500}
Notes: "Q" is the common term used for flow rate, an expression of volume of fluid which passes per unit of time. "x" is the return period in years (10, 25, 50, 100, 500).		

Any exceptions to the standards above hydrologic/hydraulic and scour analysis requirements shall be approved in writing by the Department's local District Drainage Engineer. Methodology for computing bridge hydrology/hydraulics and bridge scour should follow the guidelines set forth in the most recent versions of the Department's ***"Drainage Manual (2016~~08~~)***, incorporated by ***Rule 14-86.003, F.A.C***. Further guidance and training may be obtained through ***FHWA Hydraulic Engineering Circulars (HEC) "HEC-18"*** and ***"HEC-20"*** and the Department's training courses on these topics. Additionally, for larger bridges (>120,000 sq. ft.), hydraulic designers may wish to consult with the local Department District Drainage Engineer for case-specific guidance. The ~~FDOT Structures Manual - Volume 1 - Structures Design Guidelines (~~***SDG~~), Section 2.11*** and ***2.12*** and ***Chapter 4 of the Department's Drainage Manual***, provide guidance on scour load combinations with other loads.

C.4.b Vessel Impact

All bridges over USCG designated navigable waterways shall include

consideration for potential vessel collision. Such collisions generally occur from barges or oceangoing ships. The engineer shall conduct a vessel risk analysis to determine the most economical method for protecting the bridge. This shall include either designing the bridge to withstand the vessel collision, or protecting it with dolphin cells. Fender systems should only be used to designate the channel width and not for pier protection. ~~The above risk analysis may be conducted utilizing the Department's computer program "Vessel Impact Risk Analysis."~~ For load combinations, use Load Combination "Extreme Event II" as follows:

(Permanent Dead Loads) + WA+FR+CV

With all load factors equal to 1.0 where WA are water loads, FR are friction forces and CV are the vessel collision loads. Nonlinear structural effects must be included and can be significant. It is anticipated that the entire substructure (including piles) may have to be replaced and the superstructure repaired if a bridge is subjected to this design impact load; however, the superstructure must not collapse.

Note: Further refinement or complication of this load case is unwarranted.

Further guidance may be obtained from the ***SDG, Section 2.11*** and ***LRFD Section 3.14.***

For guidance on bridge fender system design, see ***SDG, Section 3.14***. ~~and FDOT Design Standard Indexes 21900 and 21930.~~

C.4.c Pier Locations

All bridges over roadways shall have substructures supports set back from vehicular traffic lanes in accordance with ***Chapter 3, Section C.7.j.4.(a)***.

All bridges over water shall have substructure supports located with horizontal clearance requirements as listed below. In this case, horizontal clearance is defined as the clear distance between piers, fender systems, culvert walls, etc., projected by the bridge normal to the flow.

- For crossings subject to boat traffic a minimum horizontal clearance of 10 feet shall be provided.
- Where no boat traffic is anticipated, horizontal clearance shall be provided consistent with debris conveyance needs and structure economy.

C.5~~H.1~~ Retaining and Noise Walls ~~and Sound Barriers~~

The design of conventional, anchored, mechanically stabilized, and prefabricated modular retaining wall structures shall meet the requirements of ***LRFD Section 11***. Local agencies should consider using only wall types approved by the Department. These are described in ***Section 3.12*** of the ***SDG***. Local agencies should also follow the design criteria for retaining walls found in ***Section 3.13*** of the ***SDG***.

The design of ~~sound barriers~~~~walls~~noise walls shall meet the requirements of the ***SDG, Section 3.16*** ~~and LRFD~~. For noise~~sound~~ walls within the clear zone, their design and/or protection shall comply with the following:

- For ~~sound barriers~~noise walls attached to the top of traffic railings only use crash tested systems consistent with the design speed of the facility. The Department has standards for TL-4 systems that meet the requirements of ***NCHRP Report 350 or the Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH)***.
- Non-crash tested noise walls~~sound barriers~~ may be attached to structures if located behind an approved traffic railing and mounted at least five feet from the face of the traffic railing at deck level.

Potential existing off-site stormwater inflows through the proposed wall location should be verified in the field and considered in the wall design. ~~Additional considerations for the design of sound barrier walls may be found in Volume 1, Chapter 32 of the Department's Plans Preparation Manual (PPM).~~ For railings on top of walls, see ***Section C.3.~~b~~c. Railings.***

C.6~~H.2~~ Sign, Lighting, and Traffic Signal Supports

The design of sign, lighting, and traffic signal support structures shall meet the requirements of ***AASHTO's Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals ~~Fif~~Sixth Edition (2013~~09~~) ~~with 2010 and 2011 Interims,~~*** with the ***2015 Interims***, and the Department's ***Structures Manual Volume 3~~9~~ - FDOT Modifications to Standard Specification for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals (LTS-6~~5~~)***.

C.7~~H.3~~ Pedestrian Bridges

For guidance on pedestrian bridges, see ***SDG Chapter 10***.

D CONSTRUCTION

During the construction of a bridge or any structure at, over, or near a public facility, safety awareness is necessary and precautions shall be taken to protect the public. Provisions for protecting the public during construction shall be in accordance with the ***MUTCD*** work zone traffic control procedures and the standards and criteria described in ***Chapter 11 – Work Zone Safety***. Worker safety is the responsibility of the contractor. Temporary barriers shall be installed on all bridges being widened or whose new construction is phased. Spread of stormwater on the bridge deck should be considered in planning temporary traffic routing.

During the construction of a bridge or any structure, records to be kept and maintained throughout its life shall include foundation construction records (pile driving records, shaft tip elevations, borings) and as-built plans. These records provide critical information necessary for future inspection, maintenance, emergency management, enhancement, reconstruction, and/or demolition of these structures. These records shall be delivered to the Department's local District Structures Maintenance Engineers.

Any proposed changes to the construction details or specifications shall be signed, sealed, and dated by a professional engineer licensed in the State of Florida.

E ROUTINE INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Title 23, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 650, Subpart C, sets forth the ***National Bridge Inspection Standards (NBIS)*** for bridges on all public roads. ***Section 650.3*** defines bridges, specifies inspection procedures and frequencies, and indicates minimum qualifications for personnel. Each state is permitted to modify its bridge inspection standards to deviate from the NBIS standards but only following approval from the FHWA.

Section 335.074, F.S., mandates safety inspection of bridges as follows:

"At regular intervals not to exceed 2 years, each bridge on a public transportation facility shall be inspected for structural soundness and safety for the passage of traffic on such bridge. The thoroughness with which bridges are to be inspected shall depend on such factors as age, traffic characteristics, state of maintenance, and known deficiencies. The governmental entity having maintenance responsibility for any such bridge shall be responsible for having inspections performed and reports prepared in accordance with the provisions contained herein."

This statute also defines the minimum dimensions of bridge structures that must be inspected as follows:

"Those bridges having an opening measured along the center of the roadway of more than 20 feet between undercopings of abutments or spring lines of arches or extreme ends of openings for multiple boxes and those bridges consisting of multiple pipes where the clear distance between openings is less than half of the smaller contiguous opening…"

Bridge inspectors shall be certified in accordance with ***Chapter 14-48, F.A.C***. Safety inspection of bridges shall be conducted in accordance with ***Chapter 14-48, F.A.C***.

The Department inspects all bridges in Florida, both on-system and off-system. The Department provides each local government with copies of its inspection reports. Each local government should maintain these reports to be responsive to Metropolitan Planning Organization requests for bridge rehabilitation, replacement, or enhancement designations.

All on-system and off-system bridges are assigned a Bridge Number by the Department. For new bridges, local agencies shall contact the Department's local District Structures Maintenance Engineers to have a number assigned.

~~F RECONSTRUCTION~~

~~Any reconstruction (i.e., lengthening, widening, and/or major component replacement) shall be designed as specified in Section C of this chapter. Record of such reconstruction shall be maintained as specified in Section D of this chapter. The remaining design life should be considered in the design of a repair on the project.~~

~~G~~F BRIDGE LOAD RATING AND POSTING

Section 335.074, F.S. Safety Inspection of Bridges requires that bridges on a public transportation facility be inspected for structural soundness and safety at regular intervals. The inspection shall consider age, traffic characteristics, state of maintenance, and known deficiencies of the bridge. The governmental entity having maintenance responsibility for any such bridge shall be responsible for having inspections performed and reports prepared.

As required by ***Section 335.074, F.S***., each inspection shall be reported to the Department, using the Bridge Load Rating Summary Table form shown in Exhibit A. Further information for preparing a bridge load rating summary and fillable form may be found on the Department's Office of Maintenance, Bridge Information web site at the following location:

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/statemaintenanceoffice/LoadRating.shtm

Upon receipt of an inspection report that recommends reducing the weight limit on a bridge, the governmental entity having maintenance responsibility for the bridge shall load post the bridge within 30 days in accordance FS 335.074(5). Further requirements for reporting and posting of weight, size or speed limits on bridges are found in this statute, *Section 316.555 F.S. Weight, load, speed limits may be lowered.* The appropriate signage shall be promptly installed in accordance with the MUTCD.

For new construction or reconstruction projects, the bridge owner is responsible for providing the Department with a load rating and completed Bridge Load Rating Summary Table (see Exhibit A – Bridge Load Rating Summary Table) within 90 days of opening for on-system bridges or 180 days for off-system bridges. The bridge owner should consider requiring the engineer of record to perform the load rating.

EXHIBIT A Bridge Load Rating Summary Table

Bridge No.		**Analysis Method:**	**LRFR-LRFD**
Bridge Name			
Description			

FDOT Bridge Load Rating Summary Form (Page 1 of 1)

Rating Type	Rating Type	Gross Axle Weight (tons)	Moment/Shear/Service		Dead Load Factor	Live Load Factor	Live Load Distrib. Factor (axles)	Rating Factor	Span No. - Girder No., Interrior/Exterior, %Span L	Pontis RF Weight (tons)
Level	**Vehicle**	**Weight**	**Member Type**	**Limit**	**DC**	**LL**	**LLDF**	**RF**	**Governing Location**	**RATING**
Inventory	HL93	36	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
Operating	HL93	36	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
Permit	FL120	60	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
Max Span	FL120	60	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
Legal	SU2	17	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	SU3	33	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	SU4	35	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	C3	28	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	C4	36.7	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	C5	40	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	ST5	40	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				

Original Design Load	enter Original Design Load		Performed by:	Date:	
Rating Type, *Analysis*	enter Rating Type		Checked by:	Date:	
Distribution Method	enter Distribution Method		Sealed By:	Date:	
Impact Factor	enter IM	(axle loading)	FL P.E. No.:		
FL120 Gov. Span Length	enter Gov Length	(feet)	Cert. Auth. No.:		
Recommended Posting	enter Posting (70)		Phone & email:		
Rec. SU Posting	enter SU posting	(tons)	Company:		
Rec. C Posting	enter C posting	(tons)	Address:		
Rec. ST5 Posting	enter ST5 posting	(tons)	*P.E. Seal*		
Floor Beam Present?	FLOOR BEAM PRESENT?				
Segmental Bridge?	SEGMENTAL BRIDGE?				
Project No. & Reason	FIN No.	Update			
Status	Status				
Software Name, Version	Enter Software Name & Version				
COMMENTS BY THE ENGINEER					
Page 1/XX. Contents: summary, narrative, plans, calcs, check.					

This 04-24-2015 table is based on requirements within the 2015 FDOT Bridge Load Rating Manual, and the BMS Coding Guide; see http://www.dot.state.fl.us/statemaintenanceoffice/LoadRating.shtm

~~H OTHER STRUCTURES~~

~~H.1 Retaining Walls and Sound Barriers~~

~~The design of conventional, anchored, mechanically stabilized, and prefabricated modular retaining wall structures shall meet the requirements of LRFD Section 11. Local agencies should consider using only wall types approved by the Department. These are described in Section 3.12 of the SDG. Local agencies should also follow the design criteria for retaining walls found in Section 3.13 of the SDG.~~

~~The design of sound walls shall meet the requirements of the SDG and LRFD. For sound walls within the clear zone, their design and/or protection shall comply with the following:~~

- ~~For sound barriers attached to the top of traffic railings only use crash tested systems consistent with the design speed of the facility. The Department has standards for TL-4 systems that meet the requirements of NCHRP Report 350.~~
- ~~Non-crash tested sound barriers may be attached to structures if located behind an approved traffic railing and mounted at least five feet from the face of the traffic railing at deck level.~~

~~Potential existing off-site stormwater inflows through the proposed wall location should be verified in the field and considered in the wall design. Additional considerations for the design of sound barrier walls may be found in Volume 1, Chapter 32 of the Department's Plans Preparation Manual (PPM). For railings on top of walls, see Section C.3.b.~~

~~H.2 Sign, Lighting, and Traffic Signal Supports~~

~~The design of sign, lighting, and traffic signal support structures shall meet the requirements of AASHTO's Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals Fifth Edition (2009) with 2010 and 2011 Interims, and the Department's Structures Manual Volume 9 - FDOT Modifications to Standard Specification for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals (LTS-5).~~

~~H.3 Pedestrian Bridges~~

~~For guidance on pedestrian bridges, see SDG Chapter 10.~~

~~I~~G RECOMMENDATIONS

- Involve the public in determining "*the appropriate aesthetics based upon scale, color, and architectural style, materials used to construct the facility, and the landscape design and landscape materials around the facility…" (Section 336.045, F.S.).*
- Resist the temptation to enhance the aesthetics of a bridge with non-structural appurtenances and features that are novel and therefore may have safety challenges (otherwise, consult with the Department on these safety issues).
- Consider the potential for future expansion of a bridge's capacity (vehicular transit and pedestrian) in its layout and bridge-type selection.
- Use the Department's objective construction unit prices (contained in the Structures Design Guidelines, Sections 9.2 and 9.3) to select bridge type(s) to consider for final design.
- Consider the use of alternative designs (i.e., steel superstructures vs. concrete superstructures) to increase bidding competition on very large bridge construction projects.
- Consider factors other than economics in decisions on a bridge's basic design and its discretionary features.
- Invest in a comprehensive subsurface investigation of the site before any significant design of the bridge occurs (which will also help avoid unforeseen conditions during construction).
- Consult with other local officials on experiences relating to construction of other bridges in the area.
- Consider using the Department's Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction with notes on the plans referencing the Owner as the local governmental agency and the Engineer as the owner's engineer.
- Consider the constructability, inspectability, and maintainability of all bridge components before they are incorporated into the project's final design.
- Include drainage pass-throughs in wall designs.
- Preclude contractors without company or individual bridge experience from bidding on a bridge construction project.
- Provide qualified construction inspection personnel for all phases of bridge construction.
- Maintain all design and construction records in a safe, protected, and secure location throughout the life of the bridge.

~~J~~H REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The publications referenced in this chapter can be obtained from the following websites.

- FDOT Structures Design Guidelines (SDG)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/structures/StructuresManual/CurrentRelease/StructuresManual.shtm
- FDOT Bridge Load Rating Manual
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/statemaintenanceoffice/bridgeinfo.shtm
- All other FDOT Publications may be found at:
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/mapsandpublications/publications.shtm
- AASHTO, all publications may be ordered from:
  bookstore.transportation.org
- FHWA “HEC-18” and “HEC-20” may be found at~~ordered from~~:

  http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/engineering/hydraulics/library_listing.cfm
-
- 2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities
  http://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/transportation/facilities/ada-standards-for-transportation-facilities
- 2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction
  https://www.flrules.org/gateway/ruleno.asp?id=61G20-4.002

Draft

CHAPTER 18

SIGNING AND MARKING

A INTRODUCTION 18-1

B BACKGROUND 18-1

C SIGNS 18-2

C.1 Advance Street Name Signs 18-2

C.1.a Standards 18-2

C.1.b Installation 18-2

C.1.c Sign Design 18-2

C.2 Advance Traffic Control Signs 18-5

C.3 Overhead Street Name Signs 18-5

C.3.a Standards 18-5

C.3.b Installation 18-6

C.3.c Sign Design 18-6

C.3.d Internally Illuminated Overhead Street Name Signs 18-7

C.4 Community Wayfinding Guidance 18-8

C.5 DMS Overview 18-8

C.6 Design Details for Signs 18-8

D PAVEMENT MARKINGS 18-8

D.1 6-inch Pavement Markings 18-8

D.2 Reflective Pavement Markers 18-8

D.3 Audible Vibratory Pavement Markings 18-9

~~A INTRODUCTION ..... 18-1~~

~~B BACKGROUND ..... 18-1~~

~~C SIGNS~~

~~C.1 Advance Street Name Signs ..... 18-1~~

~~C.1.a Standards ..... 18-2~~

~~C.1.b Installation ..... 18-2~~

~~C.1.c Sign Design ..... 18-2~~

Draft

~~C.2 Advance Traffic Control Signs ..... 18-4~~
~~C.3 Overhead Street Name Signs ..... 18-4~~
~~C.3.a Standards ..... 18-5~~
~~C.3.b Installation ..... 18-6~~
~~C.3.c Sign Design ..... 18-6~~
~~C.3.d Internally Illuminated Overhead Street Name Signs ..... 18-6~~
~~C.4 Community Wayfinding Guidance ..... 18-7~~
~~C.5 DMS Overview ..... 18-7~~
~~C.6 Design Details for Signs ..... 18-8~~

~~D PAVEMENT MARKINGS ..... 18-8~~
~~D.1 6-inch Pavement Markings ..... 18-8~~
~~D.2 Reflective Pavement Markers ..... 18-8~~
~~D.3 Audible Vibratory Pavement Markings ..... 18-8~~

Draft

TABLES

Table 18-1 Design Guidelines for Advance Street Name Signs 18-3
~~Table 18-1 Design Guidelines for Advance Street Name Signs ..... 18-3~~

FIGURES

Figure 18 – 1 Examples of Advance Street Name Signs..... 18-4
~~Figure 18 – 1 Examples of Advance Street Name Signs ..... 18-4~~

CHAPTER 18

SIGNING AND MARKING

A INTRODUCTION

Signing and pavement markings help improve highway safety by providing guidance information to road users. Both signs and pavement markings should provide sufficient visibility to meet the user's needs. The design of signs and pavement markings should complement the basic highway design. Designers and engineers should also be aware of the capabilities and needs of seniors, and consider appropriate measures to better meet their needs and capabilities.

Sections C and D of this chapter specifically discuss traffic control devices for both signing and pavement marking that accommodate not only the needs of all types of road users, but also the special needs of seniors.

B BACKGROUND

Section 316.0745, F.S., requires~~mandates that~~ the Department compile and publish a manual of uniform traffic control devices for use on the streets and highways of the state. To comply with this statute, the Federal Highway Administration's (FHWA) ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)*** has been adopted for use in ***Rule 14-15.010, Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.)***:

https://www.flrules.org/gateway/ruleNo.asp?ID=14-15.010

All references in this chapter are in conformance with the ***MUTCD***:

http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/

C SIGNS

C.1 Advance Street Name Signs

The use of advance street name signs provides advance notification to road users to assist them in making safe roadway decisions. Signs should be used for signalized or non-signalized intersections that are classified as a minor arterial or higher, or a cross street that provides access to a traffic generator or possesses other comparable physical or traffic characteristics deemed to be critical or significant.

C.1.a Standards

The words Street, Boulevard, Avenue, etc., may be abbreviated, ~~or~~ deleted or reduced in size to conserve sign panel length. However, if confusion would result due to similar street names in the area, the deletion should not be made.

Use of the local name is preferred on advance street name signs.

When a cross street has a different name on each side of the intersection, both names shall be shown with an arrow beside each name to designate direction.

Additional legend such as NEXT SIGNAL or XX FEET may be added.

C.1.b Installation

Advance street name signs should be installed in advance of the intersection in accordance with the distances shown in "Condition A" of ***Table 2C-4. Guidelines for Advance Placement of Warning Signs of the MUTCD***. These distances are to be considered the minimum for a single lane change maneuver, and should be measured from the begin taper point for the longest auxiliary lane designed for the intersection. The degree of traffic congestion and the potential number of lane change maneuvers that may be required should also be considered when determining the advance placement distance.

C.1.c Sign Design

Advance street name signs shall be designed in accordance with ***Part 2 Signs*** of the ***MUTCD***. The lettering for the signs shall be composed of a combination of lower case letters with initial upper case letters.

Letter height should conform to Table 18 - 1, Design Guidelines for Advance Street Name Signs.

Table 18 – 1
Design Guidelines for Advance Street Name Signs

~~Posted Speed Limit (mph)~~	~~Letter Size (inches) Series E Modified~~	
	~~Upper~~	~~Lower~~
~~30 - 35~~	~~8~~	~~6~~
~~40 or Greater~~	~~10.67~~	~~8~~

Posted Speed Limit	Street Name Legend	Next Signal or Intersection
	Letter Size (inches) Series E Modified (EM) Upper/Lower Case Letters	Letter Size (inches) Series D (D) Upper Case Letters
35 mph or less	8 EM	6 D
40 mph or greater	10.67 EM	8 D

Figure 18 – 1
Examples of Advance Street Name Signs

C.2 Advance Traffic Control Signs

Advance Traffic Control signs, i.e., Stop Ahead (W3-1), Yield Ahead (W3-2), and Signal Ahead (W3-3) signs, shall be installed on an approach to a primary traffic control device that is not visible for a sufficient distance to permit the driver to respond to the device. The visibility criteria for ~~a~~ traffic ~~control device~~signals shall be based on having a continuous view of at least two signal faces for the distance specified in ***Table 4D-2. Minimum Sight Distance for Signal Visibility*** of the ***MUTCD***.

An Advance Traffic Control sign may be used for additional emphasis of the primary traffic control device, even when the visibility distance to the device is satisfactory.

C.3 Overhead Street Name Signs

Overhead street name signs with mixed-case lettering should be used at major intersections (with multi-lane approaches) as a supplement to post mounted street name signs.

C.3.a Standards

Overhead street name signs shall only be used to identify cross streets, not destinations such as cities or facilities.

The words Street, Boulevard, Avenue, etc., may be abbreviated, ~~or~~ deleted or reduced in size to conserve sign panel length. ~~.~~

The border should be eliminated on overhead street name signs to minimize sign panel size.

When a cross street is known by both a route number and a local name, use of the local name is preferred.

~~When a cross street has dual local street name designations, both names may be used on the overhead street name sign.~~

When a cross street has a different name on each side of the intersection, two options are permitted:

- when two sign panels are used, ~~both names shall be shown on the overhead street name sign. When one sign panel is used, the names shall be separated with a border, with the left name displayed over the right. The display of block numbers is not required when two street names with arrows are provided on a single panel. When two signs are used, they should be ins~~installed~~ ~~ed with~~ one sign panel on the left and the other sign panel on the right side of the signal heads~~intersection~~; or

- when one sign panel is used, the left name should be displayed over the right name. Arrows should be provided to indicate which side of the intersection the street name applies.

~~Due to the possibility of hurricane strength winds, overhead street name signs should not be installed on span wire.~~

C.3.b Installation

Due to the possibility of hurricane strength winds, overhead street name signs should not be installed on span wire but should be mounted to the strain pole or mast arm.

The location of the overhead street name sign on a signal strain pole and/or mast arm may vary. However, it shall not interfere with the motorist's view of the signal heads. The preferred location is shown in the Department's ***Design Standards, Index No. 17748***. In the case of separate street names on each side of the street, where separate signs are used, one sign should be placed to the right of the ~~centerline and~~ signal heads and the other sign to the left ~~side~~ of the ~~centerline and~~ signal heads.

C.3.c Sign Design

On roadways with speeds of 40 mph or above, the sign panel should be at least 24 inches in height with the length determined by text. At a minimum, use 8-inch upper case and 6-inch lower case lettering for the street name. If block numbering text is included, use ~~and~~ 6-inch all upper case lettering ~~for the block numbering text~~ on the second line ~~shall be used~~. The preferred font is Series E-Modified; however, Series E may be used to accommodate the amount of legend so as not to exceed the 96-inch maximum length.

Where structurally possible, overhead street name signs should be designed in compliance with the FHWA recommendations for older drivers using a minimum lettering size of 102-inch upper case with 9-inch lower case.

C.3.d4 Internally Illuminated Overhead Street Name Signs

An iInternally illuminated overhead street name signs mayshould be used to improve night-time visibility and benefits older drivers.

Internally illuminated overhead street name signs should have a standardized height of 24-inches and a length not to exceed of 10872-inches (nine feet).

, with A either Series E Modified or Series E font, which may vary to accommodate the amount of text on the panel should be used. In extreme cases, a 96-inch maximum length sign may be used.

The sign design shall be in accordance with the ***MUTCD***. When possible the text should utilize the following text attributes in descending order to limit the maximum width:

- 10-inch upper case with 8-inch lower case, Type EM font
- 10-inch upper case with 8-inch lower case, Type E font
- 8-inch upper case with 6-inch lower case, Type EM font
- 8-inch upper case with 6-inch lower case, Type E font

Internally illuminated overhead street name signs shall be on the Department's ***Approved Products List (APL)***. in accordance with Section 316.0745, F.S.

C.4 Community Wayfinding Guidance

Community wayfinding guide signs should be developed and approved through local resolution with criteria for the destinations shown on the community wayfinding guide sign system plan. Any wayfinding guide sign should be used in accordance with ***Rule 14-51.030, F.A.C.*** The intent is to provide guidance and navigation information to local cultural, historical, recreational, and tourist activities. No destination should be displayed for the purpose of advertising.

C.5 DMS Overview

The main purpose of dynamic message signs (DMS) is to convey timely and important en-route and roadside information to motorists and travelers. Further information on how DMS signs may be used can be found in FDOT's policy on ***Displaying Messages on Dynamic Message Signs Permanently Mounted on the State Highway System***.

http://www2.dot.state.fl.us/proceduraldocuments/procedures/bin/000750015.pdf

C.6~~5~~ Design Details for Signs

The ***MUTCD*** shall govern the sign details for all signs. At a minimum, the "Conventional Road" size should be used on signs intended for motor vehicle operators. Signs intended for shared use path users should use the reduced "Shared-Use Path" sizing.

D PAVEMENT MARKINGS

D.1 6-inch Pavement Markings

6-inch pavement markings should be used for all ~~centerline~~ pavement center line, ~~and~~lane separation line ~~edge~~and edge line ~~pavement~~ markings.

D.2 Reflective Pavement Markers

~~In order~~ T~~t~~o provide greater emphasis and increase visibility, reflective (raised) pavement markers (RPM) may~~should~~ be placed at 40-foot spacings along the centerline markings of roadways. ~~with speeds 3540 mph or greater.~~

D.3 Audible Vibratory Pavement Markings

For high speed roadways, audible, vibratory markings should be considered.

Draft

CHAPTER 19

TRADITIONAL NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT

A INTRODUCTION 19-1

B APPLICATION 19-3

C PLANNING CRITERIA 19-4
- C.1 LAND USE 19-4
- C.2 NETWORKS 19-4

D OBJECTIVES 19-7

E DESIGN ELEMENTS 19-9
- E.1 Design Controls 19-9
  - E.1.a Design Speed 19-9
  - E.1.b Movement Types 19-9
  - E.1.c Design Vehicles 19-11
- E.2 Sight Distance 19-11
  - E.2.a Stopping Sight Distance 19-11
  - E.2.b Passing Sight Distance 19-11
  - E.2.c Intersection Sight Distance 19-12
- E.3 Horizontal Alignment 19-12
  - E.3.a Minimum Centerline Radius 19-12
  - E.3.b Minimum Curb Return Radius 19-12
- E.4 Vertical Alignment 19-13
- E.5 Cross Section Elements 19-13
  - E.5.a Introduction 19-13
  - E.5.b Lane Width 19-13
  - E.5.c Medians 19-15
  - E.5.d Turn Lanes 19-16
  - E.5.e Parking 19-17
- E.6 Cul-de-sacs and Turnarounds 19-17
  - E.6.a Turning Area 19-17
- E.7 Pedestrian Considerations 19-18

Draft

E.7.a Furniture Zone 19-18
E.7.b Walking/Pedestrian Zone 19-19
E.7.c Shy Zone 19-19
E.7.d Mid-Block Crossings 19-19
E.7.e Curb Extensions 19-19
E.8 Bicyclist Considerations 19-20
E.8.a Bicycle Facilities 19-20
E.8.b Shared Use Paths 19-21
E.9 Transit 19-21
E.10 Clear Zone 19-21

F REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 19-22

A INTRODUCTION 19-1

B APPLICATION 19-3

C PLANNING CRITERIA 19-4
C.1 LAND USE 19-4
C.2 NETWORKS 19-4

D OBJECTIVES 19-7

E DESIGN ELEMENTS 19-9
E.1 Design Controls 19-9
E.1.a Design Speed 19-9
E.1.b Movement Types 19-9
E.1.c Design Vehicles 19-10
E.2 Sight Distance 19-11
E.2.a Stopping Sight Distance 19-11
E.2.b Passing Sight Distance 19-11
E.2.c Intersection Sight Distance 19-11
E.3 Horizontal Alignment 19-12
E.3.a Minimum Centerline Radius 19-12
E.3.b Minimum Curb Return Radius 19-12
E.4 Vertical Alignment 19-12
E.5 Cross Section Elements 19-12

Draft

E.5.a Introduction 19-12
E.5.b Lane Width 19-13
E.5.c Medians 19-14
E.5.d Turn Lanes 19-15
E.5.e Parking 19-16
E.6 Cul-de-sacs and Turnarounds 19-16
E.6.a Turning Area 19-16
E.7 Pedestrian Considerations 19-16
E.7.a Furniture Zone 19-17
E.7.b Walking/Pedestrian Zone 19-17
E.7.c Shy Zone 19-18
E.7.d Mid-Block Crossings 19-18
E.7.e Curb Extensions 19-18
E.8 Bicyclist Considerations 19-18
E.8.a Bicycle Facilities 19-18
E.8.b Shared Use Paths 19-19
E.9 Transit 19-20
E.10 Clear Zone 19-20

F REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES 19-21

TABLES

Table 19 – 1 Curb Return Radii 19-13

Table 19 – 2 Minimum Lane Width 19-14

Table 19 – 3 Recommended Median Width 19-16

Table 19 – 4 Parking Lane Width 19-17

Table 19-1 Curb Return Radii 19-12

Table 19-2 Minimum Lane Width 19-13

Table 19-3 Recommended Median Width 19-15

Draft

~~Table 19-4 Parking Lane Width ..... 19-16~~

FIGURES

Figure 19 – 1 Traditional Network 19-5

Figure 19 – 2 Conventional Network 19-5

Figure 19 – 3 Lane Width 19-14

Figure 19 – 4 Border 19-18

~~Figure 19-1 Traditional Network ..... 19-5~~

~~Figure 19-2 Conventional Network ..... 19-5~~

~~Figure 19-3 Lane Width ..... 19-13~~

~~Figure 19-4 Border ..... 19-17~~

CHAPTER 19

TRADITIONAL NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT

A INTRODUCTION

Florida is a national leader in planning, design and construction of Traditional Neighborhood Development (TND) communities, and in the renovation of downtown neighborhoods and business districts. TND refers to the development or redevelopment of a neighborhood or town using traditional town planning principles. Projects should include a range of housing types and commercial establishments, a network of well-connected streets and blocks, civic buildings and public spaces, and include other uses such as stores, schools, and worship within walking distances of residences.

They represent patterns of development aligned with the state's growth management, smart growth and sprawl containment goals. This approach, with its greater focus on pedestrian, bicycle and transit mobility; is distinct from Conventional Suburban Development (CSD). CSDs are comprised largely of subdivision and commercial strip development.

TND communities rely on a strong integration of land use and transportation. A TND has clearly defined characteristics and design features that are necessary to achieve the goals for compact and livable development patterns reinforced by a context-sensitive transportation network. The treatment of land use, development patterns and transportation networks necessary for successful TND communities is a major departure from those same elements currently utilized in other Greenbook chapters.

To provide a design that accomplishes the goals set out in this chapter, designers will be guided by the context of the built environment, established or desired, for a portion of the communities because TND communities rely on a stronger integration of land use and transportation than CSD communities. This chapter provides criteria that may be used for the design of streets within a TND when such features are desired, appropriate and feasible. This involves providing a balance between mobility and livability. This chapter may be used in planning and designing new construction, urban infill, and redevelopment projects.

Section B of this chapter discusses the primary objectives of TND in more detail to aid the designer in the selection of proper criteria. Section C sets forth specific design criteria for the transportation system within TND.

The following link provides a handbook containing essential information to provide designers guidance in the successful application of this Chapter:

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/FloridaGreenbook/TND-Handbook.pdf

Draft

B APPLICATION

A project or community plan may be considered a TND when at least the first seven of the following principles are included:

1. Has a compact, pedestrian-oriented scale that can be traversed in a five to ten-minute walk from center to edge.
2. Is designed with low speed, low volume, interconnected streets with short block lengths, 150 to 500 feet, and cul-de-sacs only where no alternatives exist. Cul-de-sacs, if necessary, should have walkway and bicycle connections to other sidewalks and streets to provide connectivity within and to adjacent neighborhoods.
3. Orients buildings at the back of sidewalk, or close to the street with off-street parking located to the side or back of buildings, as not to interfere with pedestrian activity.
4. Has building designs that emphasize higher intensities, narrow street frontages, connectivity of sidewalks and paths, and transit stops to promote pedestrian activity and accessibility.
5. Incorporates a continuous bike and pedestrian network with wider sidewalks in commercial, civic, and core areas, but at a minimum has sidewalks at least five feet wide on both sides of the street. Accommodates pedestrians with short street crossings, which may include mid-block crossings, bulb-outs, raised crosswalks, specialty pavers, or pavement markings.
6. Uses on-street parking adjacent to the sidewalk to calm traffic, and offers diverse parking options, but planned so that it does not obstruct access to transit stops.
7. Varies residential densities, lot sizes, and housing types, while maintaining an average net density of at least eight dwelling units per acre, and higher density in the center.
8. Integrates at least ten percent of the developed area for nonresidential and civic uses, as well as open spaces.
9. Has only the minimum right of way necessary for the street, median, planting strips, sidewalks, utilities, and maintenance that are appropriate to the adjacent land uses and building types.
10. Locates arterial highways, major collector roads, and other high-volume corridors at the edge of the TND and not through the TND.

The design criteria in this chapter shall only be applicable within the area defined as TND.

C PLANNING CRITERIA

Planning for TND communities occurs at several levels, including the region, the city/town, the community, the block, and, finally, the street and building. Planning should be holistic, looking carefully at the relationship between land use, buildings, and transportation in an integrated fashion. This approach, and the use of form based codes, can create development patterns that balance pedestrian, bicycling, and transit with motor vehicle transportation.

C.1 LAND USE

In addition to its importance in calculating trip generation, the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) recognizes land use as fundamental to establishing context, design criteria, cross-section elements, and right of way allocation. The pedestrian travel that is generated by the land uses is also important to the design process for various facilities.

A well-integrated, or “fine grained”, land use mix within buildings and blocks is essential. These buildings and blocks aggregate into neighborhoods, which should be designed with a mix of uses to form a comprehensive planning unit that aggregates into larger villages, towns, and regions. Except at the regional scale, each of these requires land uses to be designed at a pedestrian scale and to be served by “complete streets” that safely and attractively accommodate many modes of travel.

The proposed land uses, residential densities, building size and placement, proposed parking (on-street and off-street) and circulation, the location and use of open space, and the development phasing are all considerations in facility design for TNDs. ITE recommends a high level of connectivity, short blocks that provide many choices of routes to destinations, and a fine-grained urban land use and lot pattern. Higher residential density and nonresidential intensity, as measured by floor area ratios of building area to site area, are required for well-designed TNDs.

C.2 NETWORKS

Urban networks are frequently characterized as either traditional or conventional. Traditional networks are typically characterized by a relatively non-hierarchical pattern of short blocks and straight streets with a high density of intersections that support all modes of travel in a balanced fashion.

Draft

Figure 19 – 1 Traditional Network

New York, NY

Savannah, GA

(Source: VHB)

The typical conventional street network, in contrast, often includes a framework of widely-spaced arterial roads with limited connectivity provided by a system of large blocks, curving streets and a branching hierarchical pattern, often terminating in cul-de-sacs.

Figure 19 – 2 Conventional Network

Walnut Creek, CA
(Source: VHB)

Draft

Traditional and conventional networks differ in three easily measurable respects: (1) block size, (2) degree of connectivity and (3) degree of curvature. While the last does not significantly impact network performance, block size and connectivity create very different performance characteristics.

Advantages of traditional networks include:

1. Distribution of traffic over a network of streets, reducing the need to widen roads;
2. A highly interconnected network providing a choice of multiple routes of travel for all modes, including emergency services;
3. More direct routes between origin and destination points, which generate fewer vehicle miles of travel (VMT) than conventional suburban networks;
4. Smaller block sizes in a network that is highly supportive to pedestrian, bicycle, and transit modes of travel;
5. A block structure that provides greater flexibility for land use to evolve over time.

It is important in TND networks to have a highly interconnected network of streets with smaller block sizes than in conventional networks. There are several ways to ensure that these goals are achieved.

One method is based upon the physical dimensions used to layout streets and blocks. The following list identifies those parameters:

1. Limit block size to an average perimeter of approximately 1,320 feet.
2. Encourage an average intersection spacing for local streets of 300-400 feet.
3. Limit maximum intersection spacing for local streets to approximately 600 feet.
4. Limit maximum spacing between pedestrian/bicycle connections to approximately 300 feet (that is, it creates mid-block paths and pedestrian shortcuts).

Draft

D OBJECTIVES

The basic objectives of a Traditional Neighborhood Development are:

1. Safety
2. Mobility of all users (vehicles, pedestrians, bicyclists and transit)
3. Compact and livable development patterns
4. Context-sensitive transportation network

TND features are based upon the consideration of the following concepts. These concepts are not intended as absolute criteria since certain concepts may conflict. The concepts should therefore be used for the layout of proper street systems.

1. Strong integration of land use and transportation.
2. Very supportive of pedestrian, bicycle, and transit modes.
3. Smaller block sizes to improve walkability, and to create a fine network of streets accommodating bicyclists and pedestrians, and providing a variety of routes for all users.
4. On-street parking is favored over surface parking lots.
5. Limited use of one way streets.
6. Speeds for motor vehicles are ideally kept in the range of 20-35 mph through the design of the street, curb extensions, use of on-street parking, the creation of enclosure through building and tree placement.
7. Street geometry (narrow streets and compact intersections), adjacent land use, and other elements within a TND must support a high level of transit, pedestrian and bicycle activity.
8. Provide access to emergency services, transit, waste management, and delivery trucks.
9. Provide access to property.

This approach to street design requires close attention to the operational needs of transit, fire and rescue, waste collection, and delivery trucks. For this reason, early coordination with transit, fire and rescue, waste collection, and other stakeholder groups is essential. For fire and rescue, determination of the importance of that corridor for community access should be determined, e.g. primary or secondary access.

Draft

More regular encroachment of turning vehicles into opposing lanes will occur at intersections. Therefore, frequency of transit service, traffic volumes, and the speeds at those intersections must be considered when designing intersections.

When designing features and streets for TND communities, creativity and careful attention to safety for pedestrians and bicyclists must be balanced with the operational needs of motor vehicles.

Finally, it is very important when designing in TND communities to ensure that a continuous network is created for pedestrians, bicyclists, and transit throughout the community to create higher levels of mobility that are less dependent on automobile travel.

Draft

E DESIGN ELEMENTS

The criteria provided in this chapter shall require the approval of the maintaining authority's designated Professional Engineer representative with project oversight or general compliance responsibilities. Approval may be given based upon a roadway segment or specific area.

The criteria provided in this chapter are generally in agreement with AASHTO guidelines with a special emphasis on urban, low-speed environments. Design elements within TND projects not meeting the requirements of this chapter are subject to the requirements for Design Exceptions found in ***Chapter 14*** of this manual.

E.1 Design Controls

E.1.a Design Speed

The application of design speed for TND communities is philosophically different than for conventional transportation and CSD communities. Traditionally, the approach for setting design speed was to use as high a design speed as practical.

In contrast to this approach, the goal for TND communities is to establish a design speed that creates a safer and more comfortable environment for pedestrians and bicyclists, and is appropriate for the surrounding context.

Design speeds of 20 to 35 mph are desirable for TND streets. Alleys and narrow roadways intended to function as shared spaces may have design speeds as low as 10 mph.

E.1.b Movement Types

Movement types are used to describe the expected driver experience on a given thoroughfare, and the design speed for pedestrian safety and mobility established for each of these movement types. They are also used to establish the components and criteria for design of streets in TND communities.

Draft

Yield: Has a design speed of less than 20 mph. Drivers must proceed slowly with extreme care, and must yield to pass a parked car or approaching vehicle. This is the functional equivalent of traffic calming. This type should accommodate bicycle routes through the use of shared lanes.

Slow: Has a design speed of 20-25 mph. Drivers can proceed carefully, with an occasional stop to allow a pedestrian to cross or another car to park. Drivers should feel uncomfortable exceeding design speed due to the presence of parked cars, enclosure, tight turn radii, and other design elements. This type should accommodate bicycle routes through the use of shared lanes.

Low: Has a design speed of 30-35 mph. Drivers can expect to travel generally without delay at the design speed, and street design supports safe pedestrian movement at the higher design speed. This type is appropriate for thoroughfares designed to traverse longer distances, or that connect to higher intensity locations. This type should accommodate bicycle routes through the use of bike lanes.

Design speeds higher than 35 mph should not normally be used in TND communities due to the concerns for pedestrian and bicyclist safety and comfort. There may be locations where planned TND communities border, or are divided by, existing corridors with posted/design speeds higher than 35 mph. In those locations, coordination with the regulating agency should occur with a goal to re-design the corridor and reduce the speed to 35 mph or less. The increase in motorist travel time due to the speed reduction is usually insignificant because TND communities are generally compact.

When the speed reduction cannot be achieved, measures to improve pedestrian safety for those crossing the corridor should be evaluated and installed when appropriate.

Draft

E.1.c Design Vehicles

There is a need to understand that street design with narrow streets and compact intersections requires designers to pay close attention to the operational needs of transit, fire and rescue, waste collection, and delivery trucks. For this reason, early coordination with transit, fire and rescue, waste collection, and other stakeholder groups is essential.

Regular encroachment of turning vehicles into opposing lanes will occur at intersections. Therefore, frequency of transit service, traffic volumes, and the speeds at those intersections must be considered when designing intersections. For fire and rescue, determination of the importance of the street for community access should be determined, e.g. primary or secondary access.

The designer should evaluate intersections using turning templates or turning movement analysis software to ensure that adequate operation of vehicles can occur. Treatment of on-street parking around intersections should be evaluated during this analysis to identify potential conflicts between turning vehicles and on-street parking.

E.2 Sight Distance

See ***Chapter 3 Geometric Design, C.3 Sight Distance.***

E.2.a Stopping Sight Distance

See ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design, C.3.a~~A~~ Stopping Sight Distance***.

E.2.b Passing Sight Distance

Due to the importance of low speeds and concerns for pedestrian comfort and safety, passing should be discouraged or prohibited.

E.2.c Intersection Sight Distance

Sight distance should be calculated in accordance with ***Chapter 3, Section C.9.b~~B~~***, using the appropriate design speeds for the street being evaluated. When executing a crossing or turning maneuver after stopping at a stop sign, stop bar, or crosswalk, as required in ***Section 316.123, F.S***., it is assumed that the vehicle will move slowly forward to obtain sight distance (without intruding into the crossing travel lane) stopping a second time as necessary.

Therefore, when curb extensions are used, or on-street parking is in place, the vehicle can be assumed to move forward on the second step movement, stopping just shy of the travel lane, increasing the driver's potential to see further than when stopped at the stop bar. The resulting increased sight distance provided by the two step movement allows parking to be located closer to the intersection.

The ***MUTCD*** requires that on-street parking be located at least 20 feet from crosswalks. The minimum stopping sight distance is 60 feet for low volume (< 400 ADT) streets. Even on slow speed, low volume urban streets, the combination of curb return, crosswalk width and 20-foot setback to the first parking space may not meet the minimum stopping distance. Justification for locating parking spaces 20 feet from crosswalks may be achieved based on community history with existing installations.

E.3 Horizontal Alignment

E.3.a Minimum Centerline Radius

See ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design, C.4 Horizontal Alignment*** and Table 3 – 5~~3~~ Horizontal Curvature, Low-Speed Urban Streets.

E.3.b Minimum Curb Return Radius

Curb return radii should be kept small to keep intersections compact. The use of on-street parking and/or bike lanes increases the effective size of the curb radii, further improving the ability of design vehicles to negotiate turns without running over the curb return.

Draft

Table 19 – 1 Curb Return Radii

Movement Type	Design Speed	Curb Radius w/Parallel Parking*
Yield	Less than 20 mph	5-10 feet
Slow	20-25 mph	10-15 feet
Low	30-35 mph	15-20 feet

* Dimensions with parking on each leg of the intersection. Both tangent sections adjacent to the curb return must provide for on-street parking or else curb radii must be evaluated using "design vehicle" and either software or turning templates.

E.4 Vertical Alignment

See ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design, C.5 Vertical Alignment***.

E.5 Cross Section Elements

E.5.a Introduction

As discussed earlier in this chapter, TND street design places importance on how the streets are treated since they are part of the public realm. The street portion of the public realm is shaped by the features and cross section elements used in creating the street. For this reason, it is necessary the designer pay more attention to what features are included, where they are placed, and how the cross section elements are assembled.

E.5.b Lane Width

Travel lane widths should be based on the context and desired speed for the area where the street is located. Table 19-2 shows travel lane widths and associated appropriate speeds. It is important to note that in low speed urban environments, lane widths are typically measured to the curb face instead of the edge of the gutter pan. Consequently, when curb sections with gutter pans are used, the motor vehicle and parking lanes include the width of the gutter pan.

Draft

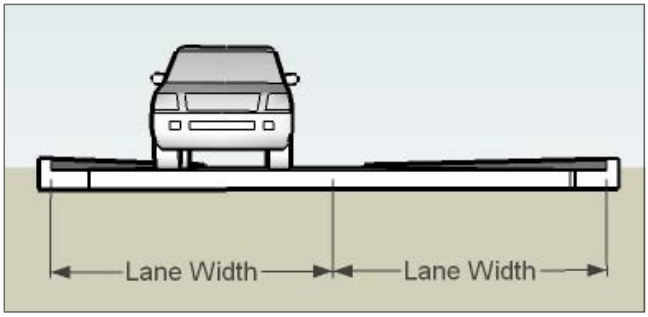
Table 19 – 2 Minimum Lane Width

Movement Type	Design Speed	Travel Lane Width
Yield*	Less than 20 mph	N/A
Slow	20-25 mph	9-10 feet
Low	30-35 mph	10-11 feet

* Yield streets are typically residential two-way streets with parking on one or both sides. When the street is parked both sides, the remaining space between parked vehicles (10 feet minimum) is adequate for one vehicle to pass through. Minimum width for a yield street with parking on both sides should be 24 feet curb face to curb face. Minimum width for a yield street with parking on one side should be 20 feet curb face to curb face, allowing for two 10-foot lanes when the street is not parked.

Figure 19 – 3 Lane Widths shows a typical measurement.

Figure 19 – 3 Lane Width



(Source: VHB)

In order for drivers to understand the appropriate driving speeds, lane widths should create some level of discomfort when driving too fast. The presence of on-street parking is important in achieving the speeds shown in Table 19 – 2 Minimum Lane Widths. When bicycle lanes or multi-lane configurations are used, there is more room for vehicles, such as buses, to operate. However car drivers may feel more comfortable driving faster than desired.

Alleys and narrow roadways that act as shared spaces can have design speeds as low as 10 mph, as noted in ***Chapter 16 - Residential Street Design***.

Draft

Alleys can be designed as either one way or two way. Right of way width should be a minimum of 20 feet with no permanent structures within the right of way that would interfere with vehicle access to garages or parking spaces, access for trash collection, and other operational needs. Pavement width should be a minimum of 12 feet. Coordination with local municipalities on operational requirements is essential to ensure that trash collection and fire protection services can be completed.

E.5.c Medians

Medians used in low-speed urban thoroughfares provide for access management, turning traffic, safety, pedestrian refuge, landscaping, lighting, and utilities. These medians are usually raised with raised curb.

Landscaped medians can enhance the street or help create a gateway entrance into a community. Medians can be used to create tree canopies over travel lanes for multi-lane roadways contributing to a sense of enclosure.

Medians vary in width depending on available right of way and function. Because medians require a wider right of way, the designer must weigh the benefits of a median with the issues of pedestrian crossing distance, speed, context, and available roadside width.

Draft

Table 19 – 3 Recommended Median Width

Median Type	Minimum Width	Recommended Width
Median for access control	4 feet	6 feet
Median for pedestrian refuge	6 feet	8 feet
Median for trees and lighting	6 feet [1]	10 feet [2]
Median for single left turn lane	10 feet [3]	14 feet [4]

Table Notes:

[1] Six feet measured curb face to curb face is generally considered the minimum width for the proper growth of small caliper trees (less than 4 inches),

[2] Wider medians provide room for larger caliper trees and more extensive landscaping,

[3] A ten foot lane provides for a turn lane without a concrete traffic separator,

[4] Fourteen feet provides for a turn lane with a concrete traffic separator.

E.5.d Turn Lanes

The need for turn lanes for vehicle mobility should be balanced with the need to manage vehicle speeds and the potential impact on the border width, such as sidewalk width. Turn lanes tend to allow through vehicles to maintain higher speeds through intersections, since turning vehicles can move over and slow in the turn lane.

Left turn lanes are considered to be acceptable in an urban environment since there are negative impacts to roadway capacity when left turns block the through movement of vehicles. The installation of a left turn lane can be beneficial when used to perform a road diet such as reducing a four lane section to three lanes with the center lane providing for turning movements. In urban areas, no more than one left turn lane should be provided.

Right turns from through lanes do not block through movements, but do create a reduction in speed due to the slowing of turning vehicles. Right turn lanes are used to maintain speed through intersections, and to reduce

Draft

the potential for rear end crashes. However, the installation of right turn lanes increases the crossing distance for pedestrians and the speed of vehicles, therefore the use of exclusive right turn lanes are rarely used except at "T" intersections.

E.5.e Parking

On-street parking is important in the urban environment for the success of those retail businesses that line the street, to provide a buffer for the pedestrian, and to help calm traffic speeds. When angle parking is proposed for on-street parking, designers should consider the use of back in angle parking in lieu of front in angle parking.

Table 19 – 4 Parking Lane Width

Movement Type	Design Speed	Parking Lane Width
Slow	20-25 mph	(Angle) 17-18 feet
Slow	20-25 mph	(Parallel) 7 feet
Low	30-35 mph	(Parallel) 7-8 feet

E.6 Cul-de-sacs and Turnarounds

Cul-de-sacs should only be used where no other alternatives exist. Cul-de-sacs should have walkway or bicycle connections to other sidewalks and streets to provide connectivity within and to adjacent neighborhoods.

E.6.a Turning Area

A residential street open at one end only should have a special turning area at the closed end. A residential street more than 100 feet long and open at one end only shall have a special turning area at the closed end. This turning area should be circular and have a radius appropriate to the types of vehicle expected. The minimum outside radius of a cul-de-sac shall be 30 feet. In constrained circumstances, other turning configurations such as a "hammerhead" may be considered.

Draft

E.7 Pedestrian Considerations

In urban environments, the "border," or area between the face of a building or right of way line and the curb face, serves as the pedestrian realm because it is the place for which pedestrian activity is provided, including space to walk, socialize, places for street furniture, landscaping, and outdoor cafes. In an urban environment, the border consists of the furniture, walking and shy zones.

Figure 19 – 4 Border

(Source: VHB)

E.7.a Furniture Zone

The furniture zone can be located adjacent to the building face, but more commonly is adjacent to the curb face. The furniture zone contains parking meters, lighting, tree planters, benches, trash receptacles, magazine and newspaper racks, and other street furniture. The furniture zone is separate from the walking/pedestrian and shy zones to keep the walking area clear for pedestrians, including proper access to transit stops.

Draft

E.7.b Walking/Pedestrian Zone

Chapter 8 addresses considerations for pedestrians. In a properly designed urban environment, where buildings are at the back of the sidewalk and vehicle speeds are low, the separation from traffic is normally provided by on-street parking, which also helps to calm traffic. The width of the walking/pedestrian zone should be at least four feet and should be increased based on expected pedestrian activity.

E.7.c Shy Zone

The shy zone is the area adjacent to buildings and fences that pedestrians generally “shy” away from. A minimum of one foot is provided as part of the sidewalk width. This space should not be included in the normal walking zone of the sidewalk.

E.7.d Mid-Block Crossings

Properly designed TND communities will not normally require mid-block crossings due to the use of shorter block size. When mid-block crossings are necessary, the use of curb extensions or bulbouts should be considered to reduce the crossing distance for pedestrians.

E.7.e Curb Extensions

Curb extensions are helpful tools for reducing the crossing distance for pedestrians, providing a location for transit stops, managing the location of parking, providing unobstructed access to fire and rescue, and increasing space for landscaping and street furniture.

Designers should coordinate with public works staff to ensure that street cleaning can be achieved with their equipment, and adequate drainage can be provided to avoid ponding at curb extensions.

E.8 Bicyclist Considerations

E.8.a Bicycle Facilities

Chapter 9 contains information on bicycle facilities. This section is directed to designing bike facilities in TND communities. Designing for bicycles on thoroughfares in TND communities should be as follows: bicycles and motor vehicles should share lanes on thoroughfares with design speeds of twenty five mph or less. It is important to recognize that the addition of bike lanes does increase roadway widths and can increase the tendency for drivers to speed.

When bicycle lanes are used in TND communities, they should be a minimum of 5 feet wide and designated as bike lanes. On curb and gutter roadways, a minimum 4-foot width measured from the lip of the gutter is required. The gutter width should not be considered part of the rideable surface area, but this width provides useable clearance to the curb face. Drainage inlets, grates, and utility covers are potential problems for bicyclists. When a roadway is designed, all such grates and covers should be kept out of the bicyclists' expected path. If drainage inlets are located in the expected path of bicyclists, they should be flush with the pavement, well seated, and have bicycle compatible grates.

Where parking is present, the bicycle lane should be placed between the parking lane and the travel lane, and have a minimum width of 5 feet. Designers should consider increasing the bicycle lane to 6 feet in lieu of increasing parallel parking width from 7 to 8 feet. This helps encourage vehicles to park closer to the curb, and provides more room for door swing, potentially reducing conflict with bicyclists.

Shared lane markings, or "sharrows," can be used instead of bicycle lanes adjacent to on-street parking. The sharrow allows the bicyclist to occupy the lane and therefore avoids placing bicyclists in the "door zone", and does not require an increase in lane width or ROW width for the thoroughfare. Guidance for use of the shared lane marking is included in ***Chapter 9 -~~,~~ Bicycle Facilities*** and the ~~***2009***~~ ***MUTCD***. See Figure 9 – 24~~3~~ Shared Lane Marking for a detailed drawing of a shared lane marking.

Draft

E.8.b Shared Use Paths

Greenways, waterfront walks, and other civic spaces should include shared use paths, and provide for bicycle storage or parking. Bicycle storage or parking should also be included in areas near transit facilities to maximize connectivity between the modes.

E.9 Transit

See "Accessing Transit, Design Handbook for Florida Bus Passenger Facilities, 2013~~08~~" for information: http://www.dot.state.fl.us/transit/NewTransitPlanning.shtm

E.10 Clear Zone

In urban areas, horizontal clearances, based on clear zone requirements for rural highways, are not practical because urban areas are characterized by lower speed, more dense abutting development, closer spaced intersections and accesses to property, higher traffic volumes, more bicyclists and pedestrians, and restricted right of way. The minimum horizontal clearance shall be 1.5 feet measured from the face of curb.

Streets with curb, or curb and gutter, in urban areas where right of way is restricted do not have roadsides of sufficient widths to provide clear zones; therefore, while there are specific horizontal clearance requirements for these streets, they are based on clearances for normal operation and not based on maintaining a clear roadside for errant vehicles. It should be noted that curb has essentially no redirectional capability; therefore, curb should not be considered effective in shielding a hazard.

Draft

F REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following publications were either used in the preparation of this chapter, or may be helpful in designing TND Communities and understanding the flexibility in AASHTO design criteria:

1. • Designing Walkable Urban Thoroughfares: A Context Sensitive Approach: An ITE Recommended Practice, 2010
http://www.ite.org/css/

2. • SmartCode 9.2
http://www.smartcodecentral.org/

• A Guide for Achieving Flexibility in Highway Design, AASHTO, May, 2004
https://bookstore.transportation.org/

3. • Accessing Transit, Design Handbook for Florida Bus Passenger Facilities, 2008, FDOT Public Transit Office :
http://www.dot.state.fl.us/transit/NewTransitPlanning.shtm

4. • Safe Routes to Schools Program, FDOT Safety Office:
http://www.dot.state.fl.us/safety/2A-Programs/Programs.shtm

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 20

DRAINAGE

A INTRODUCTION 20-1

B OBJECTIVES 20-1

C OPEN CHANNEL 20-2

C.1 Design Frequency 20-2
C.2 Hydrologic Analysis 20-2
C.3 Hydraulic Analysis 20-3
C.3.a Manning's "n" Values 20-3
C.3.b Slope 20-3
C.3.c Channel Linings and Velocity 20-3
C.3.d Limitations on Use of Linings 20-4
C.4 Construction and Maintenance Considerations 20-5
C.5 Safety 20-5
C.6 Documentation 20-5

D STORM DRAIN HYDROLOGY AND HYDRAULICS 20-6

D.1 Pipe Materials 20-6
D.2 Design Frequency 20-6
D.3 Design Tailwater 20-6
D.4 Hydrologic Analysis 20-6
D.4.a Time of Concentration 20-7
D.5 Hydraulic Analysis 20-7
D.5.a Pipe Slopes 20-7
D.5.b Hydraulic Gradient 20-7
D.5.c Outlet Velocity 20-7
D.5.d Manning's Roughness Coefficients 20-7
D.6 Hydraulic Openings 20-8
D.6.a Entrance Location and Spacing 20-8
D.6.b Grades 20-9

D.7 Spread Standards 20-9
D.8 Construction and Maintenance Considerations 20-10
D.8.a Pipe Size and Length 20-10
D.8.b Minimum Clearances 20-10
D.9 Protective Treatment 20-11
D.10 Documentation 20-13

E CROSS DRAIN HYDRAULICS 20-14

E.1 Design Frequency 20-14
E.2 Backwater 20-14
E.3 Tailwater 20-15
E.4 Clearances 20-15
E.5 Bridges and Other Structures 20-15

F STORMWATER MANAGEMENT 20-16

F.1 Regulatory Requirements 20-16
F.1.a Chapter 62-25, Florida Administrative Code 20-16
F.1.b Chapter 62-40, Florida Administrative Code 20-16
F.1.c National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System 20-16

G CULVERT MATERIALS 20-17

G.1 Durability 20-17
G.2 Structural Capacity 20-18
G.3 Hydraulic Capacity 20-18

~~A INTRODUCTION ..... 20-1~~

~~B OBJECTIVES ..... 20-1~~

~~C OPEN CHANNEL ..... 20-2~~

~~C.1 Design Frequency ..... 20-2~~
~~C.2 Hydrologic Analysis ..... 20-2~~
~~C.3 Hydraulic Analysis ..... 20-3~~
~~C.3.a Manning's "n" Values ..... 20-3~~
~~C.3.b Slope ..... 20-3~~

Draft

~~C.3.c Channel Linings and Velocity ..... 20-4~~
~~C.3.d Limitations on Use of Linings ..... 20-4~~
~~C.4 Construction and Maintenance Considerations ..... 20-5~~
~~C.5 Safety ..... 20-5~~
~~C.6 Documentation ..... 20-5~~

~~D STORM DRAIN HYDROLOGY AND HYDRAULICS ..... 20-6~~

~~D.1 Pipe Materials ..... 20-6~~
~~D.2 Design Frequency ..... 20-6~~
~~D.3 Design Tailwater ..... 20-6~~
~~D.4 Hydrologic Analysis ..... 20-6~~
~~D.4.a Time of Concentration ..... 20-7~~
~~D.5 Hydraulic Analysis ..... 20-7~~
~~D.5.a Pipe Slopes ..... 20-7~~
~~D.5.b Hydraulic Gradient ..... 20-7~~
~~D.5.c Outlet Velocity ..... 20-7~~
~~D.5.d Manning's Roughness Coefficients ..... 20-7~~
~~D.6 Hydraulic Openings ..... 20-8~~
~~D.6.a Entrance Location and Spacing ..... 20-8~~
~~D.6.b Grades ..... 20-9~~
~~D.7 Spread Standards ..... 20-9~~
~~D.8 Construction and Maintenance Considerations ..... 20-10~~
~~D.8.a Pipe Size and Length ..... 20-10~~
~~D.8.b Minimum Clearances ..... 20-11~~
~~D.9 Protective Treatment ..... 20-11~~
~~D.10 Documentation ..... 20-13~~

~~E CROSS DRAIN HYDRAULICS ..... 20-14~~

~~E.1 Design Frequency ..... 20-14~~
~~E.2 Backwater ..... 20-14~~
~~E.3 Tailwater ..... 20-15~~
~~E.4 Clearances ..... 20-15~~
~~E.5 Bridges and Other Structures ..... 20-15~~

Draft

~~F STORMWATER MANAGEMENT ..... 20-16~~

~~F.1 Regulatory Requirements ..... 20-16~~

~~F.1.a Chapter 62-25, Florida Administrative Code ..... 20-16~~

~~F.1.b Chapter 62-40, Florida Administrative Code ..... 20-16~~

~~F.1.c National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System ..... 20-16~~

~~G CULVERT MATERIALS ..... 20-17~~

~~G.1 Durability ..... 20-17~~

~~G.2 Structural Capacity ..... 20-18~~

~~G.3 Hydraulic Capacity ..... 20-18~~

TABLES

Table 20 – 1 Stormwater Flow Design Frequencies 20-2

Table 20 – 2 Spread Criteria 20-9

Table 20 – 3 Protective Treatments 20-12

Table 20 – 4 Recommended Minimum Design Flood Frequency 20-14

~~Table 20-1 Stormwater Flow Design Frequencies ..... 20-2~~

~~Table 20-2 Spread Criteria ..... 20-9~~

~~Table 20-3 Protective Treatments ..... 20-12~~

~~Table 20-4 Recommended Minimum Design Flood Frequency ..... 20-14~~

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Draft

CHAPTER 20

DRAINAGE

A INTRODUCTION

This chapter recognizes that Florida is regularly affected by adverse weather conditions. As such, the proper design of a roadway's drainage system is critical to its function and to the safety of the motoring public as well as pedestrians, bicyclists and other users of these facilities. Standing water on a roadway can not only create a hazard but could also impede the flow of traffic.

This chapter represents the minimum standards that should be used when designing roadway drainage. As is the case for all elements in a facility's design, the designer must consider site specific conditions and determine the proper level of service the facility's drainage system should provide. The design of drainage facilities should not only consider the system's ability to handle the design storm, but also consider the system's recovery time during an event which exceed the design storm.

B OBJECTIVES

The objective of this chapter is to establish the minimum standards to which a roadway's drainage system is to be designed. In order for the drainage system to function properly, the below guidelines should be used in the design, construction and maintenance of these systems.

- Design and maintain drainage systems to quickly move water out of the travel lanes in order provide a safer environment for users of a facility during adverse weather conditions.

- Design drainage systems by taking into consideration the future maintenance of said system in order to avoid creating hazardous conditions to drivers and maintenance staff during routine servicing.

Draft

C OPEN CHANNEL

This section presents minimum standards for the design of natural or manmade open channels, including roadside ditches, swales, median ditches, interceptor ditches, outfalls, and canals.

C.1 Design Frequency

Open channels shall be designed to convey and to confine storm water within the ditch. Standard design frequencies for stormwater flow are shown in Table 20 – 1 Stormwater Flow Design Frequencies.

Table 20 – 1 Stormwater Flow Design Frequencies

Facility Types	Frequency
Major roadway	10-year
All other road types	5-year

Site-specific factors may warrant the use of an atypical design frequency. Any increase over pre-development stages shall not significantly change land use values, unless flood rights are acquired.

C.2 Hydrologic Analysis

Hydrologic data used for the design of open channels shall be based on one of the following methods as appropriate for the particular site:

1. A frequency analysis of observed (gage) data shall be used when available. If insufficient or no observed data is available, one of the procedures below shall be used as appropriate. However, the procedures below shall be calibrated to the extent practical with available observed data for the drainage basin, or nearby similar drainage basins.

    1. Regional or local regression equation developed by the United States Geological Survey (USGS).

Draft

2. Rational Equation for drainage areas up to 600 acres.

3. For outfalls from stormwater management facilities, the method used for the design of the stormwater management facility may be used.

2. For regulated or controlled canals, hydrologic data shall be requested from the controlling entity. Prior to use for design, this data shall be verified to the extent practical.

C.3 Hydraulic Analysis

The Manning's Equation shall be used for the design of open channels.

C.3.a Manning's "n" Values

Recommended Manning's n values for channels with bare soil, vegetative linings, and rigid linings are presented in the ***Department's Drainage Manual (2008), Table 2.1 and 2.2.*** The manual is incorporated by reference in ***Section 14-86.003, F.A.C., Permit, Assurance Requirements, and Exceptions***.

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/officeofdesign/publicationslist.shtm

The probable condition of the channel when the design event is anticipated shall be considered when a Manning's n value is selected.

C.3.b Slope

Roadside channels should be designed to have self-cleaning velocities, where possible. Channels should also be designed to avoid standing water in the roadway right-of-way.

C.3.c Channel Linings and Velocity

The design of open channels shall consider the need for channel linings. When design flow velocities do not exceed the maximum permissible for bare earth, the standard treatment of ditches may consist of grassing and mulching. For higher design velocities, sodding, ditch paving, or other

Draft

form of lining shall be provided. Tables for maximum velocities for bare earth and the various forms of channel lining can be found in the Department's ***Drainage Manual Tables 2.3*** and ***2.4***.

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/officeofdesign/publicationslist.shtm

C.3.d Limitations on Use of Linings

Grassing or sodding should not be used under the following conditions:

1. Continuous standing or flowing water
2. Areas that do not receive the regular maintenance necessary to prevent overgrowth by taller vegetation
3. Lack of nutrients
4. Excessive soil drainage
5. Areas excessively shaded

To prevent cracking or failure, concrete lining must be placed on a firm, well-drained foundation. Concrete linings are not recommended where expansive clays are present.

When concrete linings are to be used where soils may become saturated, the potential for buoyancy shall be considered. Acceptable counter-measures may include:

1. Increasing the thickness of the lining to add additional weight.
2. For sub-critical flow conditions, specifying weep holes at appropriate intervals in the channel bottom to relieve the upward pressure on the channel.
3. For super-critical flow conditions, using subdrains in lieu of weep holes.

Draft

C.4 Construction and Maintenance Considerations

The type and frequency of maintenance that may be required during the life of drainage channels should be considered during their design, and allowances should be made for the access of maintenance equipment.

C.5 Safety

The design and location of open channels shall comply with roadside safety and clear zone requirements. See ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design*** for clear zone requirements, including special clearance criteria for canals.

C.6 Documentation

For new construction, design documentation for open channels shall include the hydrologic and the hydraulic analyses, including analysis of channel lining requirements

.

Draft

D STORM DRAIN HYDROLOGY AND HYDRAULICS

This section presents minimum standards for the design of storm drain systems.

D.1 Pipe Materials

See Section G for pipe material requirements.

D.2 Design Frequency

The minimum design storm frequency for the design of storm drain systems shall be 3 years.

Site-specific factors may warrant the use of an atypical design frequency. Any increase over pre-development stages shall not significantly change land use values, unless flood rights are acquired.

D.3 Design Tailwater

For most design applications where the flow is subcritical, the tailwater will either be above the crown of the outlet or can be considered to be between the crown and critical depth. To determine the energy grade line (EGL), begin with either the tailwater elevation or $(d_c + D)/2$, whichever is higher, add the velocity head for full flow and proceed upstream, adding appropriate losses (e.g., exit, friction, junction, bend, entrance).

An exception to the above procedure is an outfall with low tailwater. In this case, a water surface profile calculation would be appropriate to determine the location where the water surface will either intersect the top or end of the barrel and full-flow calculations can begin. In this case, the downstream water surface elevation would be based on critical depth or the tailwater, whichever is higher.

D.4 Hydrologic Analysis

The Rational Method is the most common method in use for the design of storm drains when the momentary peak-flow rate is desired.

D.4.a Time of Concentration

Minimum time of concentration shall be 10 minutes.

D.5 Hydraulic Analysis

Hydraulic calculations for determining storm drain conduit sizes shall be based on open channel and pressure flow as appropriate. The Manning's equation shall be used.

D.5.a Pipe Slopes

The minimum physical slope should be that which will produce a velocity of 2.5 feet per second (fps) when the storm drain is flowing full.

D.5.b Hydraulic Gradient

If the hydraulic grade line (HGL) does not rise above the top of any manhole or above an inlet entrance, the storm drainage system is satisfactory. Standard practice is to ensure that the HGL is below the top of the inlet for the design discharge (some local agencies may add an additional safety factor which can be up to 12 inches).

D.5.c Outlet Velocity

When discharge exceeds 4 fps, consider special channel lining or energy dissipation. For computation of outlet velocity the lowest anticipated tailwater condition for the given storm event shall be assumed.

D.5.d Manning's Roughness Coefficients

Standards Manning's Roughness Coefficients can be found in the Department's ***Drainage Manual Section 3.6.4***.

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/officeofdesign/publicationslist.shtm

Draft

D.6 Hydraulic Openings

If the hydraulic grade line does not rise above the top of any manhole or above an inlet entrance, the storm drainage system is satisfactory. Standard practice is to ensure that the HGL is below the top of the inlet for the design discharge.

D.6.a Entrance Location and Spacing

Drainage inlets are sized and located to limit the spread of water on the roadway to allowable widths for the design storm.

Grate inlets and the depression of curb opening inlets should be located outside the through traffic lanes to minimize the shifting of vehicles attempting to avoid them. All grate inlets shall be bicycle safe where used on roadways that allow bicycle travel.

The Department's ***Storm Drain Handbook*** is available as a guide for inlet selection.

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/officeofdesign/publicationslist.shtm

Inlet spacing shall consider the following:

- Regardless of the results of the hydraulic analysis, inlets on grade should be spaced at a maximum of 300 ft for 48 inches or smaller pipes.
- Inlets on grade should be spaced at a maximum of 600 ft for pipes larger than 48 inches.
- Inlets should be placed on the upstream side of bridge approaches.
- Inlets should be placed at all low points in the gutter grade.
- Inlets should be placed upstream of intersecting streets.
- Inlets should be placed on the upstream side of a driveway entrance, curb-cut ramp, or pedestrian crosswalk even if the hydraulic analysis places the inlet further down grade or within the feature.
- Inlets should be placed upstream of median breaks.
- Inlets should be placed to capture flow from intersecting streets before it reaches the major highway.

Draft

- Flanking inlets in sag vertical curves are standard practice.
- Inlets should be placed to prevent water from sheeting across the highway (i.e., place the inlet before the superelevation transition begins).
- Inlets should not be located in the path where pedestrians walk.

D.6.b Grades

D.6.b.1 Longitudinal Gutter Grade

The minimum longitudinal gutter grade shall be 0.3%. Minimum grades can be maintained in very flat terrain by use of a rolling profile.

D.7 Spread Standards

The spread, in both temporary and permanent conditions, resulting from a rainfall intensity of 4.0 inches per hour shall be limited as shown in Table 20 – ~~-~~2 Spread Criteria~~=~~.

Table 20 – 2 Spread Criteria

Design Speed (mph)	Spread Criteria*
Design Speed ≤ 30	Crown of Road
30 < Design speed ≤ 45	Keep ½ of lane clear
45 < Design Speed ≤ 55	Keep 8’ of lane clear
Design Speed > 55	No encroachment

* The criteria in this column apply to travel, turn, or auxiliary lanes adjacent to barrier wall or curb, in normal or super elevated sections.

In addition to the above standards, for sections with a shoulder gutter, the spread resulting from a 10-year frequency storm shall not exceed 1’ 3” outside the gutter in the direction toward the front slope. This distance limits the spread to the face of guardrail posts.

Draft

D.8 Construction and Maintenance Considerations

Proper design shall also consider maintenance concerns of adequate physical access for cleaning and repair.

D.8.a Pipe Size and Length

Consider using a minimum pipe size of 18” for trunk lines and laterals. 15” hubcaps commonly block smaller pipes resulting in roadway flooding. The minimum pipe diameter for all proposed exfiltration trench pipes (french drain systems) within a drainage system is 18”.

The maximum pipe lengths without maintenance access structures are as follows:

Pipes without French Drains:

18” - 42” pipe	300 feet
48” and larger and all box culverts	600 feet

French Drains that have access through only one end:

18” to 30” pipe	150 feet
36” and larger pipe	200 feet

French Drains that have access through both ends:

24” to 30” pipe	300 feet
36” and larger pipe	400 feet

D.8.b Minimum Clearances

A minimum cover of 1 ft should be provided between the top of pipe and the top of subgrade. A minimum clearance of 1 ft should be provided between storm drainage pipes and other underground facilities (e.g., sanitary sewers). Check with local utility companies, as their clearance requirements may vary from the 1’ minimum.

Draft

D.9 Protective Treatment

Drainage designs shall be reviewed to determine if some form of protective treatment will be required to prevent unauthorized entry to long or submerged storm drain systems, steep ditches, or water control facilities. If other modifications, such as landscaping or providing flat slopes, can eliminate the potential hazard and thus the need for protective treatment, they should be considered first. Areas provided for retention and detention, for example, can often be effectively integrated into parks or other green spaces.

Vehicular and pedestrian safety are attained by differing protective treatments, often requiring the designer to make a compromise in which one type of protection is more completely realized than the other. In such cases, an evaluation should be made of the relative risks and dangers involved to provide the design that gives the best balance. It must be remembered that the function of the drainage feature will be essentially in conflict with total safety, and that only a reduction rather than elimination of all risk is possible.

Draft

The three basic types of protective treatment are shown in Table 20 – ~~-~~3 Protective Treatments.~~.~~

Table 20 – 3 Protective Treatments

Feature	Typical Use
Grates	To prevent persons from being swept into long or submerged drainage systems.
Guards	To prevent entry into long sewer systems under no-storm conditions, to prevent persons from being trapped.
Fences	To prevent entry into areas of unexpected deep standing water or high velocity water flow, or in areas where grates or guards are warranted but are unsuitable for other reasons.

When determining the type and extent of protective treatment, the following considerations should be reviewed:

- The nature and frequency of the presence of children in the area, e.g., proximity to schools, school routes, and parks, should be established.
- Highway access status should be determined. Protective treatment is usually not warranted within a limited access highway; however, drainage facilities located outside the limited access area or adjacent to a limited access highway should be considered unlimited access facilities.
- Adequate debris and access control would be required on all inlet points if guards or grates are used at outlet ends.
- Hydraulic determinations such as depth and velocity should be based on a 25-year rainfall event.
- The hydraulic function of the drainage facility should be checked and adjusted so the protective treatment will not cause a reduction in its effectiveness.

Draft

- Use of a grate may cause debris or persons to be trapped against the hydraulic opening. Grates for major structures should be designed in a manner that allows items to be carried up by increasing flood stages.
- Use of a guard may result in a person being pinned against it. A guard is usually used on outlet ends.
- A fence may capture excessive amounts of debris, which could possibly result in its destruction and subsequent obstruction of the culvert. The location and construction of a fence shall reflect the effect of debris-induced force.

D.10 Documentation

For new construction, supporting calculations for storm sewer system design shall be documented and provided to facility owner.

Draft

E CROSS DRAIN HYDRAULICS

This section presents standards and procedures for the hydraulic design of cross drains including culverts, bridge-culverts[1], and bridges.

E.1 Design Frequency

The recommended minimum design flood frequency for culverts is shown in Table 20 – 4 Recommended Minimum Design Flood Frequency. The minimum flood frequency used to design the culvert can be adjusted based on:

- An analysis to justify the flood frequencies greater or lesser than the minimum flood frequencies listed below; and
- The culvert being located in a National Flood Insurance Program mapped floodplain.

Table 20 – 4 Recommended Minimum Design Flood Frequency

Roadway Classification	Exceedance Probability (%)	Return Period (Year)
Local Roads and Streets, ADT >3,000 VPD	4%	25
Local Roads and Streets, ADT ≤ 3,000 VPD*	20-10%	5-10

*At the discretion of the local agency

E.2 Backwater

Allowable headwater is the depth of water that can be ponded at the upstream end of the culvert during the design flood. The allowable headwater for the design frequency should:

[1] A culvert qualifies as a bridge if it meets the requirements of Item 112 in the FDOT "Bridge Management System Coding Guide."

Draft

- Have a level of inundation that is tolerable to upstream property and roadway for the design discharge;
- Consider a duration or inundation that is tolerable to the upstream vegetation to avoid crop damage; and
- Be lower than the upstream shoulder edge elevation at the lowest point of the roadway within the drainage basin.

If the allowable headwater depth to culvert height ratio (HW/D) is established to be greater than 1.5, the inlet of the culvert will be submerged. Under this condition, the hydraulics designer should provide an end treatment to mitigate buoyancy.

E.3 Tailwater

For the sizing of cross drains and the determination of headwater and backwater elevations, the highest tailwater elevation which can be reasonably expected to occur coincident with the design storm event shall be used.

E.4 Clearances

To permit the passage of debris, a minimum clearance of 2 ft should be provided between the design approach water surface elevation and the low chord of the bridge where practical. Where this is not practicable, the clearance should be established by the hydraulics engineer based on the type of stream and level of protection desired. Additional vertical clearance information can be found in ***Chapter 3~~,~~ – Geometric Design***.

E.5 Bridges and Other Structures

See ***Chapter 17, Section C.3.e~~d~~*** for Drainage Criteria.

Draft

F STORMWATER MANAGEMENT

F.1 Regulatory Requirements

F.1.a Chapter 62-25, Florida Administrative Code

Chapter 62-25. F.A.C.**,** rules of the Florida Department of Environmental Protection specifies minimum water quality treatment standards for new development.

F.1.b Chapter 62-40, Florida Administrative Code

Chapter 62-40, F.A.C., rules of the Florida Department of Environmental Protection outlines basic goals and requirements for surface water protection and management to be implemented and enforced by the Florida Department of Environmental Protection and Water Management Districts.

F.1.c National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System

The ***National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System*** (***NPDES***) permit program is administered by the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency and delegated to the Florida Department of Environmental Protection in Florida. This program requires permits for stormwater discharges into waters of the United States from industrial activities; and from large and medium municipal separate storm sewer systems (MS4s). Construction projects are within the definition of an industrial activity.

G CULVERT MATERIALS

The evaluation of culvert materials shall consider functionally equivalent performance in three areas: durability, structural capacity, and hydraulic capacity.

G.1 Durability

Culverts shall be designed for a design service life (DSL) appropriate for the culvert function and highway type. The design service life should be based on factors such as:

- Projected service life of the facility
- Importance of the facility
- Economics
- Potential inconvenience and difficulties associated with repair or replacement, and projected future demands on the facility.

In estimating the projected service life of a material, consideration shall be given to actual performance of the material in nearby similar environmental conditions, its theoretical corrosion rate, potential for abrasion, and other appropriate site factors. Theoretical corrosion rates shall be based on the environmental conditions of both the soil and water. At a minimum, the following corrosion indicators shall be considered:

1. pH
2. Resistivity
3. Sulfates
4. Chlorides

The Department of Transportation provides a free program for service life determination based on the above criteria. The program is available for download at:

http://www.dot.state.fl.us/officeofdesign/publicationslist.shtm

To avoid unnecessary site specific testing, generalized soil maps may be used to delete unsuitable materials from consideration. The potential for future land use

Draft

changes which may change soil and water corrosion indicators shall also be considered to the extent practical.

G.2 Structural Capacity

AASHTO design guidelines and industry recommendations should be considered in pipe material selection.

G.3 Hydraulic Capacity

The hydraulic evaluation shall establish the hydraulic size for the particular culvert application. For storm drains and cross drains, the design shall use the Manning's roughness coefficient associated with the pipe material selected.

Draft

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK